



Donald Insall Associates
Chartered Architects and Historic Building Consultants

York Walls

Conservation Management Plan
for the City of York Council

November 2021

Contact information

Kate Martyn

kate.martyn@insall-architects.co.uk

Vicky Webster

vicky.webster@insall-architects.co.uk

Tom Bromet

tom.bromet@insall-architects.co.uk

www.donaldinsallassociates.co.uk

This report and all intellectual property rights in it and arising from it are the property of or are under licence to Donald Insall Associates or the client. Neither the whole nor any part of this report, nor any drawing, plan, other document or any information contained within it may be reproduced in any form without the prior written consent of Donald Insall Associates or the client as appropriate. All material in which the intellectual property rights have been licensed to Donald Insall Associates or the client and such rights belong to third parties may not be published or reproduced at all in any form, and any request for consent to the use of such material for publication or reproduction should be made directly to the owner of the intellectual property rights therein.

All professional images in document © Olivia Brabbs
for CYC, unless otherwise stated.

Cover image: Horsley's map of York, 1694 (YMT)

Contents

Appraisal

1.0	Introduction	3
2.0	Historic Context	21
3.0	Summary of Site Surveys	100
4.0	Assessment of Significance	143
5.0	Risks	192
6.0	Opportunities	206
1.0	Management Plan	221

Gazetteer

	Condition Survey	249
	Visual Survey	403

Appendices

498

Executive Summary

The walls are one of the defining features of York's historic townscape and are at once an essential piece of civic infrastructure and a major tourist attraction. They are of outstanding importance as one of the most complex and best-preserved examples of city walls and associated structures. Their overall significance is wide-ranging, formed of multiple, overlapping and evolving heritage values, but in essence:

York City Walls are of exceptional significance on account of their long and unique history and their historic and continuing relevance to, and impact on, the culture, society, economy and environment of the City of York and its wider, universal context.

The purpose of this Conservation Management Plan (CMP) is to act as a tool to: provide an understanding of the significance of **the City Walls** and **St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls** and their setting; to unlock a series of future economic, sustainability and access opportunities; and to ensure the continued use of the monuments in a manner consistent with their conservation, sustaining and enhancing their significance.

The understanding provided will enable informed decisions to be taken to find an appropriate balance between repair, conservation, restoration and adaptation and to provide a framework upon which the future management of the walls will be based. This critical analysis of the walls, why they are important and to whom, and indeed what the barriers preventing accessibility both literally and metaphorically are, will also serve to underpin forthcoming strategies for their continued public use.





COCKTAIL BAR
SEWING CLASSES
MODERN



Except cycles



NO ENTRY

1.0 Introduction

1.1 Document Structure

This CMP forms an update to the CMP undertaken by PLB Consulting in 2004, which was used to inform and guide the accompanying *Interpretation & Access Plan* (2004). This update to the CMP was commissioned by CYC in September 2020. This document comprises three principal elements, which are described below:

1. Appraisal
2. [Management Plan](#)
3. [Gazetteer \(an illustrated site survey\)](#)

The **Appraisal** provides an assessment of the significance of the **City Walls** and **St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls**, underpinned by historical and contextual analysis. **Section 2** provides the historical context for the development of the walls, **Section 3** summarises the findings of the site surveys and **Section 4** provides an assessment of the significance of the site. **Section 5** identifies some of the risks and **Section 6** the opportunities presented by the walls. These sections have been informed by site visits and meetings with the City of York Council (CYC) and York City Walls Liaison Group.

The **Management Plan** sets out a series of objectives, principles and recommendations, which respond to the risks and opportunities identified in the Appraisal. Whilst based upon



those contained within the 2004 CMP, they have been subject to a full review and update in response to the identified risks and opportunities.

The Gazetteer contains an illustrated site survey, which includes condition and visual surveys.

1.2 Aims and Use of the Conservation Management Plan

The CMP meets the requirements of the NPPF to understand the significance of heritage assets in order to guide future alterations or repairs and the development of proposals for change; it is best practice to undertake a conservation planning process for listed buildings of exceptional national interest and scheduled monuments, to inform their management and on-going conservation. The purpose of the CMP is to provide:

- A summary of the history and development of the walls, and their cultural context;
- An overarching statement of significance;
- An assessment of the significance of the walls by section, including their setting;
- A summary of issues that affect or may affect the significance of the walls and also of the opportunities which they present;
- Conservation guidance on future management and opportunities for enhancement based upon studies of their condition, history and use with resultant principles and recommendations to ensure their significance is protected.

This will:

- Assist with the day-to-day management of the walls;
- Provide baseline data from which new proposals and developments can be evaluated;
- Provide principles and recommendations to inform design briefs for any initiatives which use or impact upon the walls;
- Provide a single reference point for informed decision making and enable CYC to prioritise work;
- Provide a basis for interpretation and education strategies relating to the walls.

The document is not intended to be a final once-and-for-all reference work, but rather it lays the foundation for decision-making and forward-looking conservation management at this time. It is intended that CMP will be updated triennially, in order to secure the long-term conservation of this historic site.

This document is intended to be used by those managing the walls as well as parties who may be considering alterations, interventions or development which may impact on the walls or their setting. An online document summarising how CYC look after the walls and an introduction to the CMP has been produced, principally aimed at those with a general interest in the walls and how they are managed, including residents and the wider local community and visitors.

1.3 Interactive Format

This document has been designed to serve as a practical guide for the present and future care of the walls. The digital version features interactive navigable elements which will be key to the usability of the CMP by CYC employees, building managers, external consultants and contractors allowing them to easily locate the relevant topic areas, whilst also making its contents more 'accessible' to the wider community.

The CMP document features interactive navigable elements which enhance its range and ease of use by both the Council and local community. These include:

- A contents page with headings which directly link to the different sections;
- Navigable headers on each page displaying current location, with links to other sections;
- Interactive map with clickable links to relevant sections within the text where applicable; and
- Interactive icons at the left and right to navigate easily to the previous or next page. These are highlighted in orange on this page.

Interactive Elements



Indicates an interactive element



Takes user to previous and next page sequentially

BACK

Returns user to previous page

MANAGEMENT PLAN

Jump to different sections within document

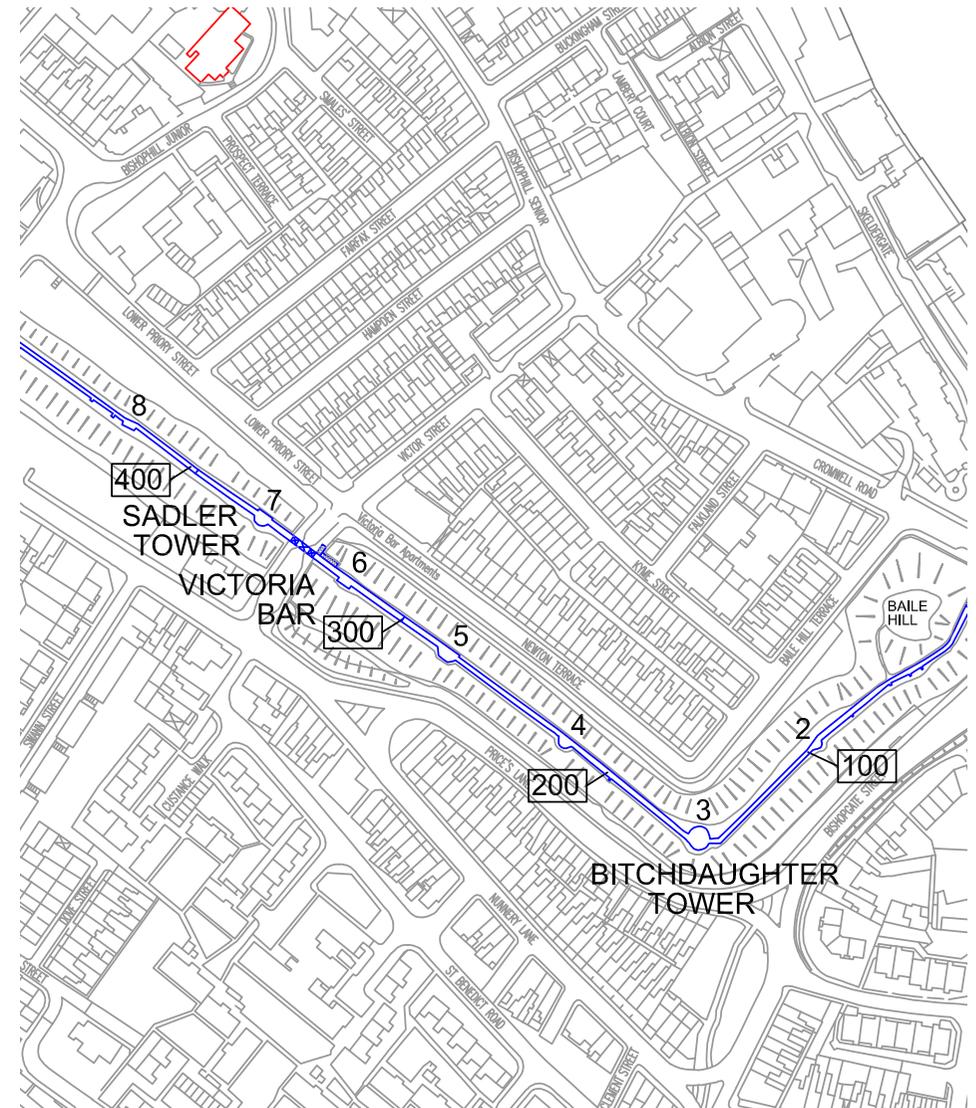
Gazetteer

Underlined words in blue indicate a hyperlink

1.4 Mapping

To assist with the management of a large amount of complex information for this CMP, the City Wall circuit and St Mary's Precinct Walls have been divided into numbered sections, with each major section of wall and each main structure forming a different section. A map showing the names of the key structures and the 20 sections is shown on the following page [Plate 1.1]. This map is interactive and the user can click on the relevant section to find out more on the specific section's historical background.

The **Chainage system**¹ is an established measurement and reference point used by individuals who work on and manage the walls – this number is shown within a box on the principal Chainage Map as shown adjacent and is also physically marked on the walls at specific intervals with a series of pins and markers.² The numbering starts as point '0000' at Baile Hill and runs along each section of the City Wall, finishing at '3474.31' at Davy Tower.



¹ This is the horizontal distance as measured along a combination of curves and straight lines (curvilinear) between two points.

² At 25m intervals with flat brass pins set into the wall walk; at 50m intervals there are hexagonal brass pins; and at 100m intervals there are dome-top brass pins.



1.1 The Walls - divided into 20 Sections. Click on each section for specific historical information

1.5 Methodology and Consultation

The CMP has been prepared in accordance with National Lottery Heritage Fund Guidance on preparing Conservation Plans and the 2008 Historic England publication *Conservation Principles, Policies and Guidance*.

An extensive range of interested parties were formally consulted on the draft Appraisal and the relevant comments and suggestions have been incorporated into the final report. A list of the individuals and organisations consulted in the production of the 2004 CMP is included in Appendix IV.

This update of the CMP has been undertaken by Donald Insall Associates, who have reviewed all sections as well as the accompanying *Access and Interpretation Plan* (PLB, 2004). Other than minor corrections and additions relating to St Mary's Abbey, the History section of the Appraisal remains as drafted by PLB Consulting. Otherwise, a series of necessary updates to national planning policy and additional text to bring the document up-to-date have been carried out. Site surveys were carried out in October 2020, which are summarised in Section 3 and provided in full in the [Gazetteer](#).

Summary of consultation for this 2020-21 update:

- City of York Council
- Historic England
- York City Walls Liaison Group (Friends of York Walls; York Civic Trust; Raids over York; York Archaeological Trust Attractions; Red Tower Community Interest Company; York Minster)
- John Oxley, former City Archaeologist (CYC)

Meetings with CYC, the Liaison Group and Historic England were carried out on 2nd September and 2nd December 2020. Drafts of this Appraisal were presented in December 2020 and February 2021 and circulated to the following stakeholders for review:

- City of York Council
- York Archaeological Trust
- Historic England
- English Heritage
- York City Walls Liaison Group
- Yorkshire Museum Trust
- University of York

Following this, the comments were collated, reviewed and necessary changes accommodated into a final document.

1.6 Research Sources

The 2004 Conservation Plan was produced as the result of documentary and desk based research, an on-site survey of the City Walls, consultation with relevant people and organisations, and analysis and interpretation of the results. The history within the 2004 version was based upon surveys undertaken by the Royal Commission on Historical Monuments England (RCHME) in 1962³ and 1972.⁴ Since the 1970s, the understanding of the walls has evolved as a result of various archaeological investigations. Pre-1990 archaeological investigations can be found within YAT publications e.g. *Interim* magazine, however, these are not now widely available. Since 1990, the majority of investigation on/around the walls have been 'published' as grey-literature and are available on the HER.

This document has used the aforementioned RCHME texts as a basis, with additions / amendments based on specific archaeological investigations / reports recommended to us during the consultation process – these instances are explicitly stated and referenced. However, a full review of the grey literature was not part of the scope of this update to the CMP (given funding and time constraints) and it is recognised that this piece of work should be carried out as a priority, as part of the next review. This will also feed into the forthcoming research

³ RCHME (1962)

⁴ RCHME (1972)

project on the walls and their wider context within York, which will be developed according to the Yorkshire Archaeological Research Framework: research agenda (2007).

This updated CMP includes a pictorial review, with images sourced largely from the collection of Explore York Libraries and Archives, and York Museums Trust. Photographs from the former have been obtained from 'Explore York Images', whilst engineering drawings and plans have been photographed from the originals held in Explore York Libraries and Archives. The contact details for Explore York Libraries and Archives are below:

Catriona Cannon, Archivist (Civic and Public Records)
Explore York Libraries and Archives,
Library Square,
Museum Street,
York, YO1 7DS

01904 555916

The principal secondary sources are as follows, whilst the complete list is provided within the Bibliography in Appendix V:

- *D. Pywell, City of York: Survey of City Walls, 1991*
- *B. Wilson and F. Mee, The City Walls and Castles of York, York Archaeological Trust, 2005*
- *B. Fawcett, The North Eastern Railway's Two Palaces of Business, Friends of the National Railway Museum, 2006*

- *Simpson & Brown Architects, Addyman Archaeology, Mint Yard Conservation Management Plan, 2012*
- *Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates, St Mary's Abbey Precinct York: Conservation Management Plan, 2005*

1.7 Authors and Copyright

This use of the 2004 CMP by PLB Consulting in the production of this updated report was through express agreement with CYC.

1.8 Defining Heritage Assets

Building conservation has evolved markedly since the first legislation was put in place to protect historic sites in England and Wales in the late-19th century. At first, the aim was 'preservation', which meant keeping a building or place in a relatively fixed state such that its beauty or any evidence of the past it might yield was left undisturbed. The Manifesto of the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings, drafted by William Morris in 1877, encouraged regular maintenance and careful repair of historic buildings, but cautioned against restoration or even adaptation to meet changing needs.

The great number of buildings now listed or protected through conservation area designation has resulted in a shift in emphasis

in the 20th century away from 'preservation' and towards 'conservation', although the Town and Country Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990 still places a statutory duty on local authorities to 'preserve' listed buildings and to 'preserve or enhance' conservation areas. The Venice Charter of 1964 and the Burra Charter of 1979 (reissued in 2013) have developed an approach to 'managing change' and have introduced internationally-recognised standards of conservation.

At the heart of conservation is the creative process of caring for a building or place. Conservation begins by understanding a building or place thoroughly; this means researching and analysing its history, purpose, materials, construction, aesthetic qualities, setting, use, and condition. The first step in the process of conservation is to establish the significance of a building or place. Significance can and usually does reside in the fabric of a historic building or place, but it can also be manifest in its historical associations, design, setting, use, or cultural value.

The overarching aim of conservation is ensuring that this significance is passed on to future generations. Before any changes are considered, a statement of significance should be drafted and – following consultation with those for whom the building or place is important either for its history or its present management – agreed by all parties involved with the works.

National Planning Policy Framework was published in March 2012 (Revised 2018 and 2019); it sets out the government's

planning policies for England and how these are expected to be applied. At the heart of the Framework is 'a presumption in favour of sustainable development' and there are also specific policies relating to the historic environment. The Framework states that heritage assets are 'an irreplaceable resource, and should be conserved in a manner appropriate to their significance, so that they can be enjoyed for their contribution to the quality of life of existing and future generations'.

The National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) defines a heritage asset as:

*a building, monument, site, place, area or landscape identified as having a degree of significance meriting consideration in planning decisions, because of its heritage interest. It includes designated heritage assets and assets identified by the local planning authority (including local listing).*⁵

*The NPPF outlines a requirement to 'recognise that heritage assets are an irreplaceable resource and conserve them in a manner appropriate to their significance, so that they can be enjoyed for their contribution to the quality of life of existing and future generations'.*⁶

5 Annex 2, NPPF (2019)

6 Paragraph 184, NPPF (2019)

It defines significance as:

*'the value of a heritage asset to this and future generations because of its heritage interest. The interest may be archaeological, architectural, artistic or historic. Significance derives not only from a heritage asset's physical presence, but also from its setting.'*⁷

Historic England's **Conservation Principles, Policies and Guidance** of 2008 sets out current good practice for assessing the significance of historic buildings in England and is derived from the 1979 Burra Charter. It states that the following values should be considered in order to fully understand the significance of a place:

Evidential value: the potential of a place to yield evidence about past human activity.

Historical value: the ways in which past people, events and aspects of life can be connected through a place to the present – it tends to be illustrative or associative.

Aesthetic value: the ways in which people draw sensory and intellectual stimulation from a place.

Communal value: the meanings of a place for the people who relate to it, or for whom it figures in their collective experience or memory.

7 Annex 2, NPPF (2019)

1.9 Legal Status, Relevant Policy and Guidance

Scheduled Ancient Monuments

The map on the following page shows that the **'City Walls'** are covered by two scheduled monument designations – marked in red and green.

'St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls' is separately designated and is marked in yellow on the map [Plate 1.2]. The map also provides interactive links to the relevant Scheduled Monument Descriptions within the appendix.

The red areas on the map indicate the first designation, which stretches from Monk Bar clockwise around the circuit to where the northern part of the walls is cut through by St Leonard's Place. This monument includes the City Walls, gates, posterns, moats, mounds, Bayle (or Baile) Hill, St Leonard's Hospital and Merchant Taylor's Hall, Aldwark (Historic England List Entry Number 1004910). The first monument record was generated from what is known as an 'old county number' scheduling record and at present is not accompanied by a description.⁸ The Historic Environment Record (HER) designation number for this section of the monument is DY01586.

⁸ An "old county number" (OCN) scheduling record indicates that the monument was not reviewed under the Monuments Protection Programme (1989) and is one of Historic England's oldest designation records. As such, the schedule is not accompanied by a full description at present.

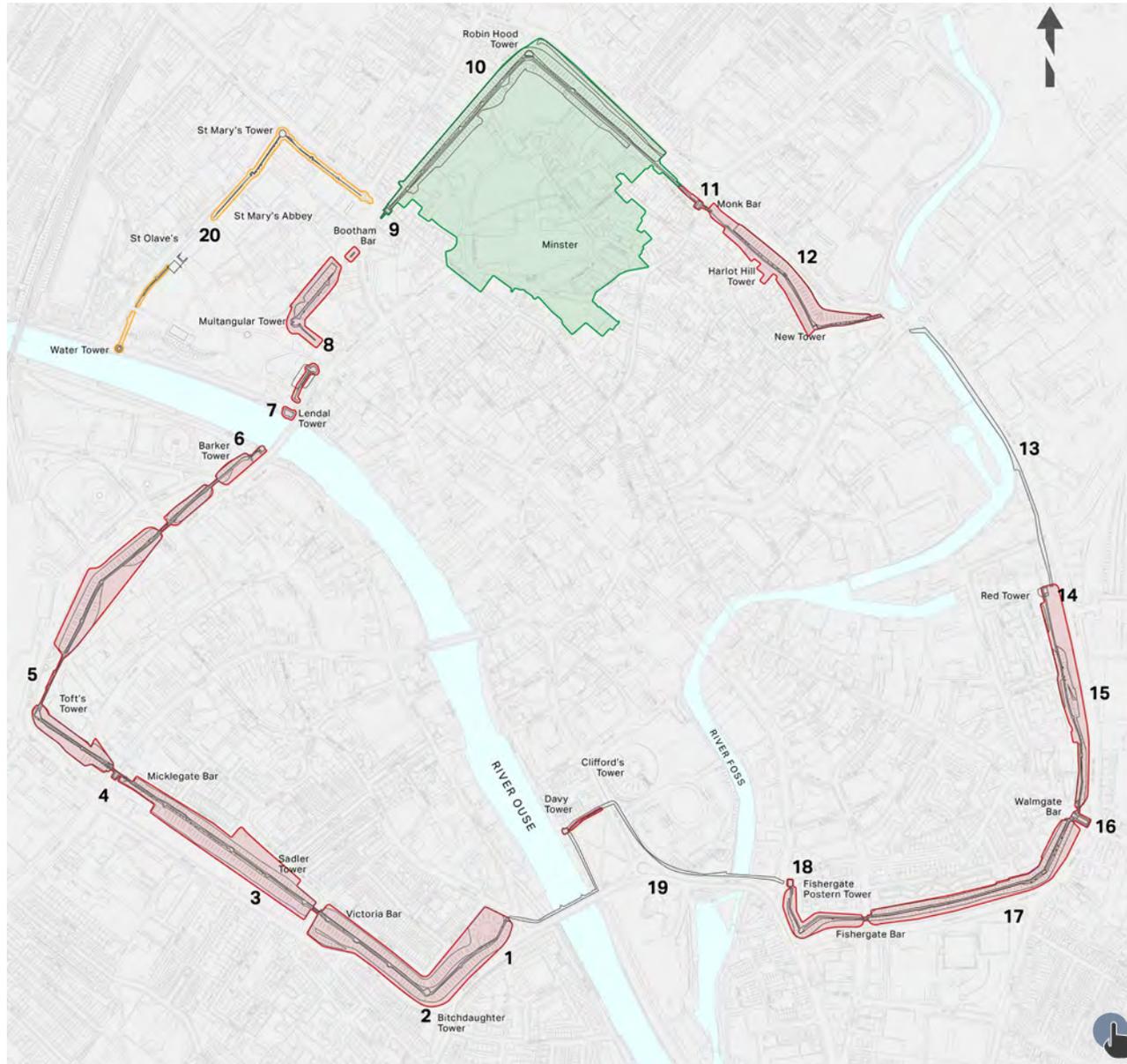
The green area on the map indicates the remainder of the City Walls, which are scheduled as part of the York Minster Cathedral Precinct (Historic England List Entry Number 1017777) and include Bootham Bar and the length of City Walls extending round the precinct up to, but not including, Monk Bar. The **HER designation** number for this section of the monument is **DY01594**.

The yellow area on the map indicates St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls (Historic England List Entry Number 1004920). The **HER designation** number for this monument is **DY01585**. St Mary's Abbey is also scheduled separately (Historic England List Entry Number 1004919). The **HER designation** number for this monument is **DY01584**.

N.B. The HER designation numbers – prefix 'DYO' - are the City of York's HER identifiers for scheduled areas or listed buildings, in the case of the City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Walls, which encompass a large number of monuments under single designations, these entries are linked to further relevant Monument records, which have a prefix of 'MYO'. See Appendix XIII for CYC's asset list of the individual monuments.

Key

-  City Walls
-  City Walls and York Minster Cathedral Precinct
-  St Mary's Abbey Walls



1.2 Scheduled Monuments

Listed Buildings

Listing status is designed to recognise the importance and significance of buildings and then to offer statutory protection against alteration or demolition which would cause harm to their special architectural or historic interest. There are some 500,000 individual buildings covered by the National Heritage List for England of which 2.5% are listed Grade I identifying them as of exceptional interest.

The City Walls (including bars and other structures) are currently listed as ten separate entries, all at Grade I except Davy Tower, which is Grade II*. All are stated as having Group Value, and are listed below and shown on the map shown in Plate 1.3.

- City Wall from Lendal Hill House to The Lodge, Museum Gardens.
- City Wall from Multangular Tower to rear of No.8 St Leonard's Place
- City Wall from Bootham Bar to Layerthorpe, including Bootham Bar, Robin Hood Tower, Monks Bar, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses.
- City Wall from the Red Tower to Fishergate Postern Tower, including The Red Tower, Fishergate Bar, Walmgate Bar, Fishergate Postern Tower, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses.

- City Wall attached to Tower Place, including Davy Tower and defensive walls
- City Wall from Baile Hill to Barker Tower, including Baile Hill Tower, Victoria Bar, Micklegate Bar, Barker Tower, North Street Postern, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses.
- Davy Tower
- Roman Wall at St Leonard's Place
- Lendal Tower
- Multangular Tower and wall attached to south east
- Anglian Tower – also known as Tower 19 (Grade I)

In addition, related listed structures include:

- Ice house approx. 25 meters to rear of The Bay Horse Public House (Grade II)
- Roman Wall and E Corner Tower approximately 20m south east of Monk Bar (Grade I)

In addition to the above, the following listed structures are associated with St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls, and are shown on the adjacent map **[Plate 1.3]**:

- St Marys Lodge and attached railings, gates and gate piers (Grade I)
- Church of St Olave (Grade I)

- Etty's tomb approximately 25 metres south east of St Olaves Church (Grade II)
- Number 29 (Marygate) and walls attached to south west (Grade II*)
- St Marys Abbey remains precinct walls St Marys Tower (Grade I)
- Wall approximately 5 metres north east of the Kings Manor (Grade I)
- St Marys Abbey remains Church (Grade I)
- Yorkshire Museum, Tempest Anderson Hall and St Marys Abbey remains (Grade I)
- Observatory (Grade II)
- St Marys Abbey remains Hospitium and Watergate (Grade II*)

The accompanying descriptions are located in Appendix II.

Registered Parks and Gardens

The Historic England 'Register of Parks and Gardens of Special Historic Interest in England' was established in 1983 and currently identifies over 1,600 sites assessed to be of particular significance. The emphasis of the Register is on 'designed' landscapes, rather than on planting or botanical importance. Registration is a 'material consideration' in the planning process, meaning that planning authorities must consider the impact

of any proposed development on the landscapes' special character'.⁹ Museum Gardens are registered at Grade II.

Conservation Areas

The City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Walls are within CYC's designated 'Conservation Area No.1: Central Historic Core'. The extent of the Conservation Area and the Area of Archaeological Importance referred to below is shown on the map shown in **Plate 1.4**. The current Local Plan for York (2005) describes the conservation area as follows:

The Conservation Area mainly defines the old City of Roman, Viking and Medieval York, for the most part contained inside the ancient City Walls. The Conservation Area was first designated in 1968 and extended in 1975 (after public consultation) to include the Bars and Walls themselves, their approaches and surroundings which contained Georgian, Regency and Victorian buildings.

Relevant Policy and Guidance

Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979

The Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979 was passed by the UK government, the latest in a series of Ancient Monument Acts legislating to protect the archaeological heritage of England & Wales and Scotland.

⁹ <https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/what-is-designation/registered-parks-and-gardens/>

Section 61(12) defines sites that warrant protection due to their being of national importance as 'ancient monuments'. These can be either **scheduled monuments** or:

...any other monument which in the opinion of the Secretary of State is of public interest by reason of the historic, architectural, traditional, artistic or archaeological interest attaching to it.

A monument is defined as:

...any building, structure or work above or below the surface of the land, any cave or excavation; any site comprising the remains of any such building, structure or work or any cave or excavation; and any site comprising or comprising the remains of any vehicle, vessel or aircraft or other movable structure or part thereof...

Section 61 (7)

Scheduled monument consent is required for most works and other activities that physically affect a scheduled monument. Carrying out an activity without consent where it was needed is a criminal offence. Consent must be obtained from the Secretary of State for Digital, Culture, Media and Sport through Historic England for any of the following:

(a) any works resulting in the demolition or destruction of or any damage to a scheduled monument;

(b) any works for the purpose of removing or repairing a scheduled monument or any part of it or of making any alterations or additions thereto; and

(c) any flooding or tipping operations on land in, on or under which there is a scheduled monument Section 2 (2)

If a scheduled monument is also a listed building, listed building consent is not required. However, planning permission may be required in addition to scheduled monument consent for works if they also amount to development which is not considered to be permitted development.¹⁰

York City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls have a Generic Scheduled Monument Consent in place, in agreement with Historic England. This relates to minor works on the walls which fall below the size and scope of work undertaken on restoration projects for which individual SMC applications are made (Appendix II contains a copy of CYC's Application and accompanying Specification of Works).

The Act (in Part II) also introduced the concept of 'areas of archaeological importance' (AAI), city centres of historic significance which receive limited further protection by obliging developers to permit archaeological access prior to building work starting. In 2004, five English city centres were designated as AAIs: Canterbury, Chester, Exeter, Hereford and York. **Plate 1.4** indicates the boundary of York's AAI.

¹⁰ <https://historicengland.org.uk/advice/hpg/consent/smc/>

The Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990

The Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990 is the legislative basis for decision-making on applications that relate to the historic environment.

Sections 16, 66 and 72 of the Act impose statutory duties upon local planning authorities which, with regard to listed buildings, require the planning authority to have 'special regard to the desirability of preserving the listed building or its setting or any features of special architectural or historic interest which it possesses' and, in respect of conservation areas, that 'special attention shall be paid to the desirability of preserving or enhancing the character or appearance of that area'.

National Planning Policy Framework and Planning Practice Guidance

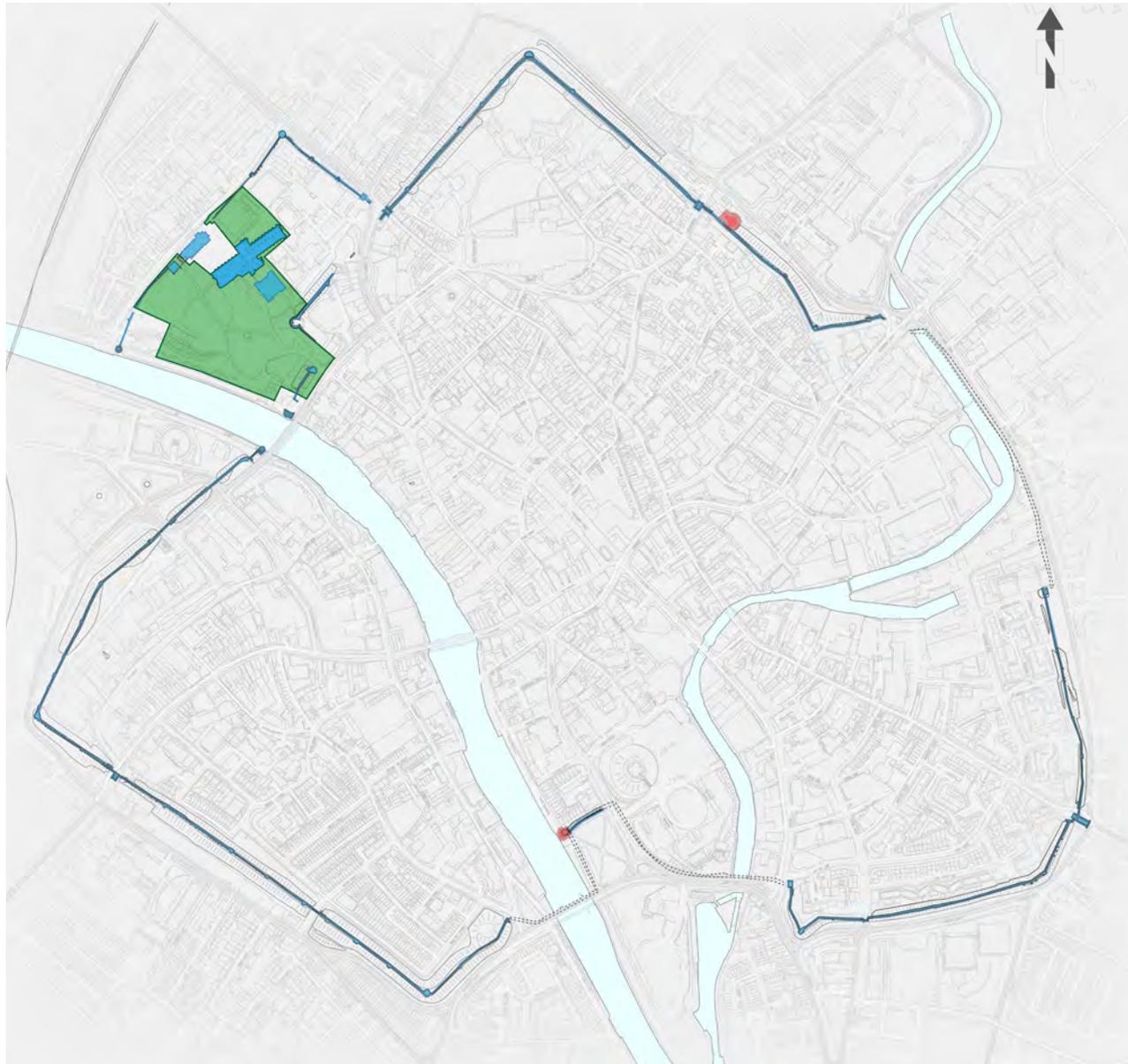
Both the NPPF and the Planning Practice Guidance are material considerations in relevant planning applications and in relation to all listed building consents and planning permission for relevant demolition in a conservation area. They do not apply to the consideration of scheduled monument consents but do apply to the consideration of all other permissions for activities that may affect scheduled monuments.

In considering applications for alterations to listed buildings local authorities are also required to consider the policies on

the historic environment set out in the National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF). The key message of the NPPF is the concept of 'sustainable development' which for the historic environment means that heritage assets 'should be conserved in a manner appropriate to their significance' and that 'great weight should be given to the asset's conservation (the more important the asset, the greater the weight should be).' The NPPF requires that as part of the decision-making process the significance of any heritage assets affected, including any contribution made by their setting, is described; the level of detail being proportionate to the assets' importance. It does however recognise that, in some cases, the significance of a designated heritage asset can be harmed or lost through alteration or destruction of the heritage asset or development within its setting. The NPPF therefore states that any harm or loss to a designated heritage asset 'should require clear and convincing justification'.

Key

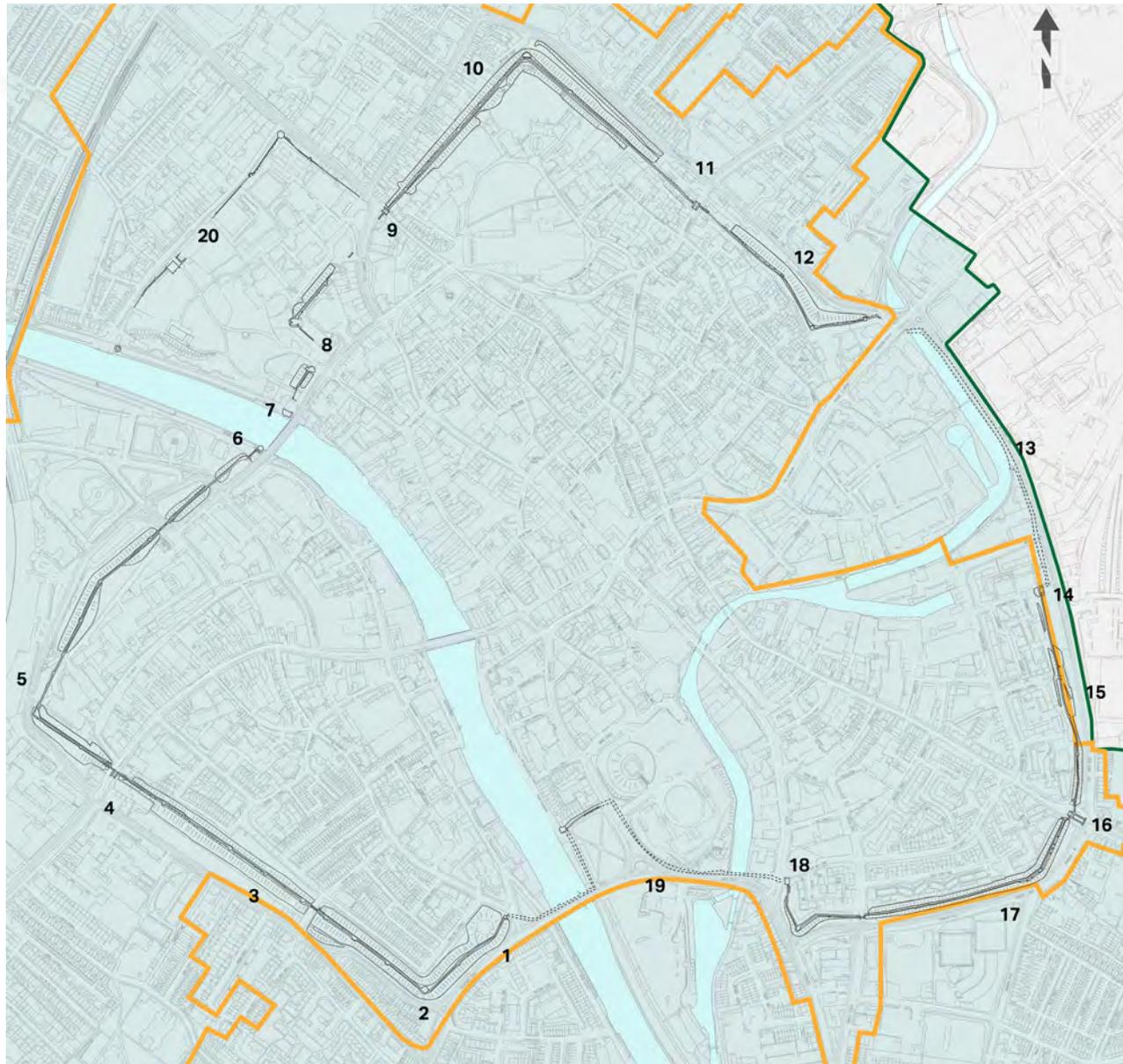
-  Grade I listed
-  Grade II* listed
-  Grade II Registered Park and Garden



1.3 Listed Buildings Associated with the Walls

Key

-  Area of Archaeological Importance
-  Central Historic Core Conservation Area



1.4 Central Historic Core Conservation Area and the Area of Archaeological Importance



2.0 Historic Context

2.1 Summary of Historic Development

The history of the development of the City of York, the City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Precinct have been extensively described elsewhere and therefore only a summary is provided here.¹¹

2.2 Later Prehistoric (4000 BC-AD 43)

Little is known about the area of York in the prehistoric era, there is, however, evidence for human presence and activity in the late Neolithic and Bronze Age in the Vale of York. Aerial photography has revealed the presence of the remains of Iron-Age farmsteads all around the City of York, but to date nothing substantial has been found under the city itself.¹² During the Iron Age, the area was within the tribal territory of the Brigantes, a wide-ranging territory in the north of England.

2.3 Roman (AD 43-410)¹³

The 9th Legion, stationed at Lincoln, was sent to the North to calm the troublesome indigenous populations. Around AD71-74 a new fort, Eboracum, was built at the junction of the rivers Foss and Ouse and protected from the north by thick forest. The first fort's defences were probably earth mounds, covered in turf with

11 Including: RCHME (1972 and 1975); York Archaeological Trust (1978)

12 York Archaeological Trust (1978)

13 See also RCHME (1962)

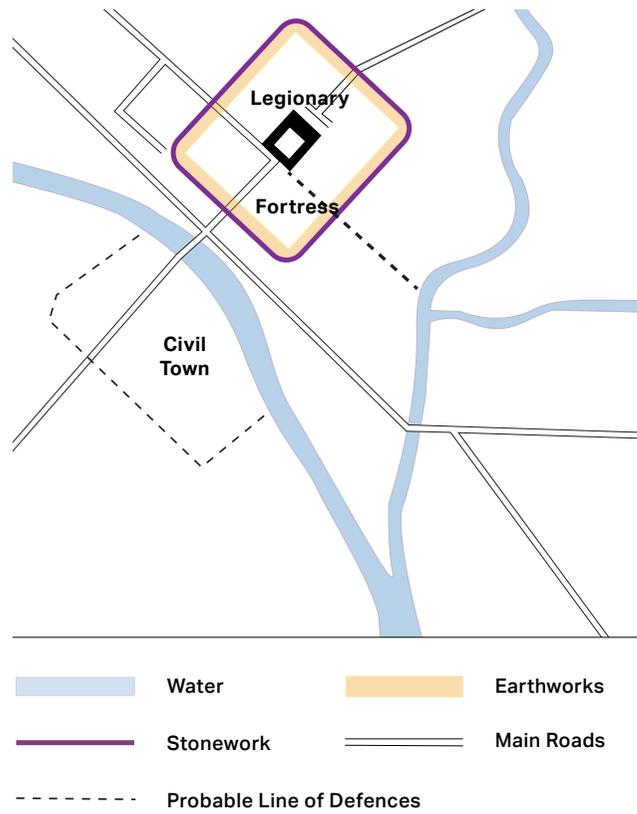
wooden ramparts. Around AD107-8, these were replaced with stone walls with polygonal bastions and multangular towers. The vicus (civilian settlement) developed to the south west of the fort, on the other side of the River Ouse, which also had defences [Plates 2.01 and 2.02].

The adjacent plan shows the St Mary's Abbey Precinct site immediately outside the western walls of the Roman fortress, with the multangular tower forming part of the fortress defences. A walled enclosure or fortified annex to the fortress lay within the area later occupied by St Mary's Abbey Precinct. There is also speculation that a Roman road traversed the St Mary's site, passing under the Abbey gatehouse¹⁴ from Ouse Bridge to the fortress/colonia on an alignment parallel to the river frontage of the fortress.¹⁵

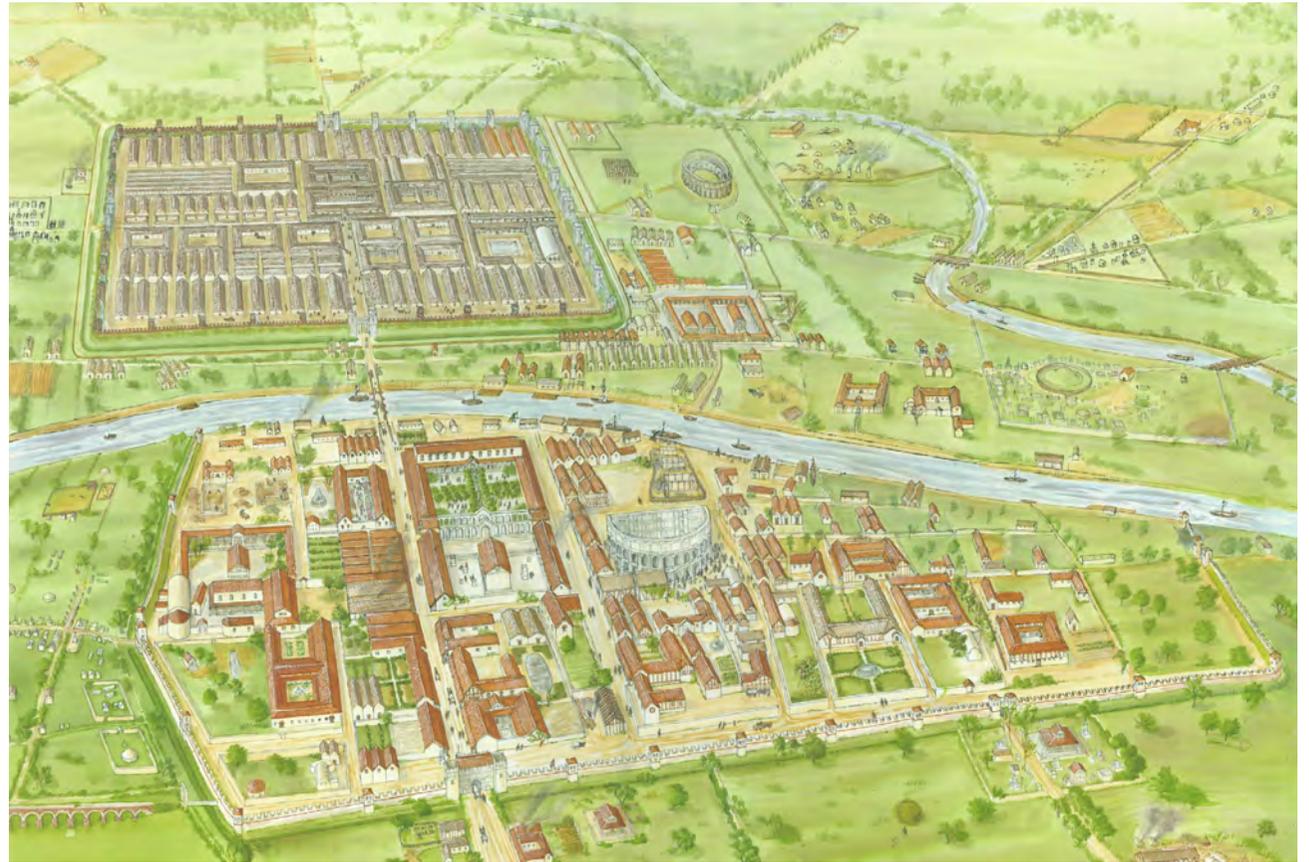
Eboracum was an important place in Roman times: it became capital of the northern province (Britannia Inferior) when Severus's son Caracalla divided Britannia into two around the turn of the third century; by the early third century it had become a colonia, the highest grade of self-governing Roman city. Late in the third century, the Emperor Diocletian again subdivided the provinces of Britain, making Eboracum the capital of Britannia Secunda. Eboracum was then probably the base and residence of the *dux Britanniarum*, in command of the army of the north.

14 RCHME (1975), p4

15 Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates (2005), p11



2.02 York, c. AD 400 (redrawn from RCHME)



2.01 Artist's impression of Roman York (Historic England)

In the early years of the fourth century, the Emperor Constantius died in the colonia with his son, Constantine, being proclaimed Emperor by the troops. This son became Constantine the Great who, in 313, proclaimed the toleration of Christianity throughout the empire; by 314 Eboracum was a bishopric.¹⁶

2.4 Anglian and Early Medieval (AD 410-1066)¹⁷

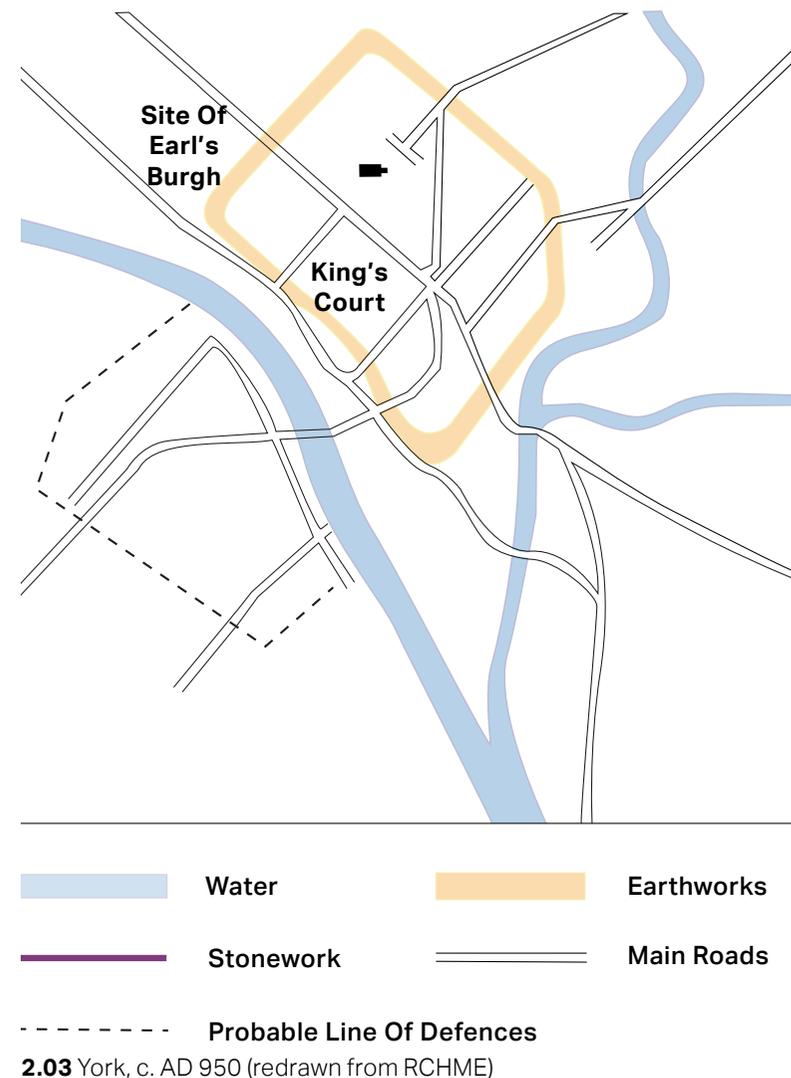
By 410, the Roman army had been withdrawn to defend Rome. The early part of this period saw a succession of invaders from the North and Europe. In the seventh century, under the Angles, the city became Eoforwic and the chief city of King Edwin of the kingdom of Northumbria. Christianity came to the north, with Edwin being baptised in AD627 in a church at York, the predecessor of the Minster. This saw a period of relative calm for the city and in 735 the Pope granted York an Archbishopric.

In the mid-ninth century, the Vikings were raiding the Northumbrian coast north of Eoforwic. They captured the city in 867, made it their capital (Jorvik) and covered the ruined Roman walls with massive earth ramparts. These were later extended to include the suburbs **[Plate 2.03]**.

The Marygate area was known as *Earlsburh* – the Earl’s residence – which comprised a fortified residential complex for

¹⁶ R. Hall (1996), p31

¹⁷ See also RCHME (1972), p7-9



the Earls of Northumbria. This complex was based on the Roman fortress annex and later defined the St Mary's Abbey Precinct.¹⁸

During the Norman Conquest, William the Conqueror built two castles at York (Baile Hill and York Castle - site of Clifford's Tower) to provide protection against the Viking raids. However, both castles were destroyed by a combined force of Anglo-Danes. William rebuilt them and, to reinforce the Norman grip on the north, he laid waste to large areas of land around York. It is likely that the city's defences were heightened and strengthened and the principal bar structures were built at this time (except Monk Bar).

2.5 Medieval (AD 1066-1540)¹⁹

It should be noted that the relationship between the position of the medieval walls and their Roman predecessors is not fully understood, although the lines of some of the surviving walls are certainly constructed along very similar orientations to parts of the Roman city defences.

The Domesday Book, 1086, records that half of York was owned by the King and the other half by influential Normans. During this time, the rebuilding of the Minster began.

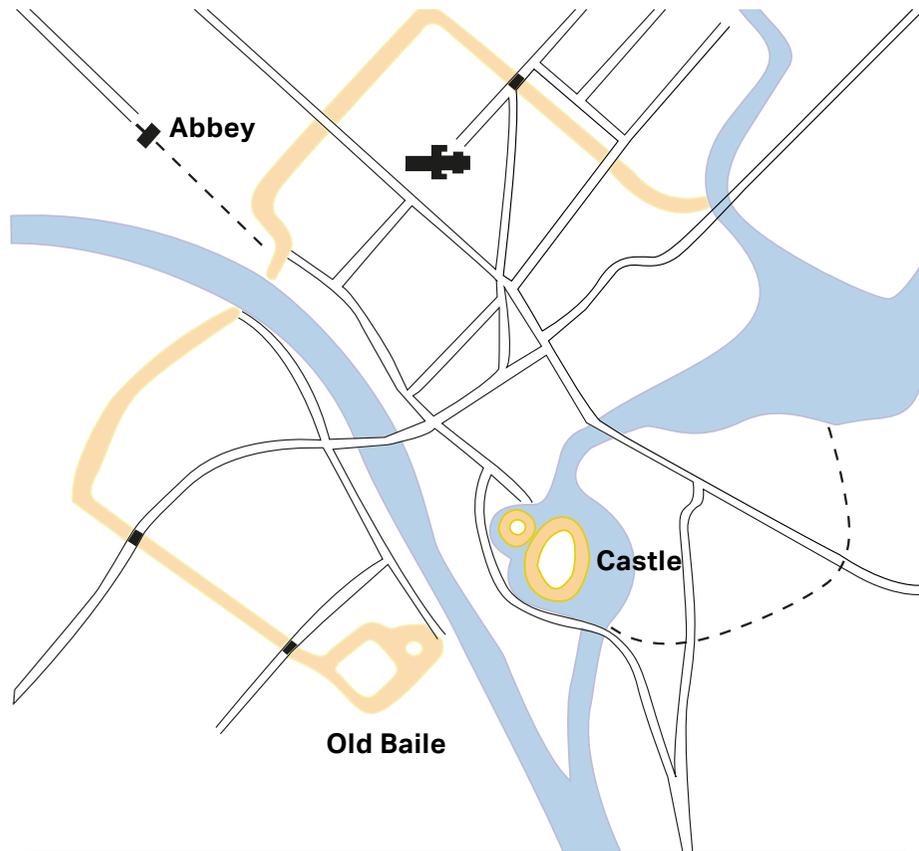
In the 1070s, a Benedictine abbey was founded at St Olave's by Stephen, the first Abbot of York. However, this was considered too small a site for a monastery and shortly thereafter (1089), William II laid the foundation stone of the church and a new abbey, dedicated to St Mary; building on the site adjacent to St Olave's began in 1089. As with all monasteries, St Mary's Abbey developed to create a self-sufficient community and within the Precinct Walls, there was a mixture of agricultural and industrial buildings, together with gardens, orchard and meadow (grazing) land. During the medieval period, St Mary's was one of the ten richest abbeys in England.

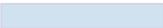
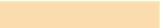
Over the next 300 years, York grew to become the second largest city in the country and the northern capital of England. The City Walls were rebuilt in stone in the period from the mid-13th to the early-14th century [**Plates 2.04 and 2.05**]. As a result of a series of disputes between the Benedictine monks and York's citizens, the Precinct Walls of St Mary's Abbey were built to protect the Abbey.

During the 15th century, the population of York went into decline as a result of the shifting of the important wool industry and the Wars of the Roses (1453-1487). The city did not play a huge role in these wars and at several points had Lancastrian sympathies including at one time becoming the headquarters of Queen Margaret.

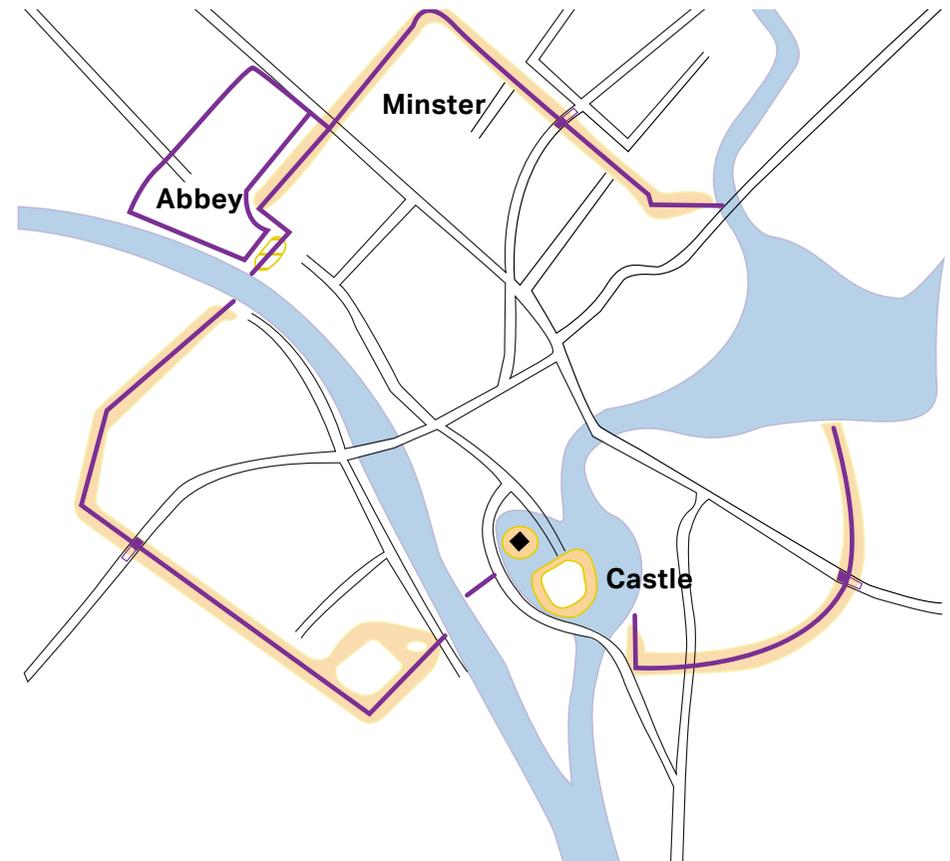
¹⁸ Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates (2005), p13

¹⁹ See also RCHME (1972) p9-20



- | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|---|------------|
|  | Water |  | Earthworks |
|  | Stonework |  | Main Roads |
|  | Probable Line of Defences | | |

2.04 York, c. AD 1200 (redrawn from RCHME)



- | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|---|------------|
|  | Water |  | Earthworks |
|  | Stonework |  | Main Roads |
|  | Probable Line of Defences | | |

2.05 York, c. AD 1350 (redrawn from RCHME)

When he came to power, Edward IV did not forget its Lancastrian sympathies. In 1536, Henry VIII began the Dissolution of the Monasteries. York, as a major religious centre, suffered greatly. All monasteries and friaries were suppressed, with St Mary's Abbey surrendering in 1539. Half of York's buildings formerly owned by the churches were seized by the Crown and sold to royal officials and London merchants. The first surviving account of the walls, by John Leland dates from around this time. However, Henry did strengthen the Council of the North, basing it in York (at the King's Manor) and thus helped York to regain its title as the second city of England.

2.6 Post Medieval – Post Jacobite (AD 1540-1746)²⁰

The city records contain much information about repairs and alterations to the City Walls in the late-16th and early-17th centuries. In the 17th century, Charles I moved the royal court from London to York.

During the Civil War, York was the principal base of the Royal army assembled to fight the Scots. York withstood 11 weeks of siege by the Parliamentarians in 1644 and the Royalists only surrendered following defeat at Marston Moor. The City Walls were heavily damaged during the conflict. A redoubt built on the Mount to the south west of Micklegate held out until the end of the siege. At St Mary's Abbey, there was a skirmish on the site of one of the current bowling greens and St Mary's Tower was

²⁰ See also RCHME (1972) p20-29

blown up, destroying many of the Abbey's records.²¹ All buildings between the Abbey and the Bar were demolished by the Royalists, as part of their destruction of the suburbs to the north, west and east, after the loss of most of their outer defences.

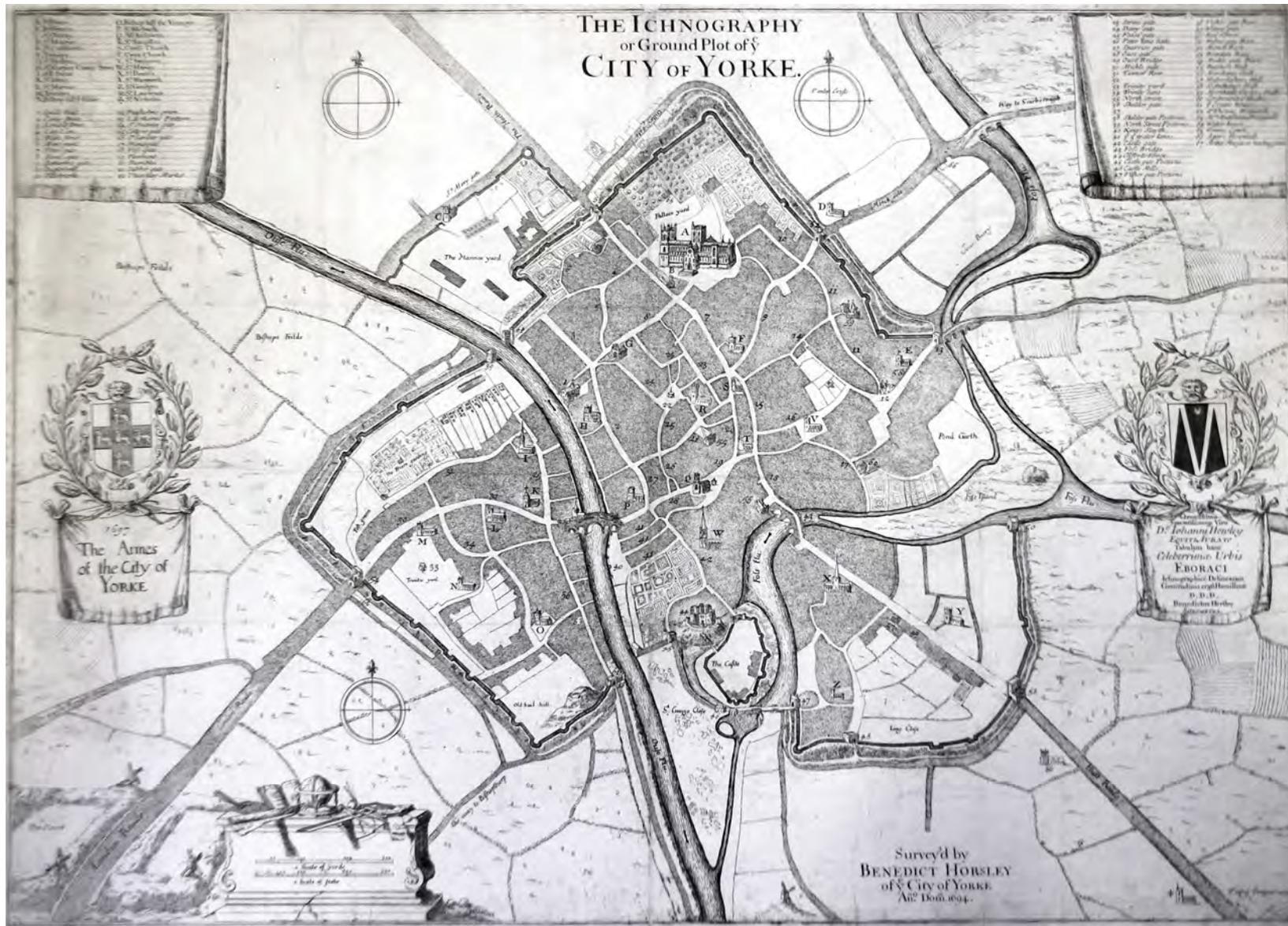
It was first contemplated that the walls could be used as a pleasure walk in the mid-17th century. The mid-18th century saw the transference of use from defensive to recreational purposes. A city charter meant the walls were kept in good repair during the late-17th and the 18th centuries **[Plate 2.06]**. Concurrently, Telford's plant nursery was established at the Abbey Precinct in the 1660's, probably occupying much of the open land within the walled boundary. It soon began to import 'exotic' plants from around the world and became a tourist attraction in its own right.²² Other parts of the Precinct grounds went into use as apartments for royal visitors.

During repair work (1736 to 1741) between Lendal and Monk Bar, consideration was given to providing a brick pavement, while new leases contained conditions which allowed walking on the walls.

The final time the walls were considered for use for military defensive purposes was during the last of the Jacobite rebellions. The walls were overhauled and repaired in 1745 in preparation but it was doubted that they would be strong enough to hold. However, the rebels retreated, returned to Scotland and were defeated at Culloden in April 1746 **[Plate 2.07]**.

²¹ (Nuttgens 2001, p197) Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates (2005), p17

²² Telford's Nursey stocked the gardens of English country house estates in Yorkshire and beyond.



2.06 Horsley's map of York, 1694 (YMT)

2.7 Post Jacobite - Modern (AD 1746 – present)²³

In the Georgian period, York became prominent as the centre for social, sporting and intellectual life in the North. Many eminent people came to York and the city provided inspiration for Laurence Sterne's *Tristram Shandy* and was portrayed in literary works by – among others – Charles Dickens and Wilkie Collins. Parts of the walls were regularly used as a walk in the 18th and 19th centuries.

At St Mary's Abbey, the steady decline of its buildings was compounded by the granting by George I of the use of stone from the Abbey for the restoration of Beverley Minster. In its ruinous state, the Precinct became a visitor attraction as a 'romantic ruin', set within picturesque gardens. This was formalised when the Yorkshire Philosophical Society (YPS) erected the Yorkshire Museum (1827-29), an Observatory (1832-33) and re-landscaped the grounds to designs by Sir John Murray Naesmyth.

York grew rapidly throughout the Victorian period and by 1850 was the centre of a large and expanding railway network. The coming of the railways had a significant impact on the walls when the railway station was constructed inside the City Wall circuit and arches were formed in the walls to allow trains through. The railway pioneer, George Hudson, was involved with the creation of Victoria Bar.

²³ See also RCHME (1972), p29-34

The City Walls avoided comprehensive demolition twice during the 19th century. In 1800, the Corporation of York resolved to demolish the walls and, despite refusal of permission from George III, a number of stretches of Wall, posterns and parts of other structures were taken down. This led to supporters for the retention of the walls forming the York Footpath Association. This group raised money and restored sections of the walls. In 1855, the Board of Health Committee proposed to demolish a large part of the walls between the Red Tower and Walmgate Bar to improve the locality. They argued that the walls prevented the free circulation of air and were therefore a health hazard, but this 'improvement' was not implemented and instead the Corporation of York restored much of the walls and bars during this period.

The latter half of the 19th century saw the heyday of YPS's gardens and greenhouses were constructed to display exotic plants as well as examples of commercially important crop plants such as sugar cane, coffee, tea, ginger and cotton.²⁴ The industries in York, which had developed during the Victorian period, changed little in the first half of the 20th century. The latter part of the century however saw the growth in tourism and the decline of industry that has continued into the first part of the 21st century.

During the Second World War, the ramparts were used to protect the people of York, through the accommodation of a series of air raid shelters, namely those near Baile Hill, near Dewsbury Terrace in Bishophill (thought to be the largest in York), the War

²⁴ Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates (2005), p21



2.08 Birds-eye-view of York by Nathaniel Whittock.jpg (YMT)

Memorial and close to St Leonard's. See **Plate 2.09** for locations and **Plate 2.10** for the shelter uncovered near Baile Hill in 1968.²⁵ After the Second World War, St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls were subject to a programme of restoration (1950 – 1957), whilst the York Art Gallery was extended and restored in 1952. In 1961, the YPS placed the Yorkshire Museum and Gardens in trust to CYC, whereupon the site became fully open to the public.²⁶

The most complete and up-to-date gazetteer of the City Walls was produced by the Royal Commission on Historical Monuments England in 1972. In the 48 years since this publication, the walls have been subject to an ongoing programme of repairs and restoration, including significant work to Micklegate Bar, Bootham Bar, Monk Bar and Walmgate Bar. The first three bars have had reinforced concrete ring beams inserted to strengthen their structures. Reinforced concrete has also been used elsewhere on the walls in underpinning works and in works to towers, where – typically – heavy Victorian infilling of the towers has been removed and a reinforced concrete slab roof installed to support the walkway. Another important development has been the widespread deployment of stainless steel ties to arrest the tendency of the walls to spread, with two outer walls tending to move in opposite directions. The first of these ties was installed in the 1970s, but their installation was systemised after the compilation of a detailed survey of

25 Raids over York Team, pers comm (2021)

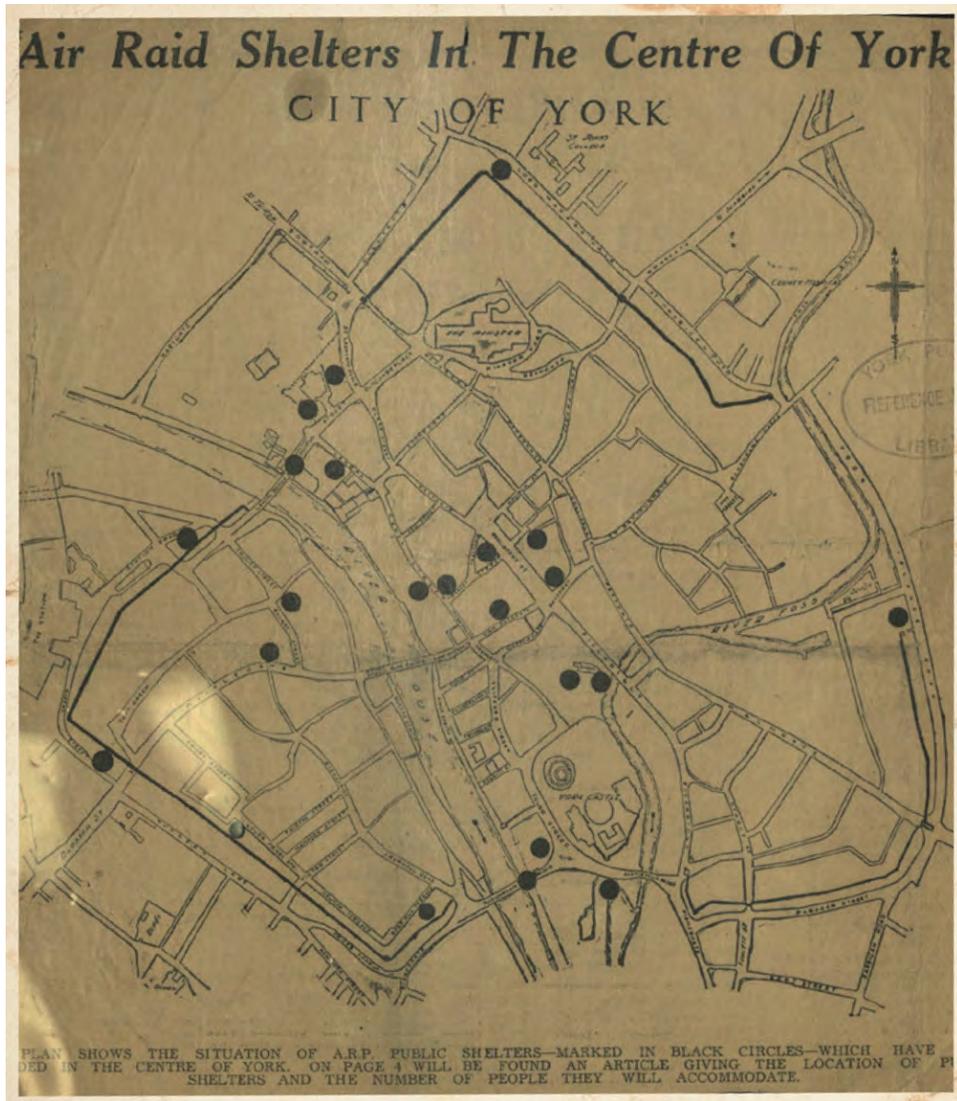
26 ibid

the walls in 1991.²⁷ This survey established the precise condition of the walls, including sections taken at 10m intervals to provide a baseline for future monitoring. It established a provisional programme of works over a 15-year period. An update of the work completed since that date was produced by the City Engineer in 2004 (but this is unavailable at present) and has instead been drawn from D. Pywell, *City of York: Survey of City Walls*, 1991 and its subsequent update by the City Engineer.

In c.2006, CYC signed an agreement for a Generic Scheduled Monument Consent with English Heritage (now Historic England), simplifying the consent process for works to the scheduled monuments. Given that a Generic Scheduled Monument Consent allows works to be undertaken without formal approval, records of work carried out on the walls are held by CYC. The recently retired City Archaeologist - John Oxley – has been consulted in the creation of a list of principle works to the walls since c.2000, which is summarised within the following section. In addition, a review of recent planning files relating directly to works to the walls and a review of major developments within their setting has been carried out – these are summarised within the following section and lists are provided in [Appendix IX and Appendix X](#).

Today the walls are a key heritage attraction for the city and are visited by thousands of people a year. CYC has a programme of repair and maintenance, which is supported through technical advice from Historic England.

27 D. Pywell (1991)



2.09 Civil Defence booklet frontcover map showing City Centre Air-Raid Shelters (YMT)



2.10 WW2 shelter facing motte at Baile Hill, 1968 (Angela Wheatcroft)

2.8 General chronology of the walls

The following pages contain an illustrated general chronology of major events relating to the City Walls and bars and the Precinct Walls of St Mary's Abbey. While the relationship of the surviving walls with the Roman remains is uncertain in many areas, the principal developments in this period are included here for reference.

71-2



First Roman Fortress built for the Ninth legion ('Corduroy' green wood foundation with clay or sand rampart and turf front)

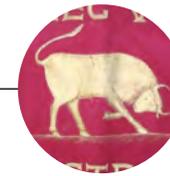
79-85

Fortress levelled and rebuilt (Oak strapping foundation carrying stiff clay rampart with turf front. Timber towers)

107-8

Fortress rebuilt in stone, with polygonal bastions and multangular towers

c.122



Ninth Legion replaced by the Sixth Legion

197



Fortress reconstructed after damage by Maeatae (Scottish tribes)

208-13



Court of Severus at York, 211 Severus died at York, by 213 capital of lower Britain: civil town becomes a colonia

306



Death of Constantius I at York, Constantine proclaimed Emperor

c.650

Possible date for construction of Anglian Tower (Tower 19)

867



York captured by the Danes. Earth ramparts introduced

c.930



Athelstan destroys a Danish Fort

1068

William I builds two castles (York Castle and the Old Baile) King's Fishpond formed

1069



Danes destroy the two castles and William I rebuilds them

c.1100-1200

Stone gateways erected, replacing timber gates. Micklegate and Walmgate Bars first mentioned

1154



Archbishop William of York welcomed at Micklegate Bar

1190



Anti-semitic attack on the castle and Jewish refugees within

1215

Geoffrey de Neville strengthens city defences on the east and south-west

1245-70



Henry III rebuilds York Castle in stone, including Clifford's Tower

1250-70

Stone walls built in central and Micklegate areas

1266



St. Mary's Abbey walls are built

14th century



Bootham Bar heightened to house a portcullis. Barbican added to Walmgate Bar

1315

Fishergate Bar first mentioned

1317-1340

Old Baile fortified under Archbishopric of William Melton

1345

Thomas de Staunton contracted to build walls from Fishergate Bar to the Foss

c.1350



Monk Bar built

1405



Thomas Mowbray, 4th Earl of Norfolk's severed head displayed on Bootham Bar

c.1440

Circular gunport introduced near the base of Tower 23 (Section 10)

1466

Old Baile in hands of citizens

1483-5



Richard III dismantles Castle in preparation for rebuilding

1487



Sir William Todd restores wall near Fishergate Bar. The Lords Scrope unsuccessfully attack Bootham Bar

1489



Rebels burn Walmgate and Fishergate Bars (latter blocked until 1827)

1490

Red Tower built

1502

Wall between Walmgate Bar and Foss rebuilt

c.1505



Fishergate Postern Tower built

1569

City Walls prepared for siege

1581-6



Rear facades of Bootham, Micklegate, and Walmgate Bars rebuilt

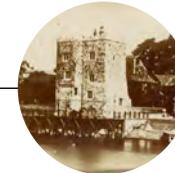
1596-7

Robert Redhead partially demolished Clifford's Tower and outer wall of York Castle

16th century

Fishergate Postern reroofed

1616



Lendal Tower first used as waterworks

1642

Walls prepared for siege: all postern gates blocked up, canon mounted on the four main gates and Baile Hill. Clifford's Tower restored by the Earl of Cumberland

1644



Siege by three Parliamentary armies. Walmgate Bar damaged and Bootham Bar bombarded

1645-69

Tofts and Layerthorpe Towers rebuilt
Walls restored

1651

Bootham Bar restored

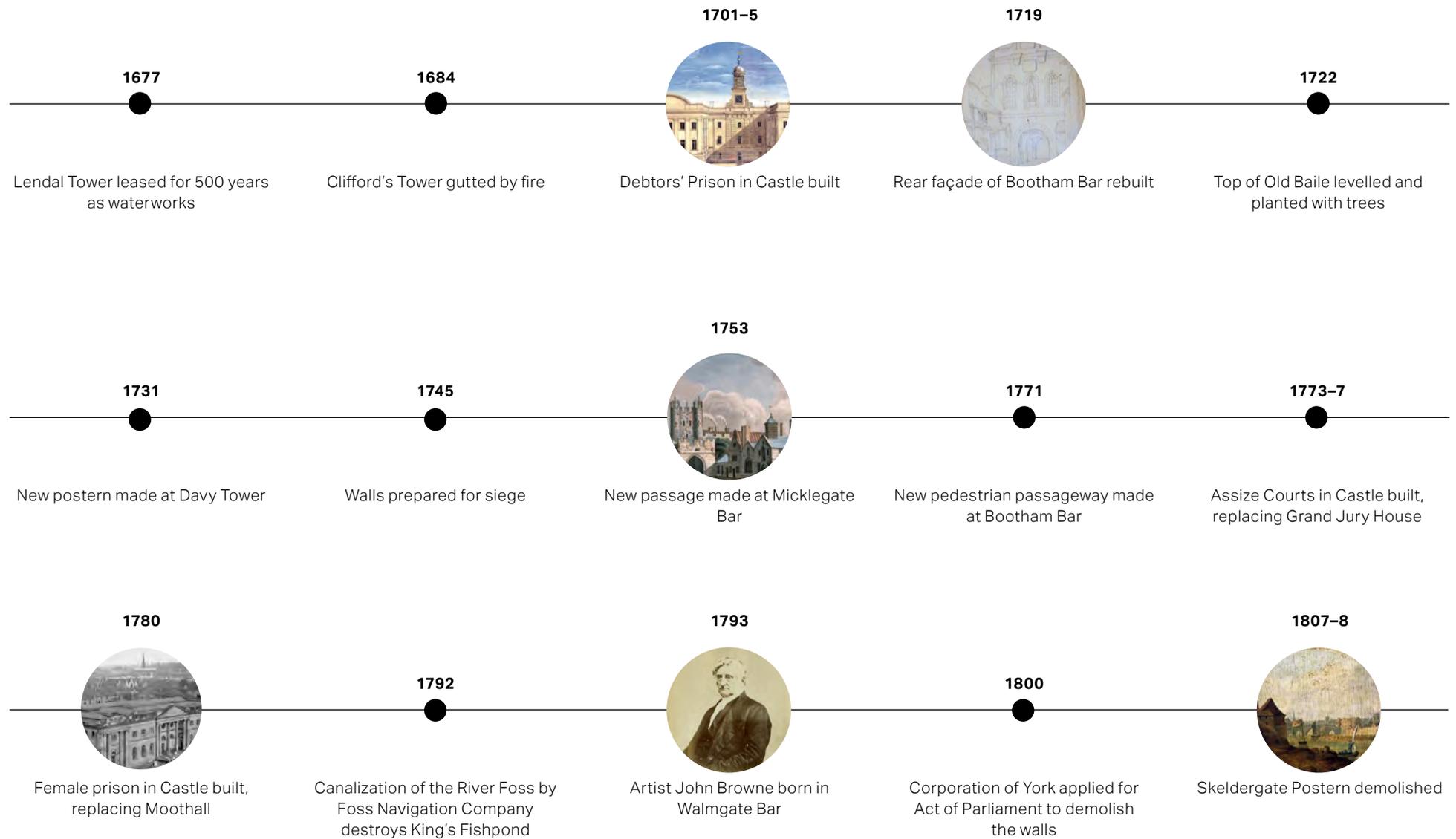
1667-8

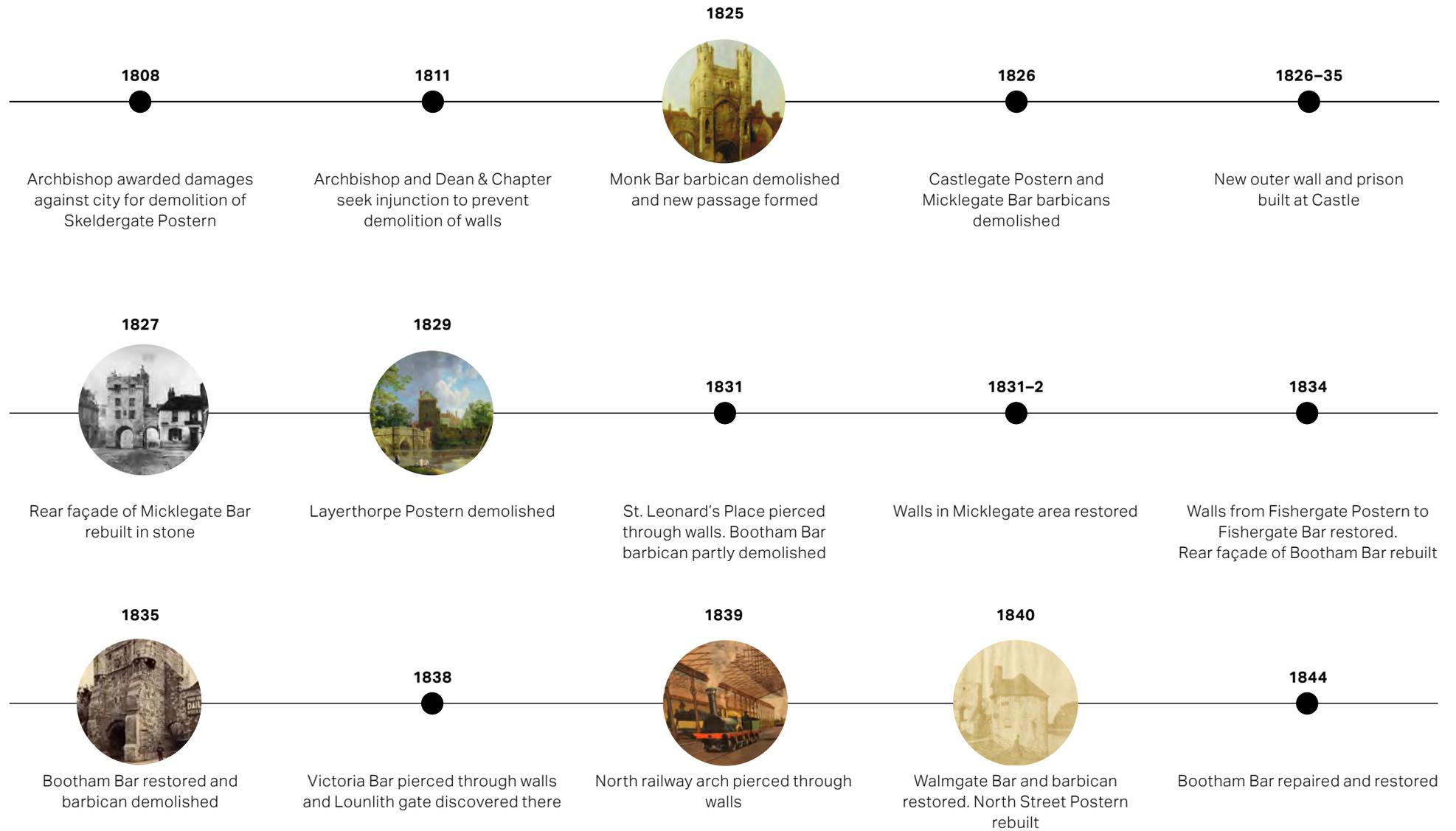


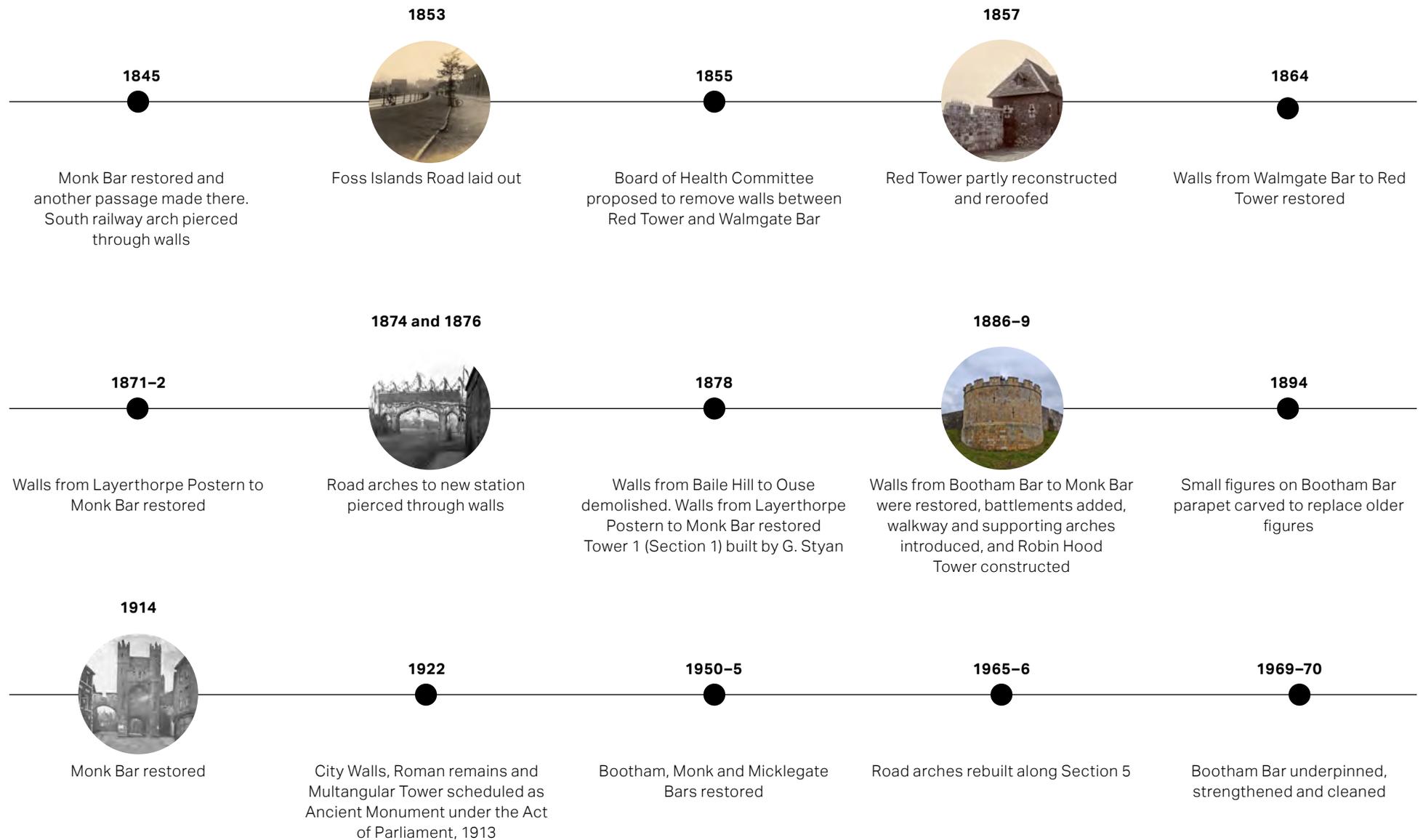
Grand Jury House in Castle rebuilt

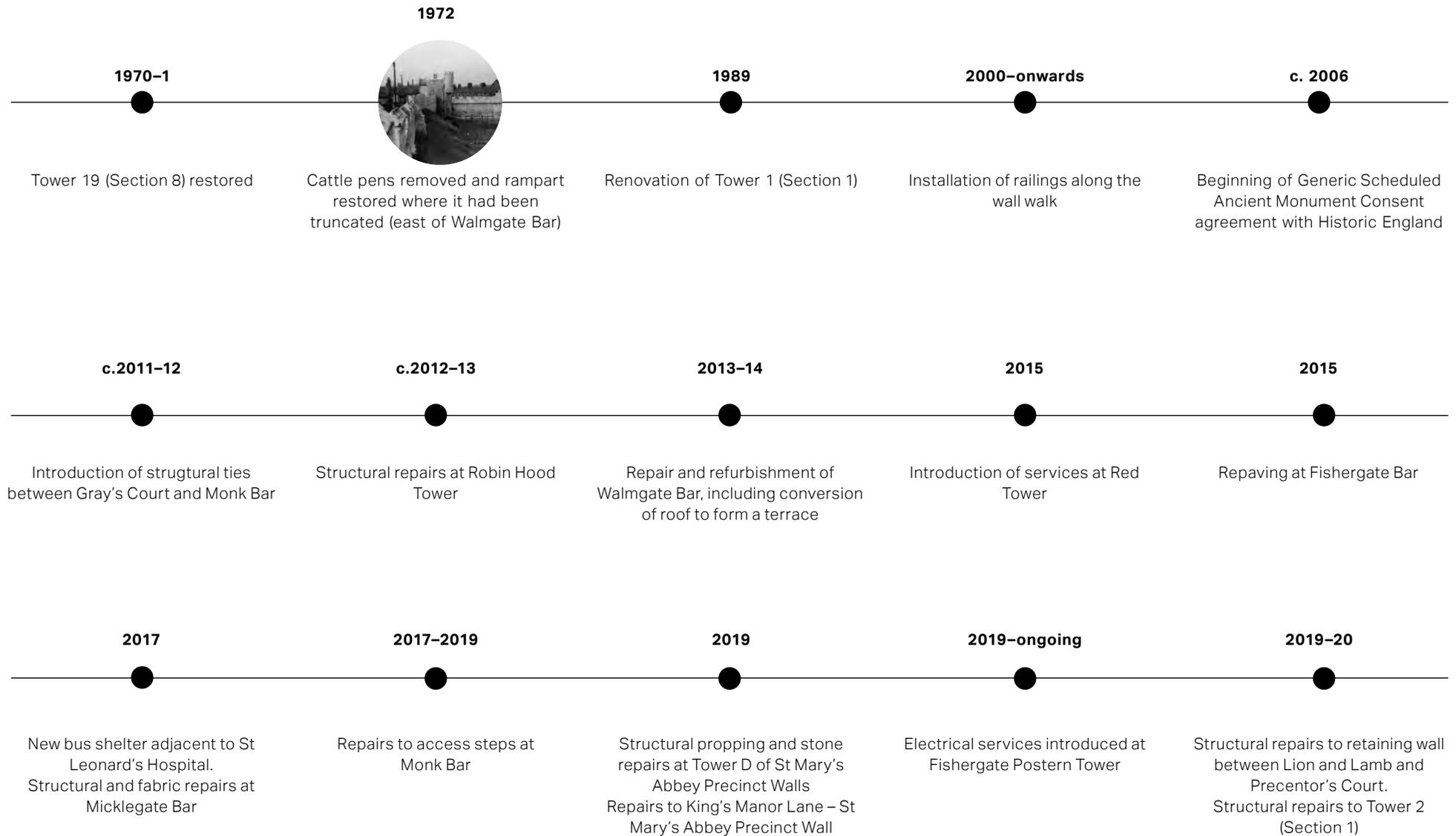
1674-5

Moothall or Sessions House in Castle built









2.8.1 Detailed Chronology by Section

Section 1: Tower 1 to Bitchdaughter Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section includes the site of Baile Hill, the remains of the motte and bailey castle built by William I, whose ownership and defence was often disputed between city and church. The castle had a rampart and ditch defence enclosing this southern corner of the City Walls for around 800 years before it was built over, the ramparts along this section and bearing north west towards Victoria Bar are the remains of the bailey rampart. Of the ditch, only a slight depression can be seen in the rampart to the west near Tower 5. The Walls themselves appear to have at first been timber palisade defences, rebuilt in stone in c.1327-40. Tower 2 appears a slightly later addition, as it is not fully bonded into the Wall.²⁸ This section of the Walls once extended as far as the River Ouse to the east, where a Tower (Skeldergate) and postern gate (both now demolished) were also situated. The Walls no longer extend beyond Cromwell Road (Tower 1). The first second of the wall walk was constructed between Skeldergate Postern and Victoria Bar in the 18th century, of brick but described as ruinous by 1802.²⁹ Second World War air raid shelters were found here during an excavation in 1968.³⁰ Concrete underpinning was introduced by the Ministry of

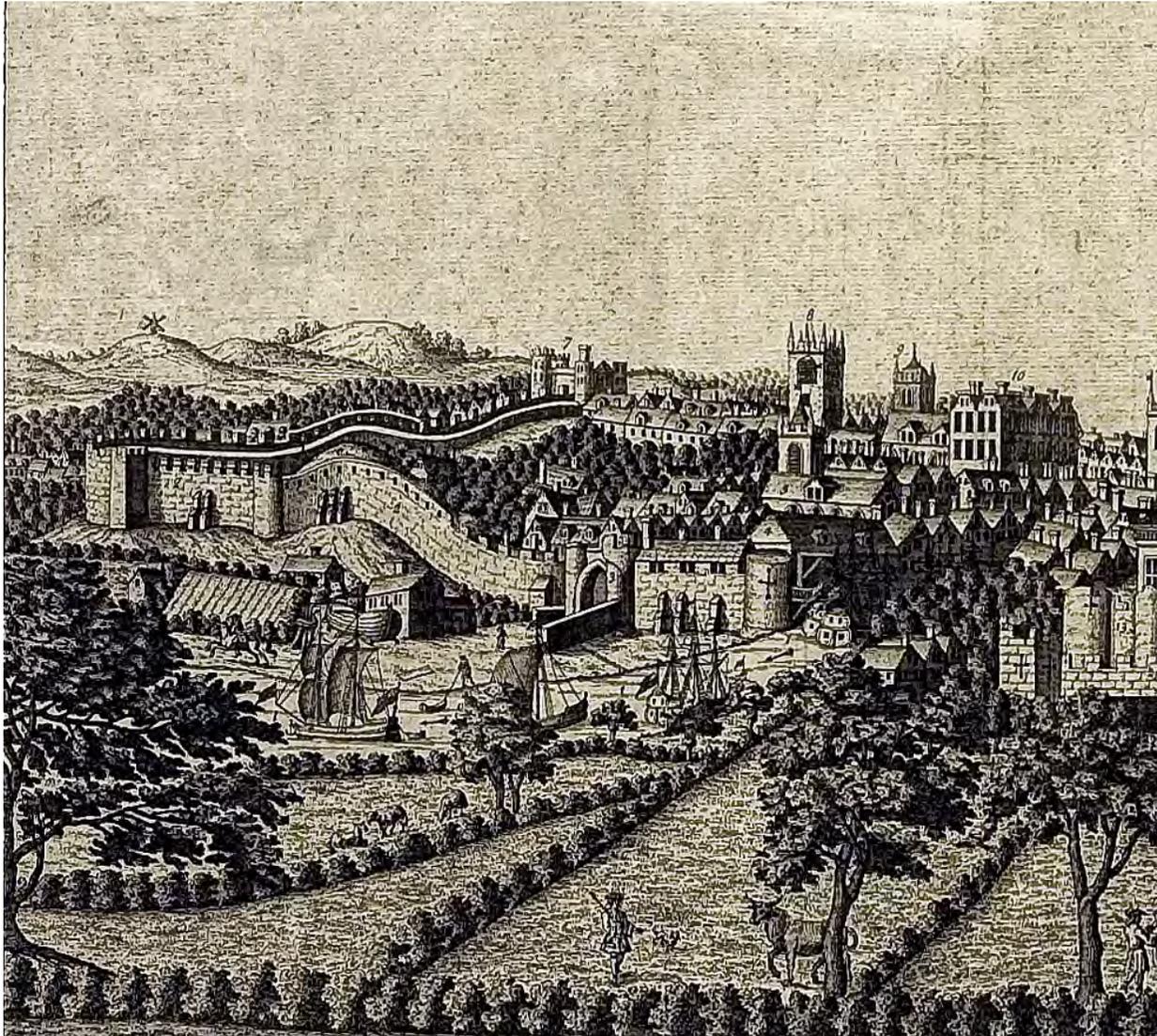
Works in the 1950s to repair movement in Tower 2 and a series of continuous repairs have been carried out on the Walls in this section during the course of the 20th century to present day – currently structural repairs are being undertaken at Tower 2. In c.2013, the Bonding Warehouse was converted into apartments and a new walkway introduced opposite Tower 1 **[Plates 2.10-2.13]**.

28 Wilson, B, 2019

29 ibid

30 Raids Over York, pers Comm, 2021

To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.11 Detail from Edmond Barker's South-East Prospect of York, 1718, showing Skeldergate Tower and postern (YMT).



2.12 Late 19th century photograph of Tower 1, (with open urinal to the right of the Tower) as built (CYC)



2.13 19th-century view from Bitchdaughter Tower towards Baile Hill (CYC).

Section 1 Chronology

Roman–1322

Roman period Area inside Walls in area close to Old Baile is the site of a cemetery, probably relating to the Sixth Legion

Roman–1066 Artefacts from this period have been found at the site, it is positioned to the south east of the known colonia

1068 or 1069 William the Conqueror has a motte and bailey castle built (The Old Baile or Baile Hill)

1069 Danes destroy the Old Baile

c.1069 The Normans rebuild the Old Baile

Prior to 1300 (1194-8?) The Old Baile passes into archbishops' possession

1308 Citizens break down gates and Archbishop Greenfield orders their excommunication

1309 Archbishop Greenfield orders payment for making and planting of a foss at Baile Hill site

1315 First mention of gate at Skeldergate Postern

1322 Agreement reached between Archbishop Melton and the citizens for mutual defence of the Old Baile during war

14th Century–1640

Early-14th century Archbishop Melton built wooden defences at the castle

After 1327-c.1340 Stone walls erected at the Old Baile site (Tower 1 – Tower 5)

1380 First mention of chain stretching across the river from Skeldergate Postern Tower to Davy Tower

1403 Skeldergate Postern (or Crane Tower) first mentioned

1423 City Walls at Old Baile site in poor repair

c.1466 Citizens granted possession of the Old Baile

1466 Old Baile site leased for grazing by the city

1487 (and 16th and 17th centuries) Site used for musters

1601 New door made for Skeldergate Postern

1609 Annual 'view of artillery' held at the Old Baile site. Skeldergate Postern enlarged for Archbishop's coach

1629 Skeldergate Postern reduced to previous size

c.1640 House built over Skeldergate Postern

1642–1882

1642-44 Alterations made to Baile Hill mound (SE side) to accommodate two cannon placed on it during the Civil War. Palisades placed in the river to stop passage of enemy boats (removed 1645). Skeldergate Postern blocked up (re-opened 1645 or 1648)

1722 Henry Pawson levelled the top of the hill and planted trees

1757 Watch house built at Skeldergate Postern

1802-7 Prison, designed by Peter Atkinson erected in north part of bailey

1806 Part of Skeldergate Postern collapsed

1807 Skeldergate Postern demolished

1831 New Arch built to allow access to the now named Cromwell Road

1868 Prison closed

1878 Wall from Baile Hill to river demolished, including New Arch. Tower 1 built by G. Styan

1880 Prison demolished

1882 Most of bailey area sold to builders, who probably erected the houses now standing on this site

18th Century–2020

18th and 19th centuries Bailey (or 'the Hollow') used for Shrovetide games. Ferry ran across the river from Skeldergate Tower to Davy Tower until 1881

1950s Concrete underpinning introduced to repair movement at Tower 2 by the Ministry of Works.

1968-9 Archaeological excavations carried out on the mound found, amongst other things, that a flight of steps, cut into clay and probably faced with wood, had existed on the south-west face

1987 Wall repairs, including consolidation

1989 Tower 1 renovated

2020–ongoing Tower 2 repair works

Section 2: Bitchdaughter Tower

Built in stone c.1327, as part of Archbishop Melton's improvements to the defences of The Old Baile, Bitchdaughter Tower stands at the south-west corner of the former castle bailey. In the 15th century the Tower was used as a king's gaol, but in 1566 the ruinous inner part of the Tower was demolished to provide stone for repairs to Ouse Bridge. Some or all of the structure of the Tower as it exists today may date from the construction there of a watch house in 1645.

Section 2 Chronology

1451–1645

1451-2 City paid for repairs to the King's gaol: 'le bydoutre'
1566 Mention of 'Biche Doughter tower' being in poor repair
1645 Watch house built here and tower probably rebuilt at same time

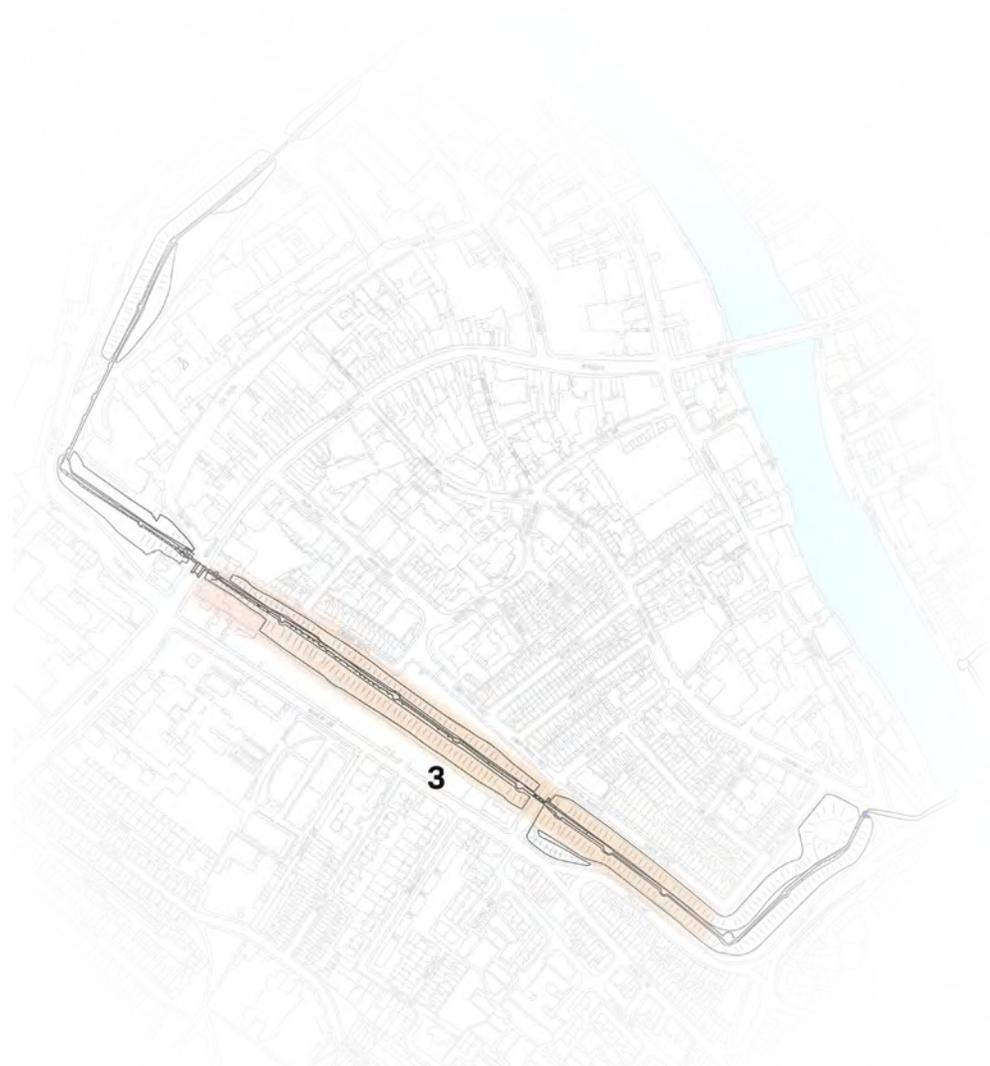
1676–1845

1676 Chimney from fireplace in small internal room appears in use in historical illustration
1845 Described as a cow house

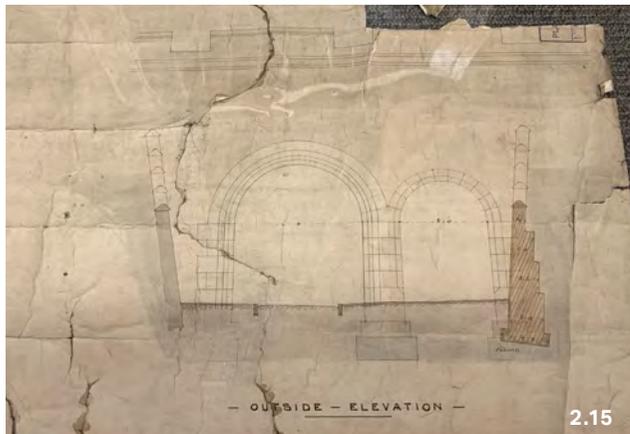
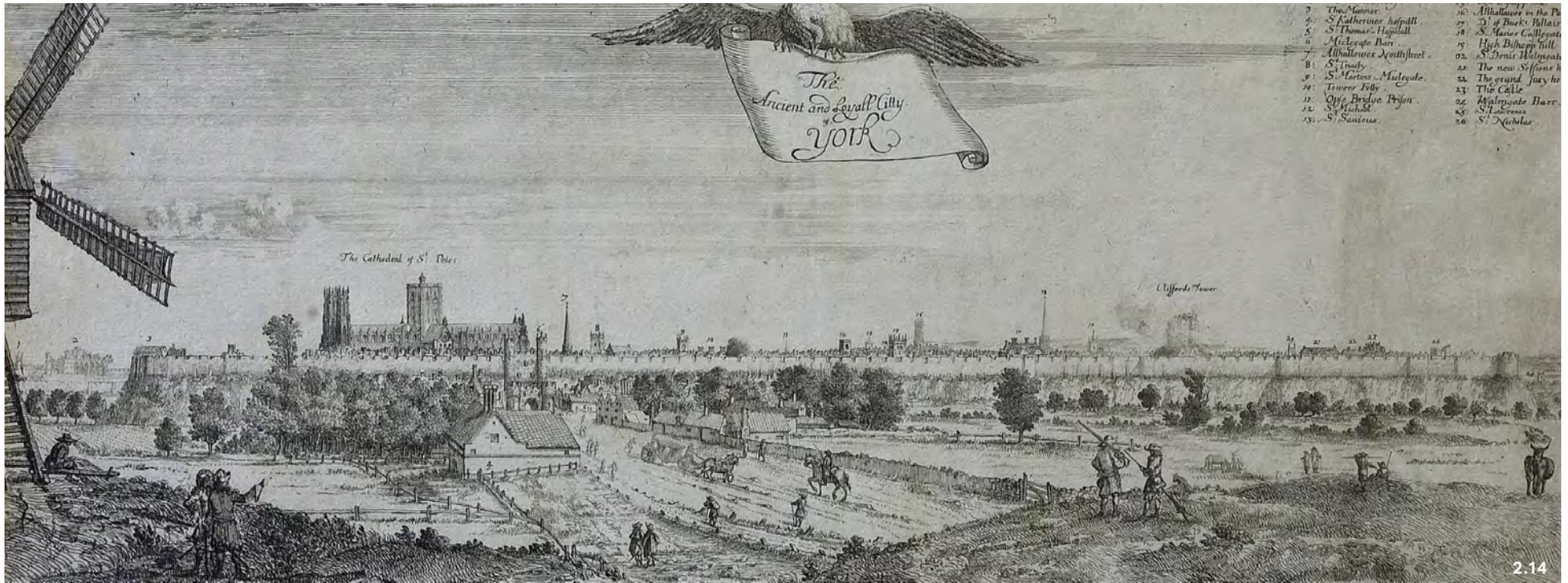
To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 

Section 3: Bitchdaughter Tower to Micklegate Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

The section comprises the remainder of the defences of the Old Baile, built by Archbishop Melton (Towers 3 to 5), and the length of City Wall between there and the city's west gate (Micklegate Bar). Victoria Bar was created in 1838 on the initiative of George Hudson to serve the growing population of the Nunnery Lane area. During the course of the works the remains of an earlier entrance through the Walls, the 'Lounelith', was discovered. Tower 7 is known as Sadler Tower, and is of the 13th-century type [Plates 2.14-2.16].



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 

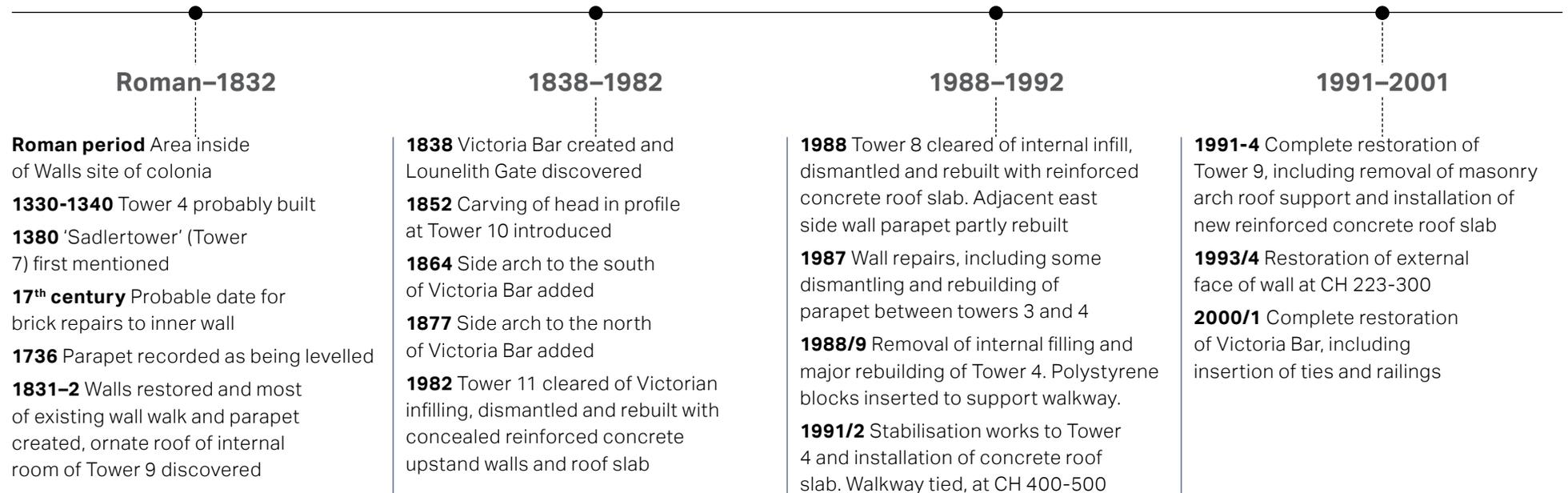


2.14 William Lodge's Prospect of York, showing the stretch of wall between Tofts Tower (on the left) and Bitchdaughter Tower on the right (YMT).

2.15 1865 plan showing proposals for a second arch at Victoria Bar (CYC).

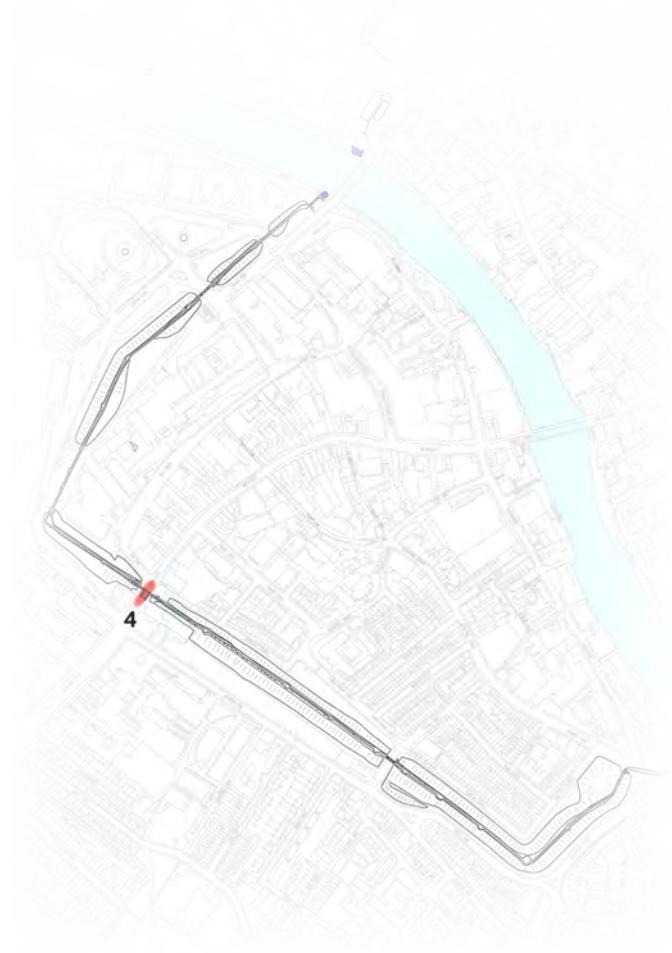
2.16 Late 19th-century photograph showing Victoria Bar after the addition of both side arches (CYC).

Section 3 Chronology



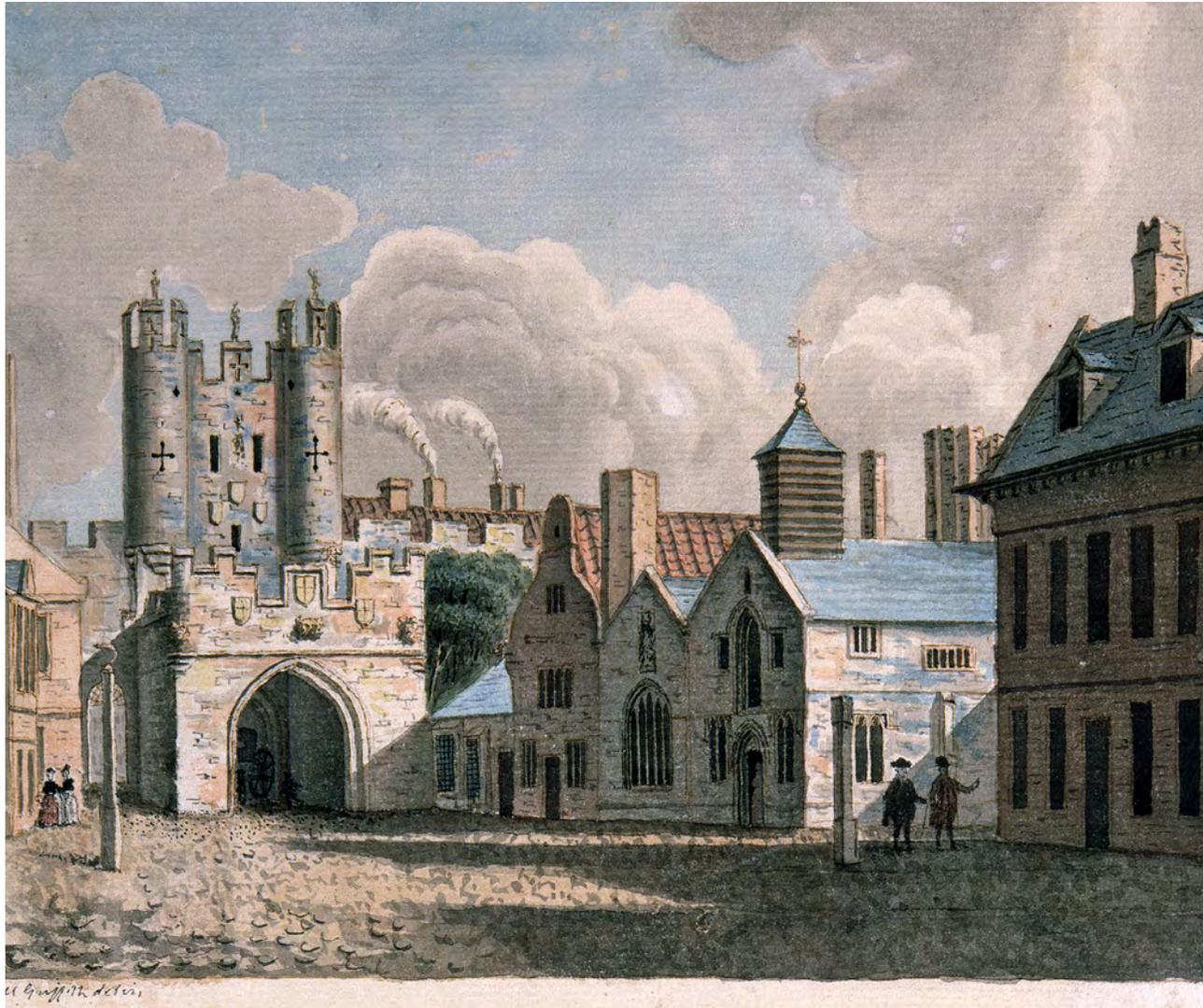
Section 4: Micklegate Bar

Formally 'Micklelith' or 'the great gate,' this is the traditional entrance of monarchs to the city. It was also the traditional place to display the severed heads of traitors and rebels. Many repairs and alterations have been made over the years and the rooms above the Bar have had many uses, including as a prison, as a police house, for a fencing club, for storage and, currently, as a museum. The remains of a minor Roman road have been found just within the gate. Originally having a barbican and inner façade similar to those remaining at Walmgate, this Bar remains an architectural and historical gem, and arguably still the 'great gate' of York. Gates were introduced to the walkway in c.2005 and the Bar was refurbished and repaired in 2017-18³¹ [Plates 2.17-2.19].



31 John Oxley, pers comm, 2020

To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.17 Moses Griffiths' 1777 view of Micklegate Bar, including its barbican (YMT).



2.18 Natta's drawing of the rear of Micklegate Bar, showing the 16th-century building on its inner face (YMT).



2.19 19th-century photograph of the outside of Micklegate Bar after the removal of the barbican, but before the rebuilding of the arch on the left (CYC).

Section 4 Chronology

Roman–1415

Roman period Site of colonia inside Bar, exact limites unknown, but some evidence of burials internally may indicate a Roman settlement expanding over existing cemetery

Early-12th century Outer arch and passage built

1154 Archbishop William of York welcomed at Micklegate Bar

1196 House built over Micklegate gate

14th century (possibly 1350-1375) Upper external stories built to house a portcullis, barbican also constructed

1403 Head of Sir Henry Percy displayed on Bar

1405 Head of Sir William Plumpton displayed on Bar

1415 Head of Lord Scrope displayed on Bar

1460–1635

1460 Head of the Duke of York displayed on Bar

1461 Head of the Earl of Devon displayed on Bar

1486 Henry VII elaborately received at the Bar

1511 Two guns received for the Bar

1541 Elaborate preparations for entrance of Henry VIII (he finally entered through Walmgate)

1572 Head of the Earl of Northumberland displayed on Bar

1585 Façade of Bar rebuilt (probably resembled the timber framed façade at Walmgate)

1603 Statue erected on Bar

1617 Gateway painted and gilded for royal visit

1635 Gateway painted and gilded for royal visit

1644–1810

c.1644 Royal arms on Bar replaced by Commonwealth's

1650 Gates renewed

1660 Commonwealth arms 'blotted out'

1663 Heads of four of the Farnley Wood conspirators displayed on Bar

1670 Reconstruction of outer arch (probably of the barbican), Bar gilded

1716 Bar restored

1729 Room over Bar used for prisoners

1737 Arms of Lord Mayor added

1746 Heads of William Conolly and James Mayne displayed on Bar (two of the Jacobite rebels captured at the Battle of Culloden)

1753 Arched passageway made through rampart to the north

1797 Keys to gates lost

1810 Part of barbican side wall collapsed

1826–2018

1826 Barbican removed

1827 Inner façade and rear half of Bar rebuilt, foot passage made to the south, battlements of adjoining walls lowered, stairs built to wall walk on north side

1863 Two arches replace single arch on north side

1918-52 Bar used for storage

1950 Small statues on top of the Bar replaced

1952 Bar restored

1968 Repairs to Bar after vehicle damage. West bartizan dismantled to roof level and rebuilt

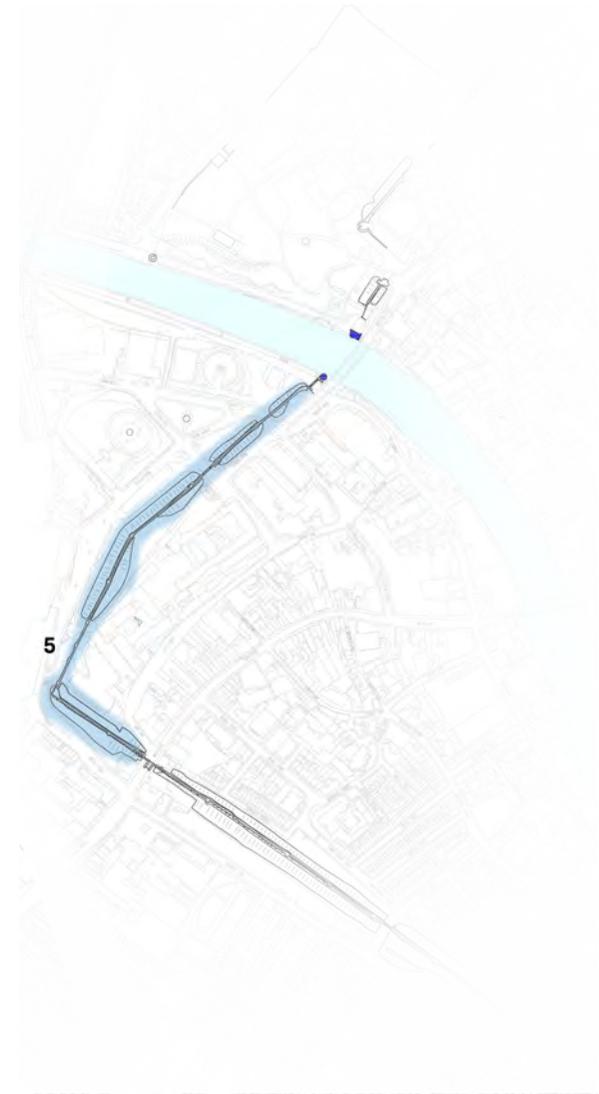
1985 Micklegate Bar Museum opened

2005 Bar floodlit

2017/18 Major refurbishment and roof repairs

Section 5: Micklegate Bar to Barker Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

This stretch of Wall looks comparatively modern and has certainly been rebuilt many times. Many of the most dramatic changes were due to the coming and expansion of the railway – a pair of arches were made in the Walls north of Tofts Tower to give access to the original York railway station, and its goods facilities, and two road arches were installed at the expense of Tower 18 as part of the development of the new railway station outside the Walls. Within the ramparts, air raid shelters were introduced during the Second World War (the one behind the War Memorial, intended for railway staff, still exists – see Plate 3.61 for an image of this). This is one of the few stretches of wall walk that comes down to pavement level (partly a result of the construction of the approach road of Lendal Bridge (1860-63)). This section terminates with the postern, rebuilt to allow easy access to the railway coal yards outside the Walls. The two railway arches spanning Station Avenue and Station Rise were stabilised in 2004-05 and interpretation panels installed. The mixed-use Hudson Quarter development, between Stephenson House and the Council Offices, was almost complete at the time of writing **[Plates 2.20-2.28]**.



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.20 The City Wall, looking from Micklegate Bar towards Tofts Tower (13) and the railway station, early 20th century (CYC).



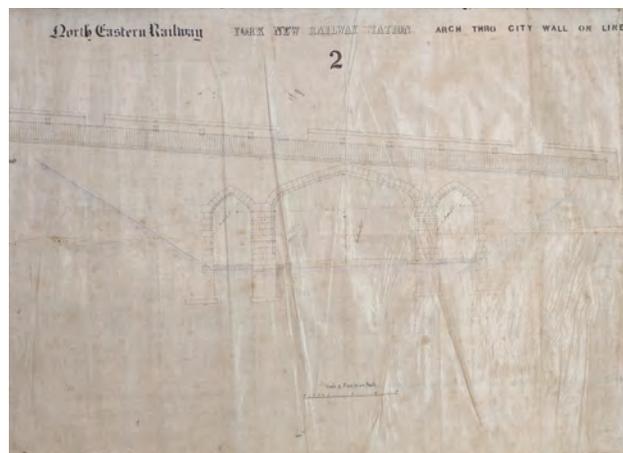
2.21 Halfpenny's 1807 etching of the inner face of the walls from Tower 17 towards Tower 13 (YMT).



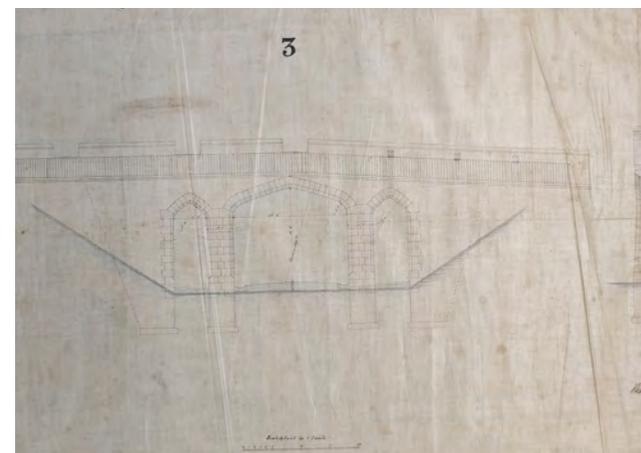
2.22 Detail from Nathaniel Whittock's birds-eye view of York, showing Micklegate Bar, the section of wall to the Ouse, and York Station within the walls (YMT).



2.23 The railway arches, from outside the Walls, looking towards Tower 13. The nearer arch was the first to be made, in 1839 (CYC).



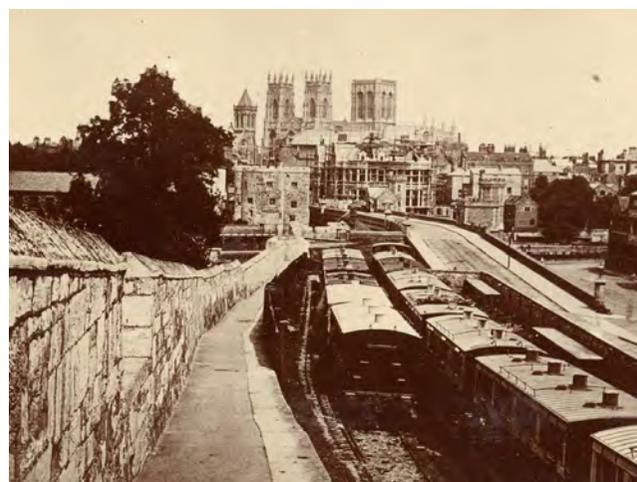
2.24 Original drawing of the south-western rail, now road arch (CYC).



2.25 Drawing of the proposed north-eastern rail, now road arch, connecting Rougier Street to the new railway station (CYC).



2.26 The Rougier Street archway, as raised in 1906 to permit the passage of double-decker trams. The inserted masonry is clearly visible in the arch (Private Collection).

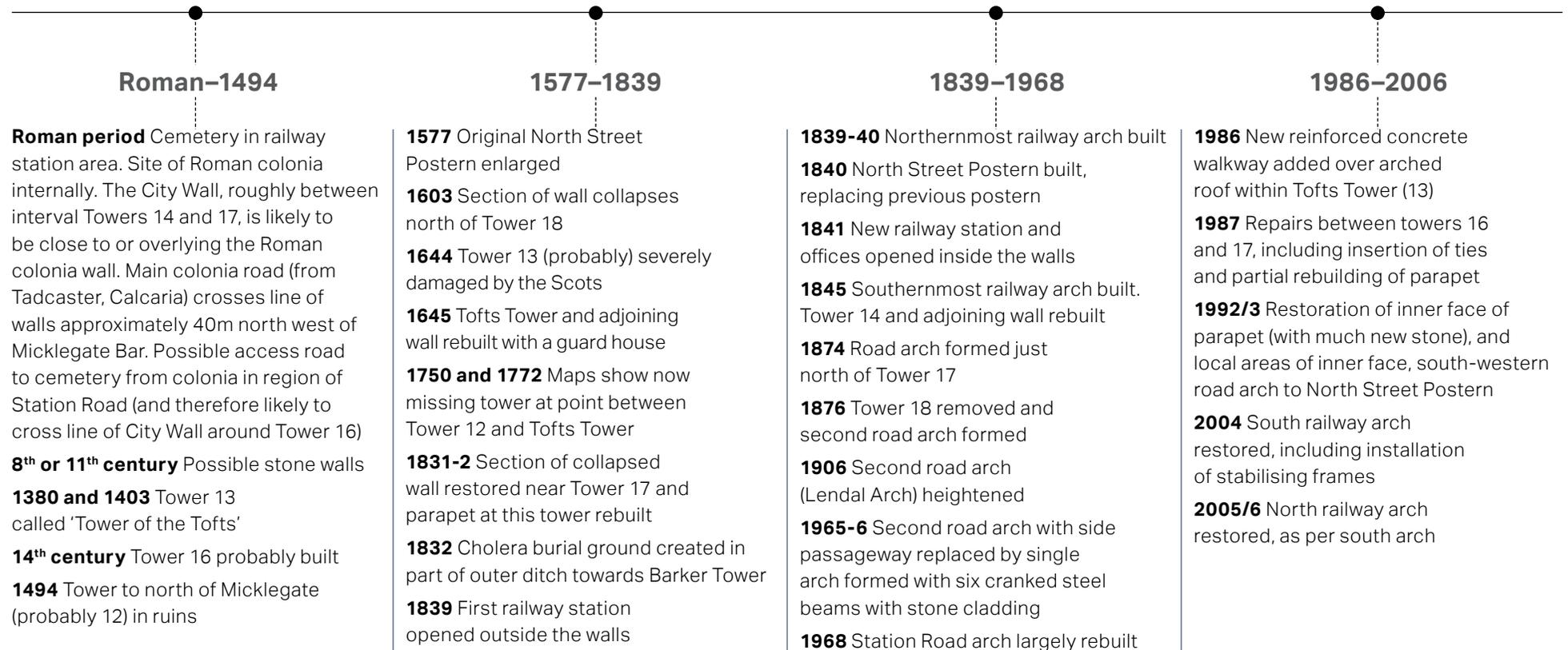


2.27 The view north towards Lendal Tower, c. 1870. Before the formation of the rail, now road arches in the walls, the land within the wall here was used for the stabling of railway carriages (CYC).



2.28 The rebuilt North Street Postern, in a late 19th-century photograph (CYC).

Section 5 Chronology



Section 6: Barker Tower

Also known as the North Street Postern Tower; a chain was stretched from Barker to Lendal Tower to block the passage of boats. Until the opening of Lendal Bridge in 1863, a ferry ran across the river and the Tower was usually let to the ferryman. The Tower was latterly used as an art gallery and was converted into a café in c.2005 [Plates 2.29-2.30].

Section 6 Chronology

Roman–1840

Roman period Site of colonia internally

1376 Tower first mentioned in this position

1380, 1403 c. 1420 'Barkertowre' mentioned

1569 Bulwarks made here to protect against attack

By 1806 Brick house added to the south of the Tower

1840 Brick house removed and external stone steps added

1863–2005

After 1863 Stone chimney replaces brick chimney

From 1879 Tower used as a mortuary

1930 Tower restored

1930-70 Used as a store by the Parks department

1970 Tower restored - ceiling and partition on top floor removed revealing roof timbers

1983 Substantially re-roofed

c. 2005 Converted for café use



To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 



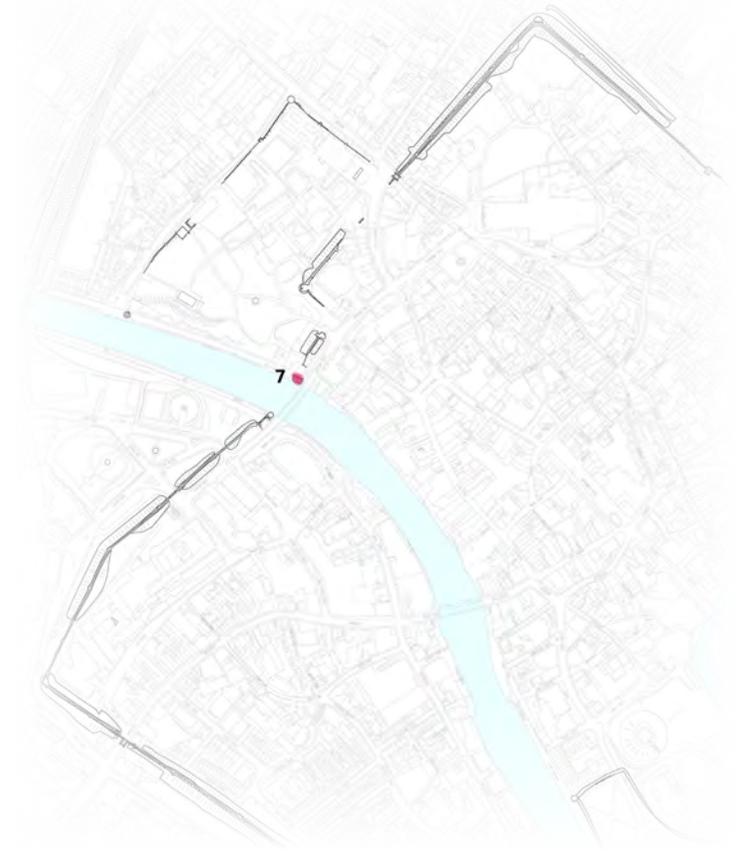
2.29 Barker Tower, from the north, before the reconstruction of the postern. An engraving by Henry Cave, 1813. The windows at the top are formed from crenellations (YMT).



2.30 Barker Tower from the north bank of the Ouse, before the construction of Lendal Bridge. The blank brick wall is the end of a railway coal-drop - there is a hoarding between it and the city wall (CYC).

Section 7: Lendal Tower

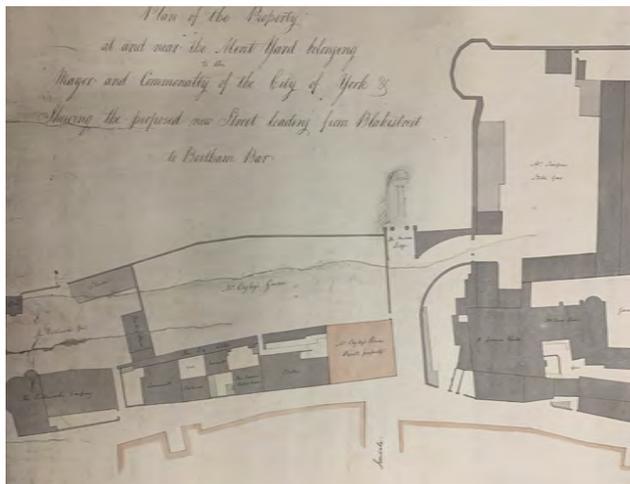
Originally resembling Barker Tower, Lendal Tower has been much extended and altered. An important landing place, the Tower was one of the first in the country to be used as a water tower and this use continued for centuries, until its conversion in the 1930s. The fabric and interior of the Tower have been extensively altered several times. The Tower fabric includes much re-used stone, probably from the nearby St Mary's Abbey. More recently, the Tower and Engine House have been substantially restored and converted into a holiday home and restaurant respectively [Plates 2.31-2.33].



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.31 An early 19th-century painting by Henry Cave of Lendal Tower from the south (YMT).



2.32 The left-hand part of a plan showing the proposals for St Leonard's Place. Lendal Tower is on the far left. (CYC)



2.33 Mid-19th century photograph of Lendal Tower from the north west, showing the 1864 cast iron walkway on the riverside in front of the building. (CYC).

Section 7 Chronology

1315–1632

- 1315** Lendal Tower first mentioned as the Tower of St Leonard
- 1460** Tower described as the stone tower at St Leonard's Landing
- 1569** Bulwarks made here to protect against attack
- 1584-5** Tower and adjoining Walls repaired
- 1598** Tenant agreed to tile the roof and create a 'chambre floor'
- 1616-32** First attempt at providing a piped water supply for the City from the Tower

1631–1677

- 1631** Tower first called 'the waterhouse' - the City takes a share in the enterprise
- 1646** Tower described as ruinous, used as a warehouse around this period
- 1654** Wall built beside tower to block passage along the riverbank
- 1674** New scheme proposed for providing water by H Whistler
- 1677** Whistler granted 500 year lease for use of the Tower as waterworks. Tower enlarged and heightened (rectangular addition to the east and destruction of the rounded east and north walls) and waterwheel provided

1684–1846

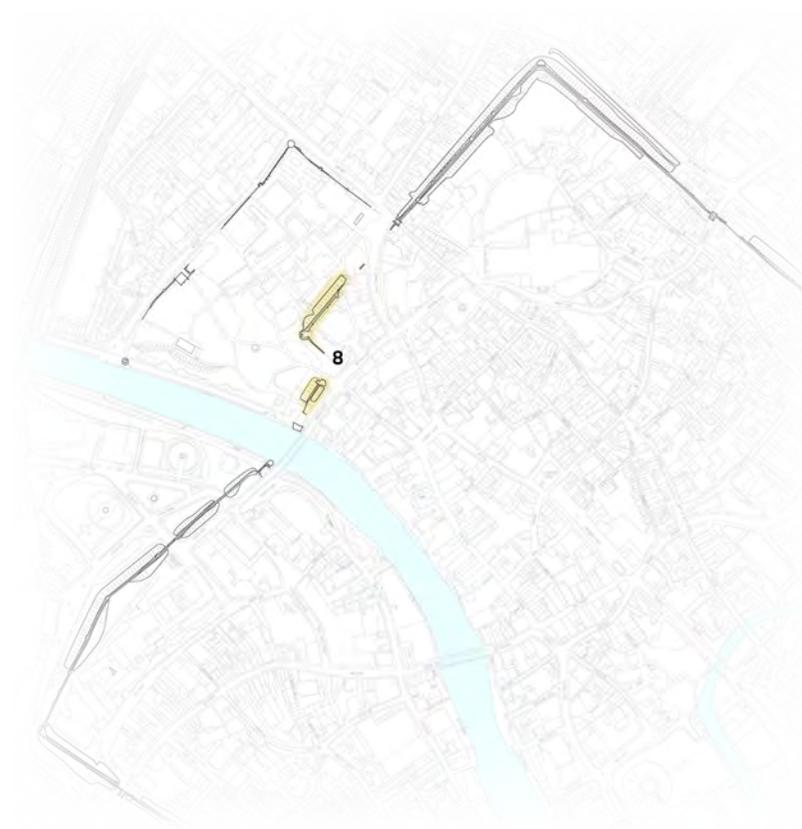
- 1684** Waterwheel replaced by horse powered wheel in tower
- c.1756** Newcomen steam engine installed. Hot and cold baths installed in adjoining tower (Lendal Hill House)
- 1779** Waterworks sold to J Dring and J Smeaton
- 1781-4** Steam engine rebuilt by Smeaton
- 1836** Engine removed
- 1846** New York Waterworks Company incorporated, waterworks moved to Acomb Landing. The Tower lowered by 10ft and given a 'medieval' appearance (parapet added)

1864–2013

- 1864** Walkway on cast iron arches added to river side
- 1932** Tower restored as offices, lift inserted
- 2004** Tower and associated Lendal Hill House and the engine house/ payments hall purchased by the Helmsley Group for redevelopment
- c. 2007–13** Work carried out for residential conversion, including guardrail to roof and copper-clad access turret
- 2013** Engine House converted and opened for restaurant use

Section 8: Lendal Tower to Bootham Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section of Walls includes the largest visible remains of the Roman fort and probably the largest area where the Wall has been demolished (for St Leonard's Place). The section behind the York Explore building includes three parallel walls: the Roman Wall and Anglian Tower (19); the Medieval Wall on top of the rampart; and a retaining wall at the foot of the rampart. The visible remains here probably best demonstrate the complicated development of the city defences over time **[Plates 2.34-2.37]**. St Mary's Abbey precinct lies in the area of the Museum Gardens to the north west of this section and augmented the City's defences.



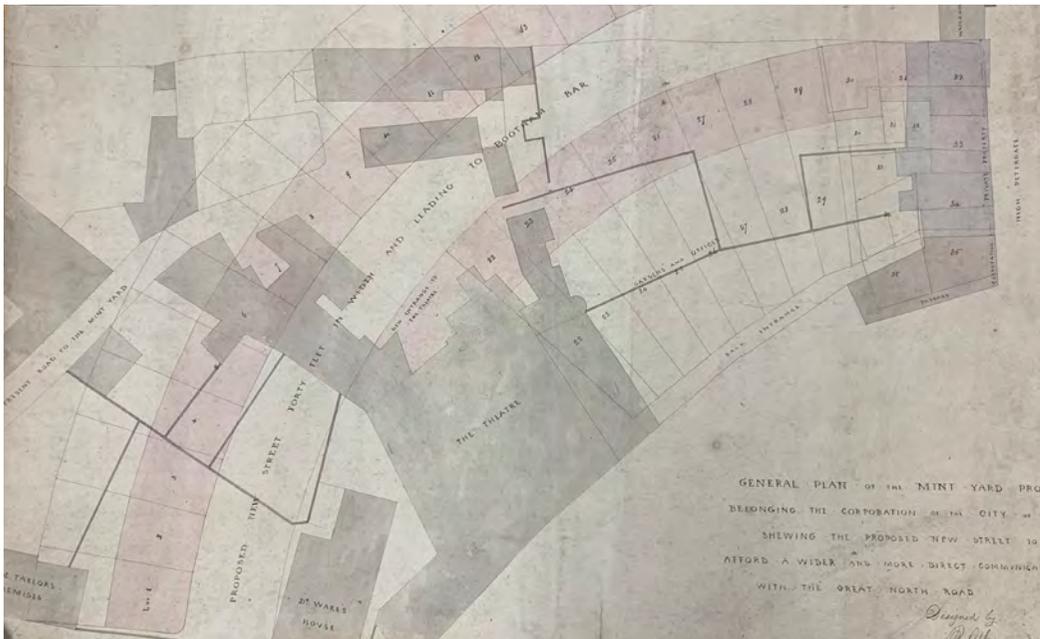
To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.34 Late 17th-century engraving by Savage, showing cannon damage incurred during the Siege, 1644 (YMT).



2.35 Halfpenny's etching of the Multangular Tower from the south-west, 1807. A rare view of the walls leading to Bootham Bar (YMT).

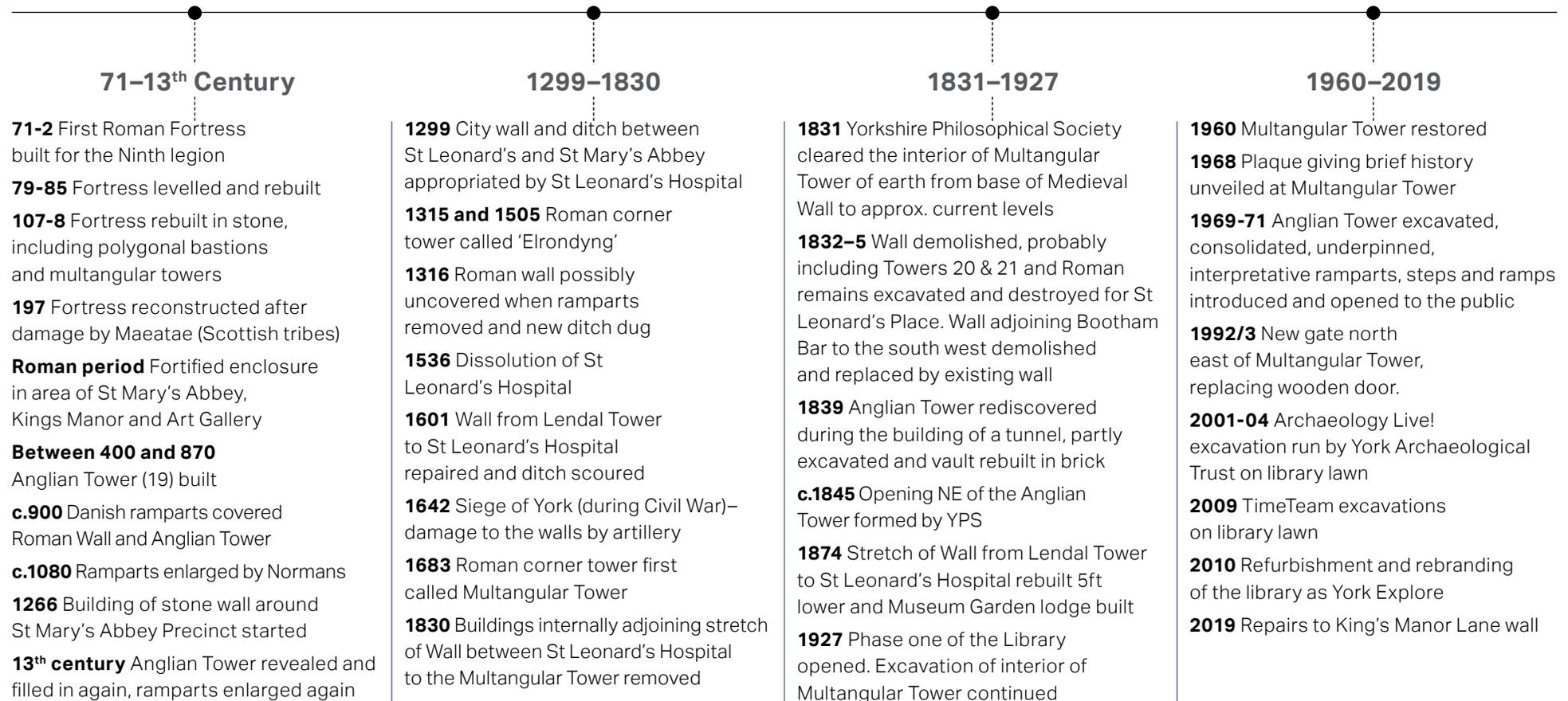


2.36 December 1831 plan of the proposed St Leonard's Place, showing how the road would destroy the section of wall leading up to Bootham Bar (CYC).



2.37 Tower 21, drawn by George Nicholson in 1827 before its destruction for St Leonard's Place (YMT).

Section 8 Chronology



Section 9: Bootham Bar

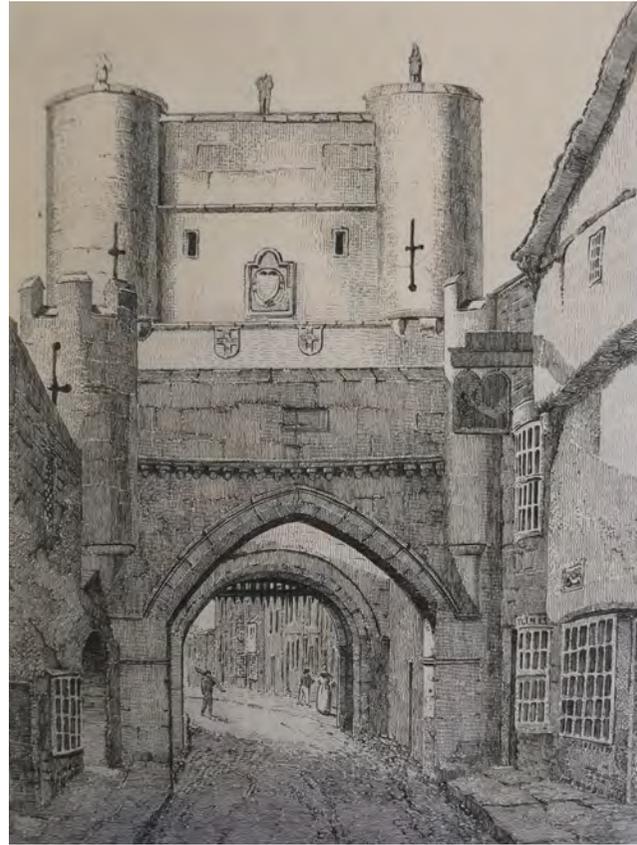
Previously called Galmanlith, Galmonelid or Galmouelid (the gate of Galmou – the hill where the Abbey was built) and replacing the *porta principalis dextra* of the Roman fortress, Bootham represents the city gate site with the oldest continuous history. The name Bootham, meaning ‘the bar at the booths’, may come from the meaning of the roman *canabae* (the booths): the area where traders and merchants sold their goods and services to the Roman fortress. Alternatively, it may relate to the weekly market held here by St Mary’s Abbey. The back of the Bar is built over the remains of the Roman gate **[Plates 2.38-2.41]**.



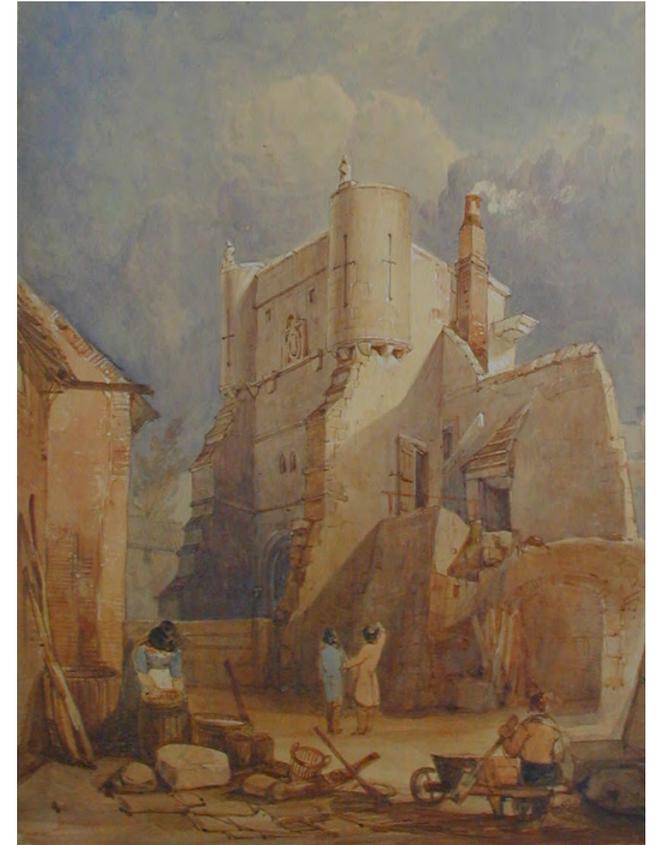
To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.38 The 18th century rear elevation of Bootham Bar in a sketch by George Nicholson. In the central niche there was a statue of Ebrauk, mythical founder of the city (YMT).



2.39 Henry Cave's early 19th-century etching of Bootham Bar, before the destruction of its barbican (YMT).

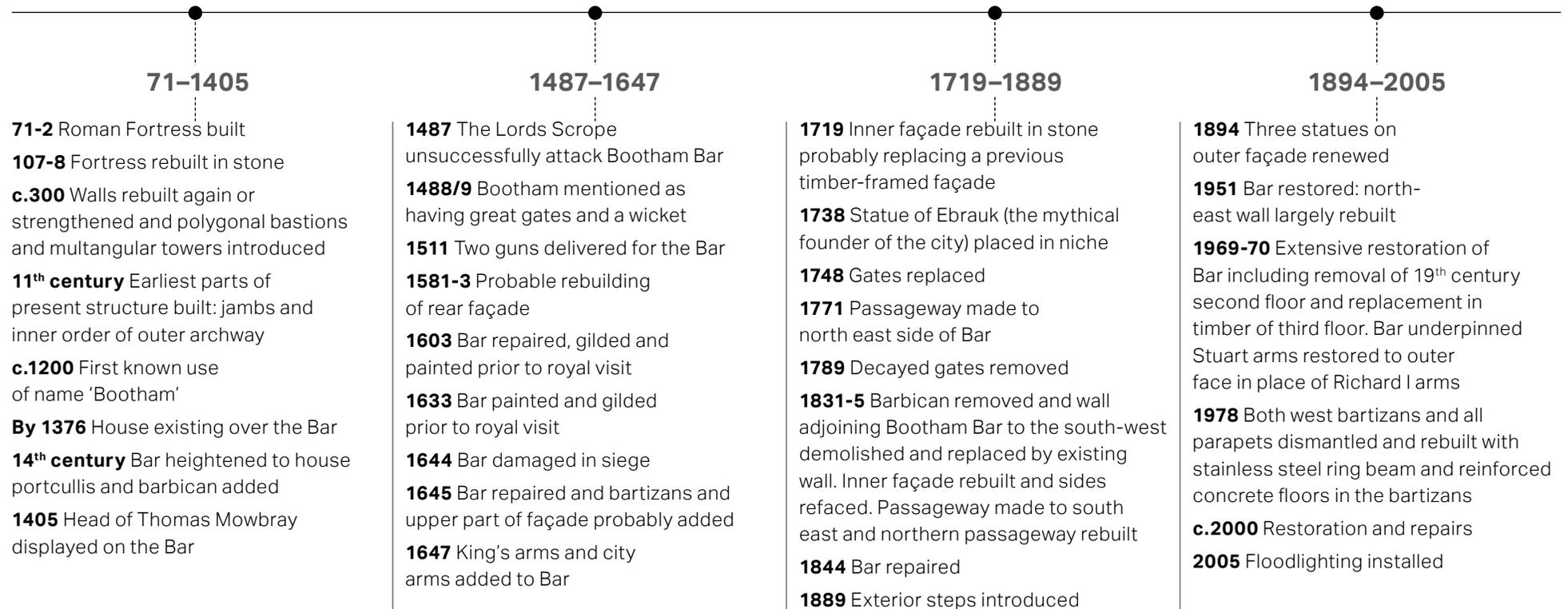


2.40 Bootham Bar from the West, by J. Mulholland, c. 1837 - a watercolour view painted when the barbican and the wall to the south west was removed (YMT).



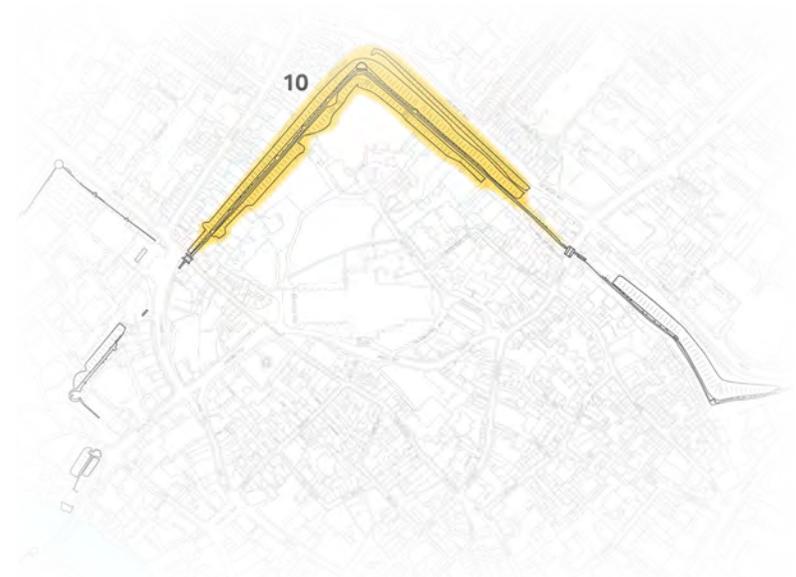
2.41 Bootham Bar in the mid-19th century, before the construction of the access steps. The postern and tower of St Mary's Abbey precinct is in the foreground (CYC)

Section 9 Chronology



Section 10: Bootham Bar to Monk Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section of Wall is often cited as the most picturesque and overlooks many back gardens and the Minster precinct. It is built more or less along the line of the Roman fortress wall. The ditch along Lord Mayor's Walk is the best preserved of any section along the Walls. Robin Hood Tower was subject to considerable structural repair in c.2012 and the tying between Gray's Court and Monk Bar was carried out in c.2011-12. Within the immediate setting, two residences were erected close to Monk Bar in c.2015. More recently, (2019-20) structural repairs have been carried out on the retaining wall between the Lion and Lamb and Precentor's Court **[Plates 2.42-2.44]**.



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.42 The City Walls from Lord Mayor's Walk 1846, by William Chapman (YMT).

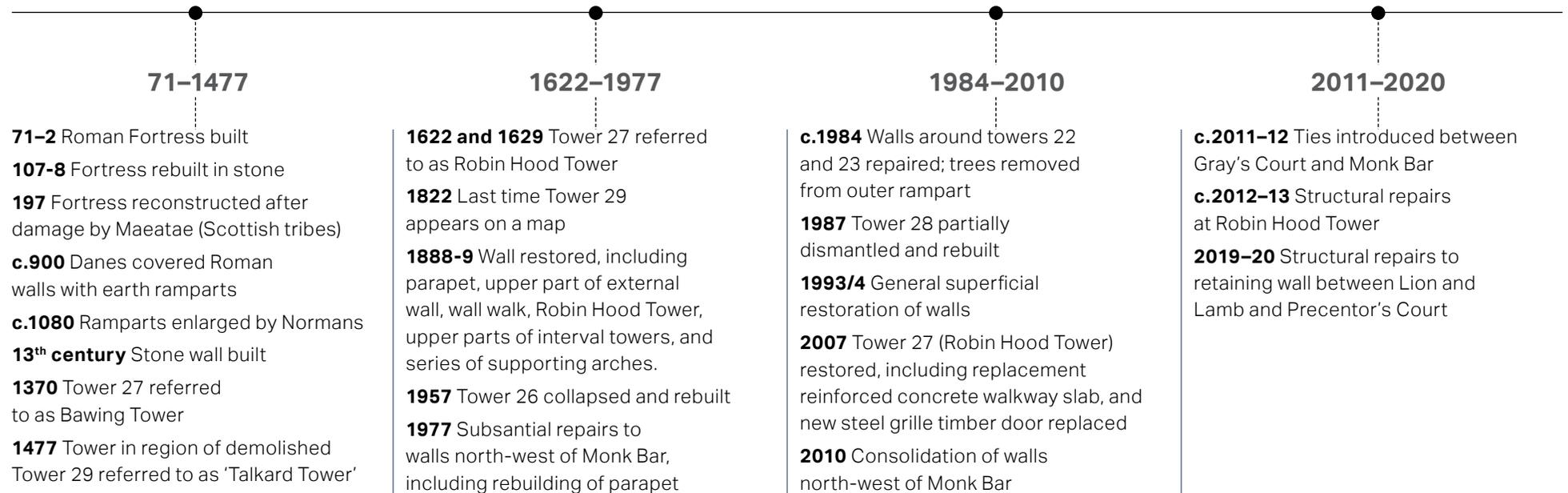


2.43 The City Walls above Lord Mayor's Walk, looking towards Monk Bar, c.1910 (CYC).



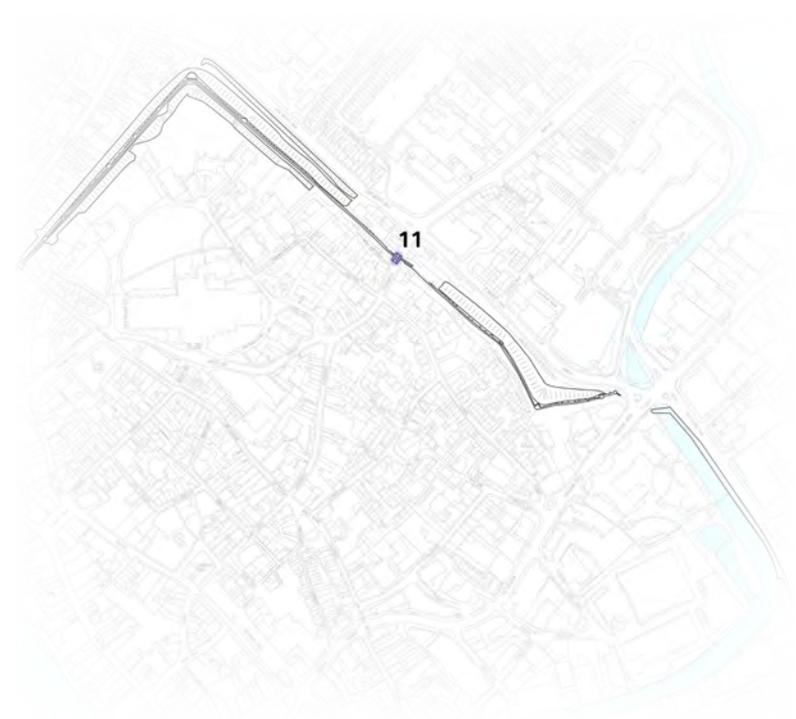
2.44 The City Walls behind Gillygate, from Robin Hood's Tower, c.1920 (CYC).

Section 10 Chronology



Section 11: Monk Bar

This four storey Bar is a 'self-contained fortress' in that each floor is separately defensible. No trace has been found of the earlier medieval gate, which was probably situated on the site of the Roman *porta decumana*, somewhere in the region of the demolished Tower 29 to the north west. Therefore all references prior to the early 14th century relate to this previous gate. The name relates to the street – Monkgate – and the nearby community of monks of the pre-Conquest Minster. It has been suggested that when the stone defences were built, the old gate was replaced by the present one. Due to its later date, the rear façade is the only one of all the major Bars to be originally built in stone. This is the only Bar to retain the mechanism for raising and lowering the portcullis. The south-east access steps were repaired in 2018-19 [Plates 2.45-2.46].



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 

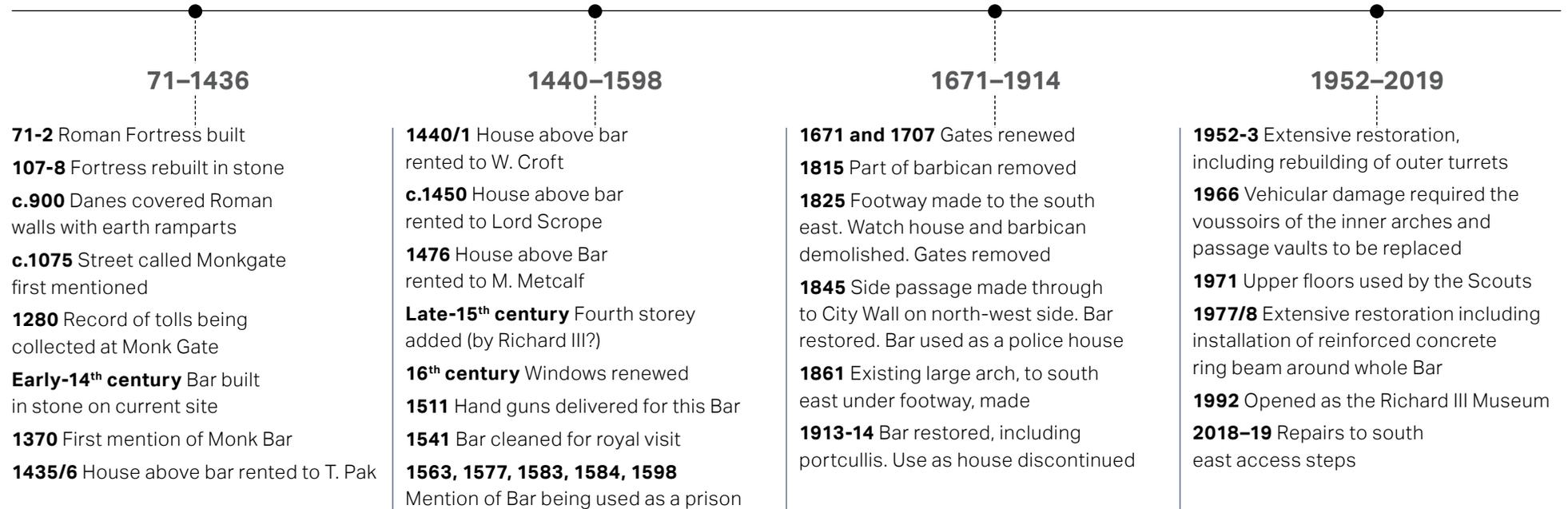


2.45 Henry Cave's engraving of Monk Bar, published in 1813, before the demolition of its barbican (YMT).



2.46 Photograph of Monk Bar, c. 1880, after demolition of its barbican, but before the enlargement of the eastern road arch (CYC).

Section 11 Chronology



Section 12: Monk Bar to Layerthorpe Postern (walls and interval towers etc.)

An excavated stretch of the Severan Roman Fortress Wall, an interval tower and the East Angle Tower (197) can be seen just inside and partially under the existing City Walls. The Tower appears to overlie the foundations of an earlier Trajanic Tower (107-8). This stretch of Wall also runs past the impressive timber-framed Merchant Taylor's Hall, the Roman remains of a corner tower and an early 19th century brick built ice house in the external rampart, which are all located south east of Monk Bar. This section of Wall extends eastwards to the Foss and the site of Layerthorpe Postern and the medieval Layerthorpe Bridge, both now demolished. This was where the City Walls met the area without walls, defended by means of the King's Fishpond. Recent developments within the setting of this section of the Walls include the Sainsbury's carpark (c.2009), the site of which underwent comprehensive archaeological investigation prior to redevelopment given its siting over a Jewish cemetery. Planning permission has recently been granted for a new hotel on the east side of Foss Island Road **[Plates 2.47-2.54]**.



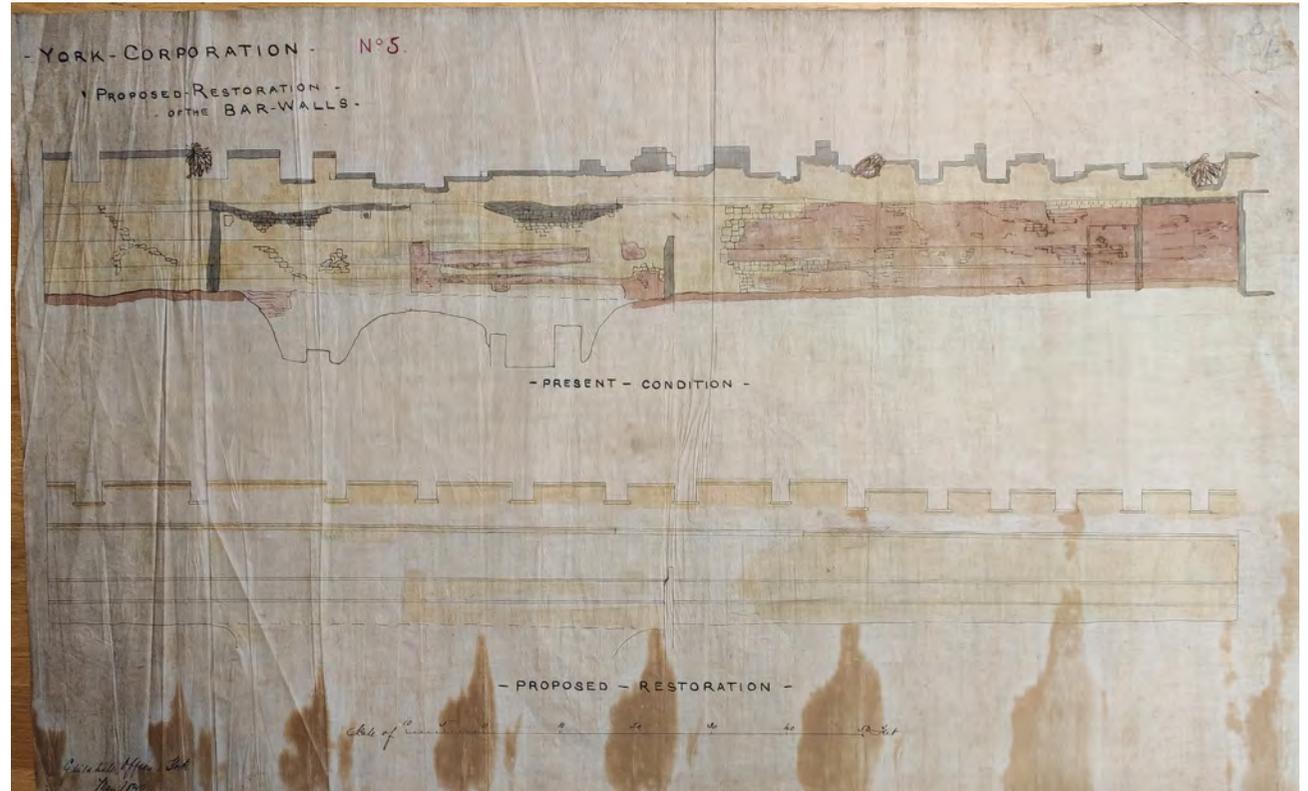
To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.47 The City Walls to the west of Monk Bar by J.S. Prout, 1840 (YMT).



2.49 'In the Moat, Jewbury', by William Chapman, 1872. The view is looking south east towards Harlot Hill Tower, with its house, and Layerthorpe (YMT).



2.48 An 1870 drawing showing the state of a length of wall near Monk Bar and the proposal for its restoration (CYC).



2.50 A 19th-century view of the restored walls looking towards Layerthorpe, with Harlot Hill Tower on the left (CYC).



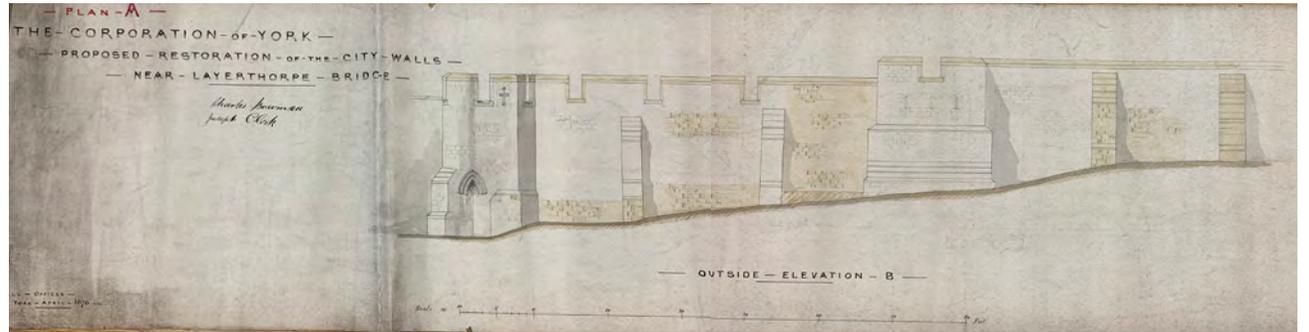
2.51 Oil painting of Layerthorpe Postern Tower and bridge by Michael Angelo Rooker, c. 1770 (YMT).



2.52 Layerthorpe Bridge and Postern by George Nicholson, 1829 (YMT).

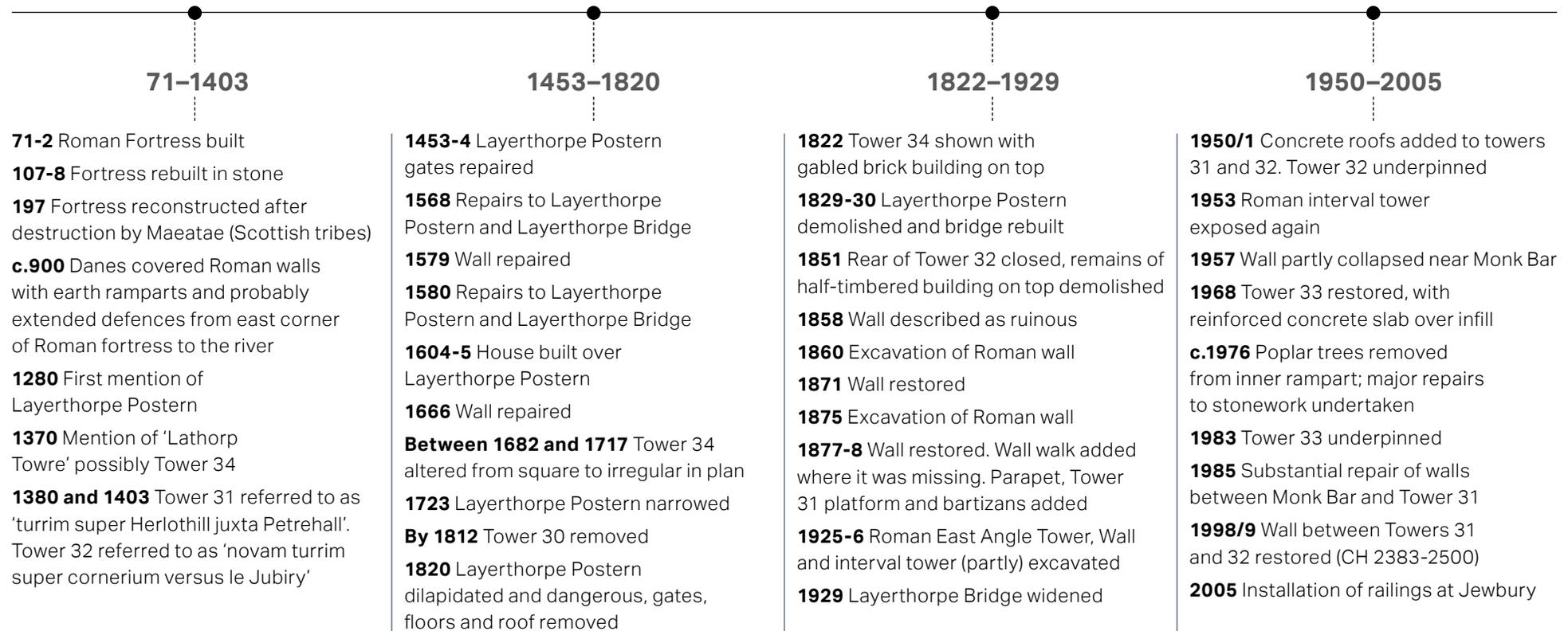


2.53 19th Century photograph of the restored walls from Peasholme Green (CYC).



2.54 1870 drawing for the reconstruction of the walls near to Layerthorpe Postern, with a new terminal tower (CYC).

Section 12 Chronology



Section 13: Layerthorpe Postern to the Red Tower (King's Fishpond area)

The King's Fishpond once filled the current gap in the defences from Layerthorpe Postern/Bridge to the Red Tower, negating the need for a wall. William I created this as an eastern defence for York Castle. The level was maintained through use of dams and sluices, but as centuries passed the extent of the pond decreased and it became simply a marshy area. The river was canalised by the Foss Navigation Company, formed in 1792. The east side of Foss Island Road has been successively developed for commercial use over the past 30 years. To the west, the residential developments lining the Foss began in the 1990s and more recently, the Hungate area has undergone comprehensive redevelopment, as part of a mixed use scheme (from 2009-present day) [Plates 2.55-2.57].



Section 13 Chronology

1068–1685

c.1068 During the Norman period William I had the Foss dammed to create the King's Pool or Fishpond
1314 Carmelites granted permission to build a quay
1545 Pond and fishery granted to the Neville family of Sheriff Hutton
1685 Pond and fishery granted to the Ingram family

1694–19th Century

1694 Map shows the Foss Islands in existence
1792 Foss Navigation Company formed and some stretches of river made navigable
1853 York Corporation buys the Company and Foss Islands with fishing and fowling rights
19th century Last traces of marsh disappear as Corporation encourages dumping of rubbish to raise land level

To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map



2.55 Detail from Jacob Richards' Plan of York, 1685, showing the expanse of water that then existed between Layerthorpe Postern and the Red Tower, and to the east of York Castle (CYC).



2.56 1870s view of Layerthorpe Bridge and the end of the walls from Foss Islands Road (CYC).



2.57 Foss Islands Road, looking north west, c.1900 (CYC).

Section 14: The Red Tower

It seems likely from written sources that the Red Tower was originally built within the marshy land next to the King's Fishpond or on a promontory or island.³² The surrounding ground level has been raised by about 2m, concealing the stone footings and it is thought to have once had a crenelated parapet. The Tower was also known as Brimstone House, possibly due to its use as a manufactory of brimstone. It was refurbished and converted in 2018 and is currently used as a community space. 21st century alterations to the Tower have included the introduction of services in 2015 and the building's refurbishment and conversion in 2018 to provide a community space [Plates 2.58-2.59].

Section 14 Chronology

1490–1800

1490 Tower probably constructed
1511 Tower first mentioned by name. Artillery assigned to Tower
1541 and 1545 Tower repaired
1645 Ditch around Tower re-dug
17th century Shown with a flat roof
c.1700 Tower shown with pyramidal tiled roof
By 1767 or perhaps 1736 Tower in ruins
By 1800 Tower restored with gabled roof, used as a cowshed

32 RCHME (1972), p139

1857–2018

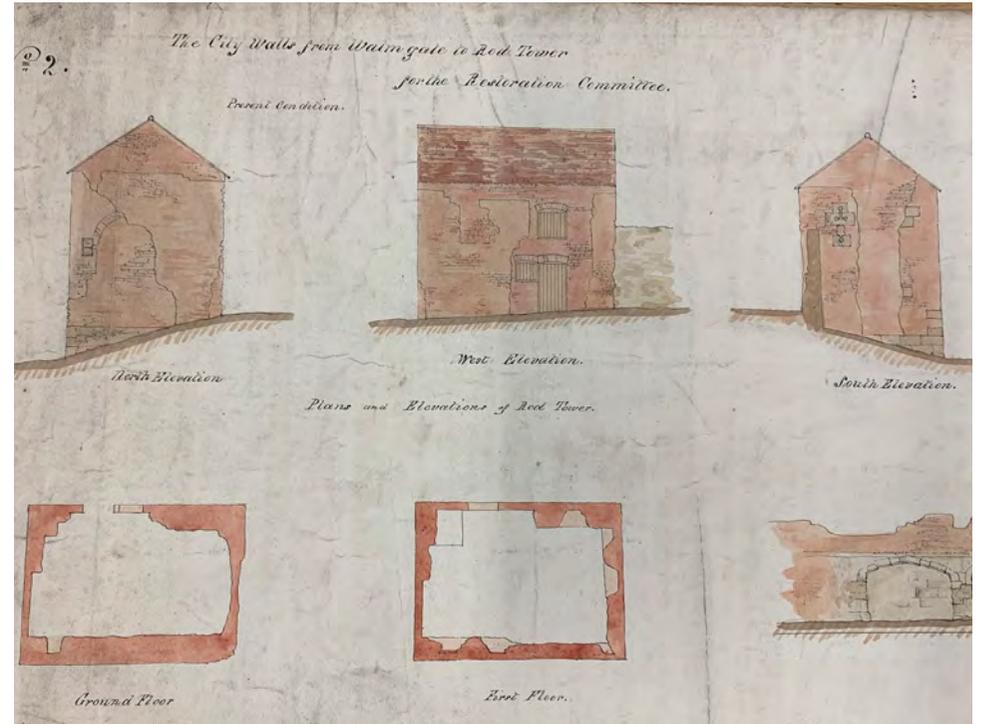
1857-8 Tower restored to its present appearance, including most of external detailing and inside refacing may also be of this date
19th century Last traces of marsh disappear as Corporation encourages dumping of rubbish to raise land level
1958/9 Tower restored: existing bricks turned and reused; roof renewed with second-hand Roman tiles
2015-2018 Converted into hireable community and events space. Services and internal glazed windows introduced



To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.58 Early photograph of the Red Tower before restoration (CYC).



2.59 Elevations of the unrestored Red Tower, from an 1857 plan prepared for the Restoration Committee (CYC).

Section 15: The Red Tower to Walmgate Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section of wall walk is carried on large foundation arches - clearly visible from the exterior of the wall - whilst the arches supporting the walkway are visible from the interior. Much brickwork along this stretch was replaced by stone when the parapet and wall walk were rebuilt in the mid-19th century. The rampart starts approximately 40m south of the Red Tower, probably approximately where the edge of the water was at the time of building. Recent development within the setting of this section has included McQuade's Court - a residential block of four storeys (c.2006) [Plates 2.60-2.62].

Section 15 Chronology

14th century-1858

14th century Wall built

1834 Two short flights of steps at Tower 36 are in use (now blocked but show in inner face)

1852 OS Map shows the external ditch holding water (where Foss Islands Road is now)

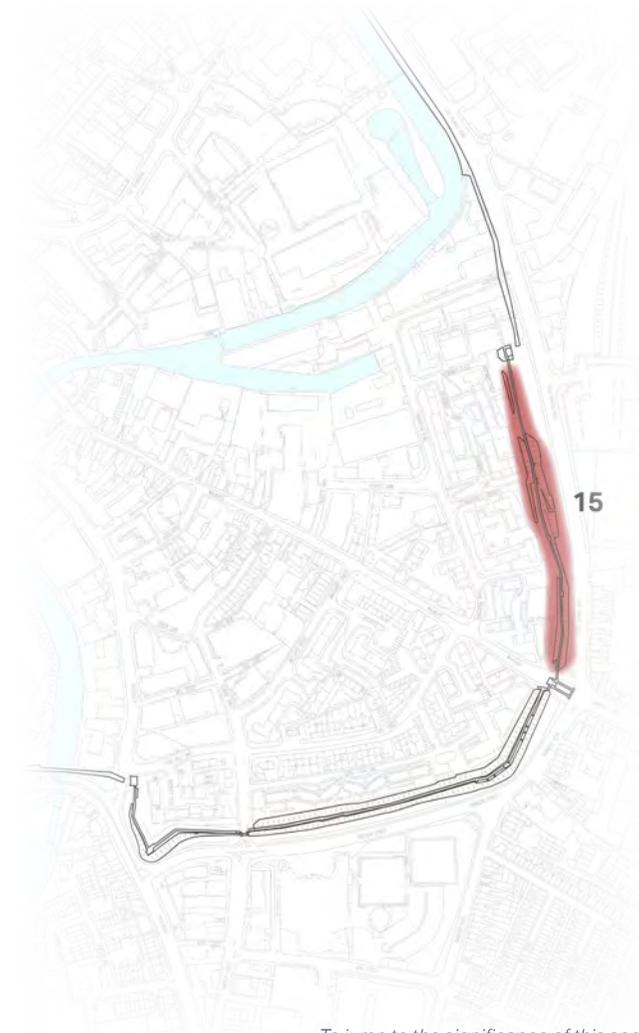
1857-8 Most of existing wall for c.45m south of Red Tower built in stone replacing brickwork

1864-1982

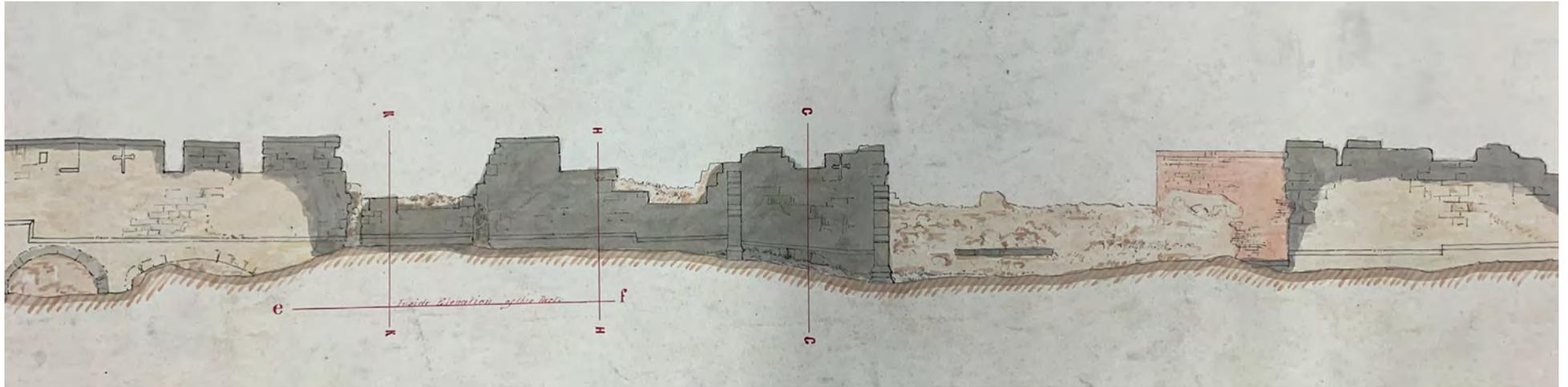
1864 Upper part of wall between Tower 35 and 36 rebuilt. Tower 36 ruinous and rebuilt

1889 Part of external rampart cut away to form cattle pen

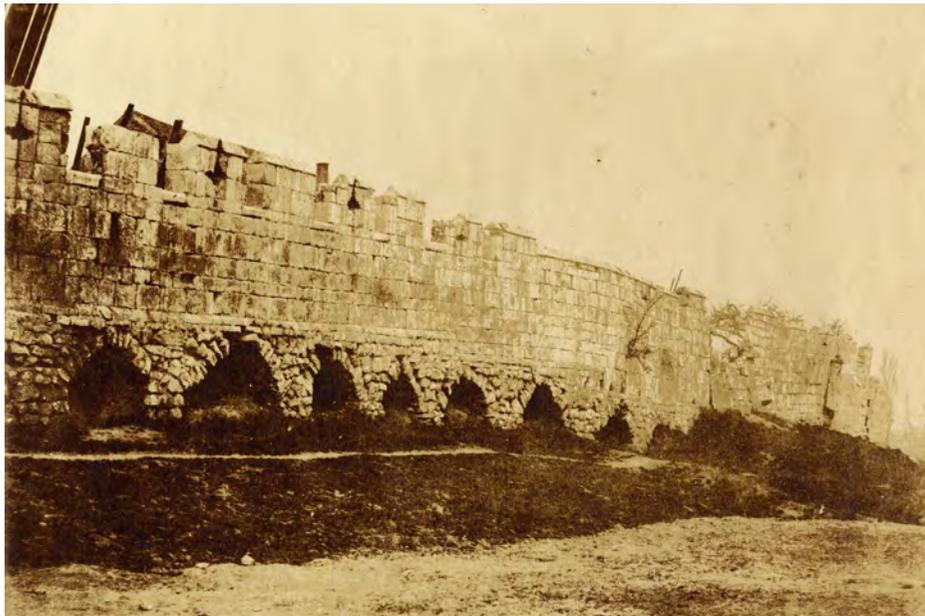
c.1982 Wall between Tower 36 and Walmgate Bar: masonry repairs, archaeological excavation by YAT to investigate possible piled foundations below stone arches now forming part of wall



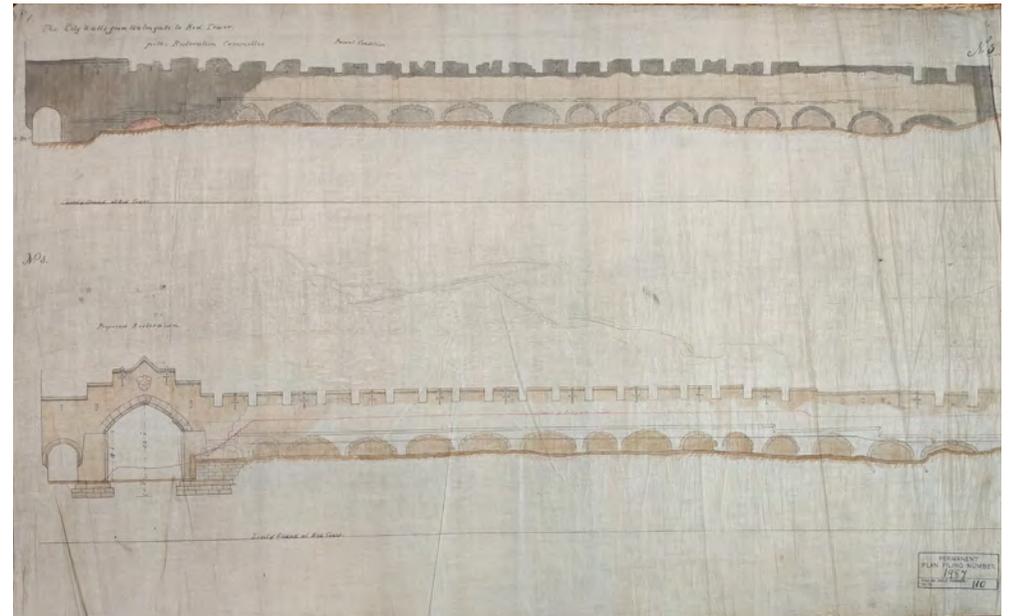
To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.60 Part of a drawing prepared for the Restoration Committee in 1857 showing the condition of the walls between Red Tower and Walmgate Bar (CYC).



2.61 An 1853 photograph by William Pumphrey showing the unrestored walls just north of Walmgate Bar (CYC).



2.62 York Corporation drawing showing the walls immediately north of Walmgate Bar as existing, and as proposed, with the new road arch adjoining the bar (CYC).

Section 16: Walmgate Bar

This is the only Bar to retain its barbican, wooden gate and timber framed inner façade. The earliest surviving masonry, the inner arch of the main gate, is from the 12th century. This Bar saw the heaviest action during the Civil War and has survived several suggestions to take it down. The most serious threat today is from repeated vehicle strikes to the oldest parts of the fabric. The Bar is currently leased by a Christian charity - the rooms above the Bar and the barbican walkway have been converted for use as a coffee shop and a terrace has been created on its roof (2013-14) [Plates 2.63-2.65].



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.65 Early 20th century aerial view showing the rampart to either side of Walgate Bar cut back for livestock pens, and tram tracks running through the 19th-century road arch to the north of the bar (CYC).

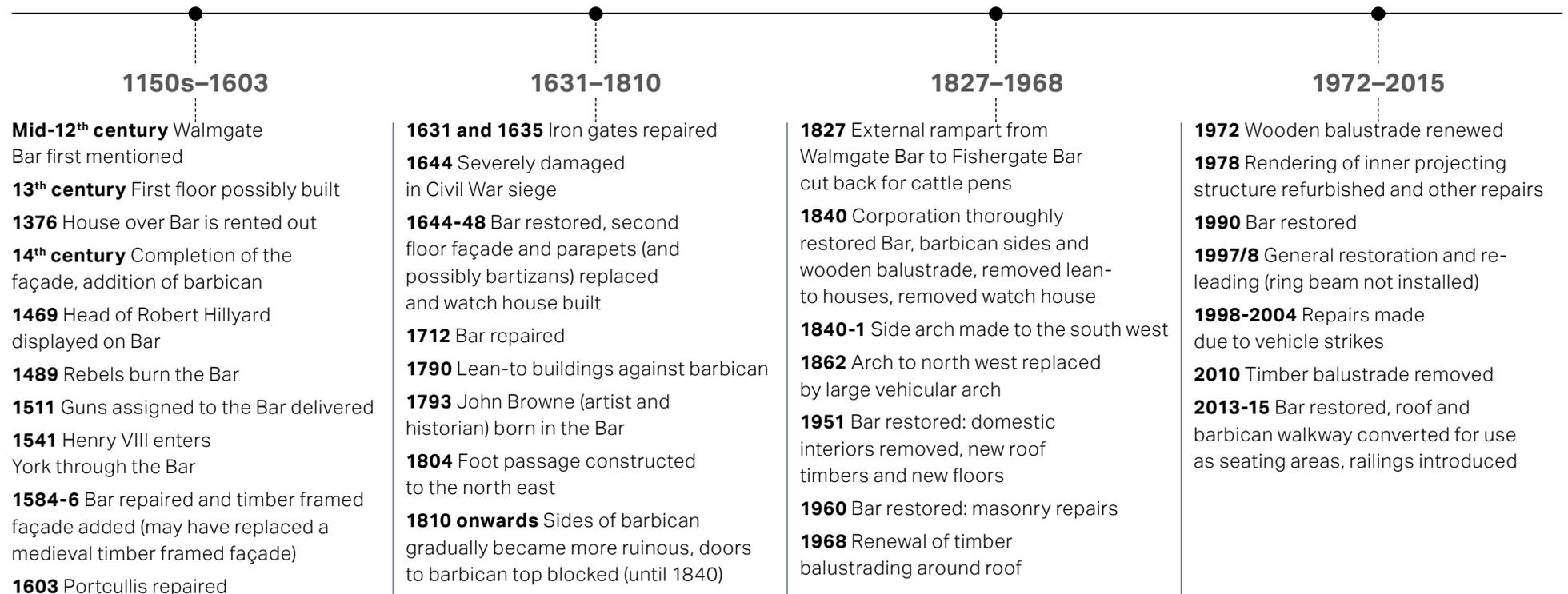


2.63 Watercolour of Walmgate Bar from the south west by John Harper, 1840 (YMT).



2.64 Early 19th-century painting of Walmgate Bar from the south east by Henry Cave, showing houses built against the south side of the barbican (YMT).

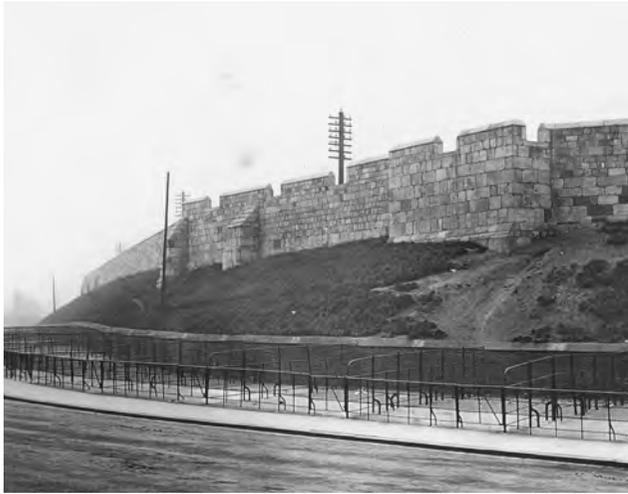
Section 16 Chronology



Section 17: Walmgate Bar to Fishergate Postern Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section of wall includes Fishergate Bar, which was blocked up for a very long period after damage at the end of the 16th century. There appear to be many records relating to expenditure on this stretch of wall, one relating to the re-building of a stretch funded by the local benefactor Sir William Todd. The Bar was reopened in the 19th century, but is currently only open to pedestrians and cyclists - the paving scheme here was introduced in 2015. Tower 39 was stabilised in 2004-05. Within the setting of this section, the colossal Barbican was refurbished in c.2011 and a hotel built adjacent shortly after **[Plates 2.66-2.71]**.

*To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map* 



2.66 Tower 37, looking south from Paragon Road, showing the livestock pens cut into the ramparts (CYC)



2.67 The walls looking towards Fishergate Bar from a point mid way between that and Tower 37. Note the rope walk at the foot of the rampart lining Long Close Lane (CYC).



2.68 Fishergate Bar from the outside, in a sketch made by George Nicholson soon after it was unblocked in 1827 (YMT).



2.69 Late 19th century photograph of the inner side of Fishergate Bar, looking through to the buildings of the City Arms (CYC).



2.70 Pencil sketch by George Nicholson of Tower 39 from the south in 1826, prior to restoration (YMT).



2.71 Tower 39 as restored, c. 1900, with the livestock pens at the foot of the cut-back rampart (CYC).

Section 17 Chronology

1315–1450

- 1315** Fishergate Bar first mentioned
- 1345** Wall erected between the Foss and Fishergate Bar (probably the stretch from the Bar to Tower 39)
- 1422** West passage at Fishergate Bar mentioned
- 1440** House mentioned over Fishergate Bar. Fishergate Postern mentioned as 'posternam iuxta Skarletpit'
- 1442/3** Existing Fishergate Bar probably built
- 1449/50** Bar has new iron bound wooden gate

1487–1633

- 1487** Stretch of wall east of Fishergate possibly rebuilt
- 1489** Rebels burn the Bar and the Bar blocked up
- 1494** Woman of 'loose character' occupying tower at Bar
- 1548** Fishergate Postern mentioned by name
- 1584** House above Bar to be used as a 'howse of correction' (prison)
- 1598-1633** Prison used for possible plague victims or lunatics

1644–1961

- After 1644** Interior of Tower 39 created
- c.1675** Bar flanked by a tower on each side
- 1827** External rampart from Walmgate Bar to Fishergate Bar cut back for cattle pens, Bar unblocked and restored, parapet and steps to wallwalk added
- 1829** 60 yds of wall rebuilt between Tower 39 and Fishergate Postern Tower
- 19th century** Inner wall from Tower 39 to Fishergate Postern Tower probably rebuilt
- 1961** Fishergate Bar restored

1972–2015

- 1972** Cattle pens and miscellaneous buildings removed along outer rampart, retaining wall removed and ramparts reinstated. Restoration work to walls, including some repair work to Tower 39
- 1987** Extensive repairs to wall between Walmgate Bar and Tower 37, including provision of stainless steel wall ties
- 1990** Short length of wall dismantled and rebuilt (CH 3175.9 – 3178.7)
- c.2018** Repairs to Tower 39
- 2015** Repaving at Fishergate Bar

Section 18: Fishergate Postern Tower

This Tower marks the terminus of this section of the Walls at the River Foss, which once flowed at the foot of the building's west wall. It seems to have been built on the site of a previous tower but has possibly been less altered than most of the other structures around the Wall circuit. The current roof structure has been in place since at least the late 17th century. Fishergate Postern is the oldest surviving postern gate along the Wall and retains its portcullis slot. Electrical services were introduced at the Tower in 2019, prior to which a series of archaeological investigations were carried out [Plates 2.72-2.75].

Section 18 Chronology

1388–1676

1388 Possible mention of Talkan Tower
1453-4 Talkan Tower repaired
1476 Talkan Tower mentioned at this site
1504-7 Existing Tower built replacing Talkan Tower
1610 Map shows Tower with a roof
By 1636 Tower used as a dovecot
1676 Roof shown in its present form Tower labelled 'Edward's Tower'

1818–2018

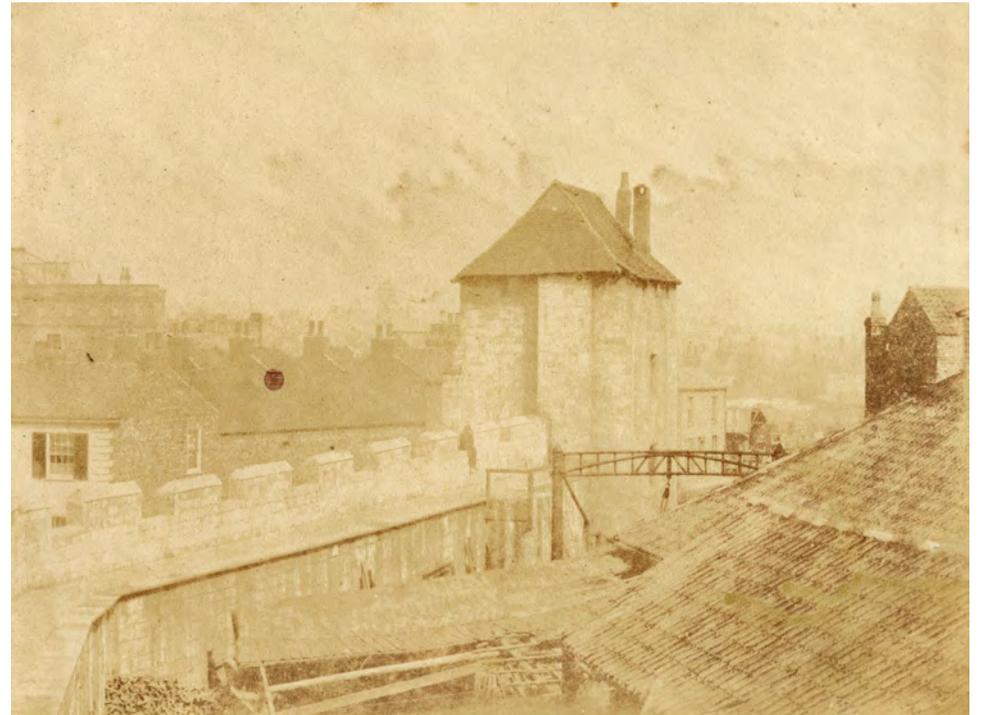
Before 1818 Second floor replaced with gallery
1838 Tower restored
1959/60 Tower restored, new timber floors, internal staircase at South end removed
c.2018 Refurbishment and provision of electrical services



To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 



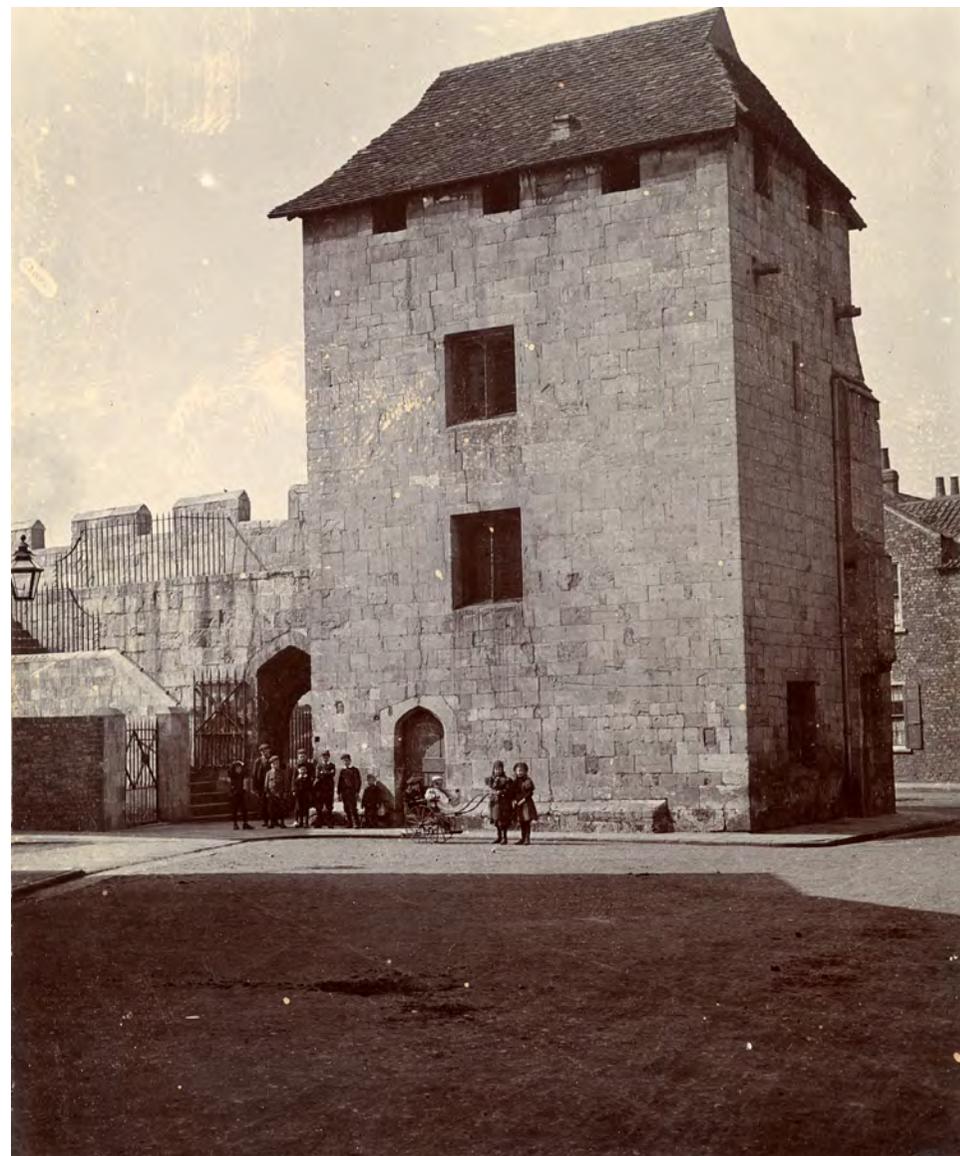
2.72 Early 19th-century engraving by Marianne Nicholson showing Fishergate Postern Tower in its former context, on the bank of the River Foss (YMT).



2.73 Mid-19th century photograph of Fishergate Postern Tower from Tower 39 (CYC).



2.74 Mid-19th-century photograph of Fishergate Postern (CYC).



2.75 Fishergate Postern Tower from the north east, c.1900 (CYC).

Section 19: Fishergate Postern to Tower 1 (walls and interval towers etc.)

The Castle and the River Foss protect the area between Fishergate Tower and Tower Street so this last section of City Wall actually runs from the demolished Castlegate Postern, which stood where Tower Street now lies, to the west to Davy Tower, from whence a chain was stretched across the Ouse to Skeldergate Postern Tower. This section of Wall is entirely without ramparts and retains the original wall walk on the inner face. Davy Tower was also known as the Tower of or near to the Friars Minor (The Grey Friars) whose Friary lay to the north [Plates 2.76-2.78].

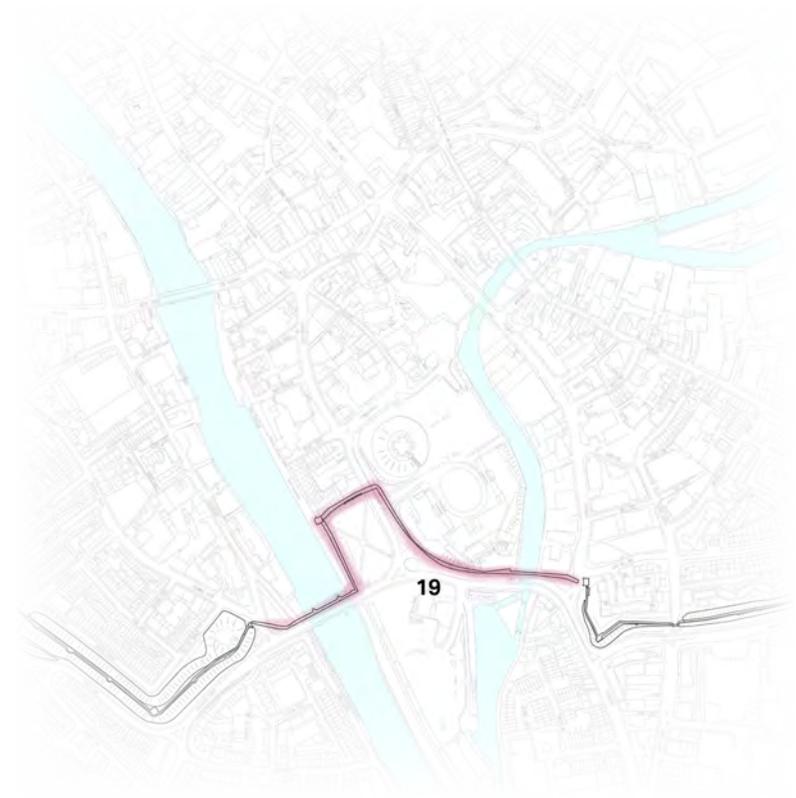
Section 19 Chronology

1290–1625

c.1290 Wall running north from Davy Tower to enclose Friary built
1315 Davy Tower first mentioned
1380 Postern (Castlegate) first mentioned
1454 Ditch made along this stretch of wall
From 1494 Known as Castlegate Postern. Postern ruinous. Chamber and dovecot over Postern mentioned
1511 Gun delivered for the Postern
1569, 1610-1625 Ditch scoured

1634–1840

1634 Enlargement of Tower considered
1642-45 Postern closed and blocked up
1699 Postern enlarged
c.1732 Friargate Postern created and City Wall extended (Between Davy Tower and the river - now demolished). Summerhouse built on Davy Tower
1826 Castlegate Postern demolished
1835-50 Summerhouse extended
c.1840 Friargate Postern demolished



To jump to the significance of this section, click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.76 York Castle and Castlegate Postern in an early 19th century oil painting by an unknown artist (YMT).



2.77 Henry Cave's 1813 etching of Castlegate Postern from the inside, looking south-east. The castle is to the left in this picture (YMT).



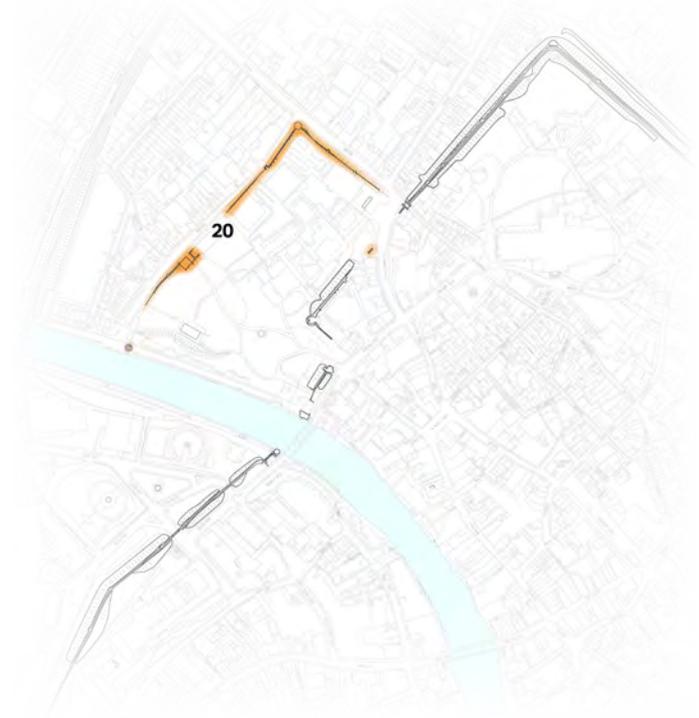
2.78 Late 18th-century painting showing Davy Tower on the east bank of the Ouse, and Skeldergate Postern Tower on the west (YMT).

Section 20: St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls

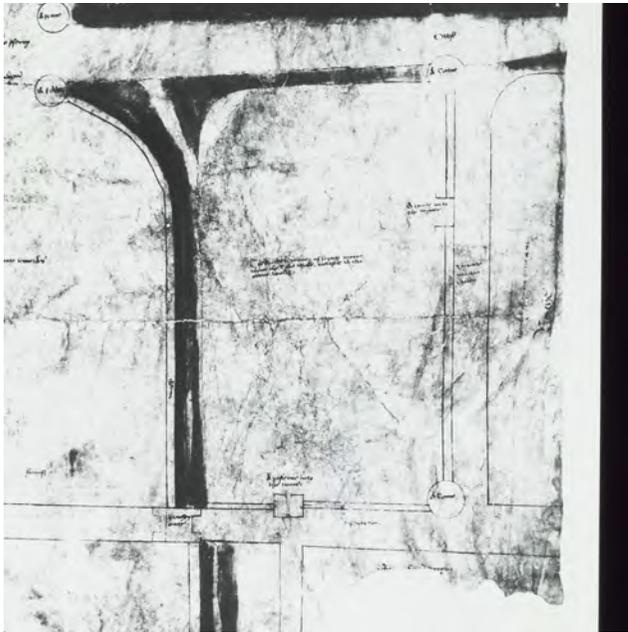
St Mary's Abbey was established in the late 11th century on a site just outside the City Wall, and in 1266 a wall was built around the north-eastern part of the precinct. This wall ran from the abbey gatehouse on Marygate, north-east to Bootham, where it turned 90 degrees towards the City Wall near Bootham Bar. This wall was built of stone, was roughly 3m high, and had no defensive function.

In 1318 Edward II granted licence to crenellate, and the wall was raised, and a timber wall walk added on its inner side. New sections of wall were added, running from the abbey gateway to the river, and along the south-eastern side of the precinct, parallel with the City Wall, to the river near Lendal Tower. In the 1350s the circuit was completed by a wall along the southern side, running close to the Hospitium; there may have been a second wall built at the same time along the river bank.

Much of the Wall remained after the dissolution of St Mary's Abbey, but it became increasingly concealed by houses built along Marygate and Bootham during the 17th and 18th centuries. The river wall - still shown in Speed's map adjacent - was demolished early in the 18th century – the removal of the section parallel with the City Walls on the east was probably a more gradual process. **[Plates 2.79-2.88].**



To jump to the significance of this section,
click on the highlighted part of the map 



2.79 Part of a 1545 plan of York, showing the Abbey Precinct. Lendal and Barker Towers are top left, and Bootham Bar is at bottom left. St Mary's Tower is bottom right. (CYC).



2.80 Francis Place's pen and ink sketch of York looking along the river. The Water Tower is on the left, and in the middle distance are Lendal and Barker Towers, c. 1700 (YMT).



2.81 The Water Tower from the south east, in a mid-19th-century photograph (CYC).



2.82 George Nicholson's sketch of the lodge at the Abbey Gatehouse from within the precinct, before restoration (YMT).



2.83 Early photograph of the Abbey gateway from Marygate, with St Olave's Church on the left (CYC).



2.84 The wall of St Mary's Abbey behind the buildings of Marygate, looking west (CYC).



2.85 St Mary's Tower from Bootham in the mid 19th-century, showing the accretion of later buildings around the Tower (CYC).



2.86 Mid-19th-century photograph of St Mary's Tower, from within the precinct (CYC).



2.87 The Abbey Postern and Tower from the south, in a mid-19th-century photograph. The Precinct wall originally turned through 90 degrees approximately at the far right of this photo (CYC).



2.88 A photograph taken during the First World War showing the Precinct wall revealed by a recently demolished building on Bootham (CYC).

Section 20 Chronology

1055–1318

- 1055** Abbey Church of St Olaf founded
- 1088** Abbey church refounded
- 1089** Foundation stone of new Abbey Church of St Mary laid by William Rufus
- 1137** Abbey badly damaged by fire
- Late C12** Abbey Gatehouse built on Marygate, possibly replacing an earlier structure
- 1260** Henry III grants permission to Abbot Simon de Warwick to build a stone boundary wall around two sides of the precinct
- 1266** Wall begun.
- 1271-1294** New abbey church built
- 1314** Chapel of Our Lady by the Gate founded
- 1318** Licence to crenellate granted and wall along Marygate and Bootham raised by 5-6 ft. A new crenellated wall built south west of the gatehouse, towards the river, where it terminated in a tower. Wall along south east side of the Precinct completed as far as the river

1324–1540

- 1324** St Mary's Tower and Water Tower built at each end of Marygate
- 1354** Permission given to Abbot Thomas de Malton to form a ditch outside the walls along Bootham and to complete the southern wall, then already begun. A second, parallel wall, running from the Water Tower, immediately on the river bank, possibly also built
- 1376** Chapel of Our Lady by the Gate restored
- c.1470** Additions to Gatehouse
- 1470** North aisle of St Olave's church built, incorporating part of the 1266 wall
- 1497** Postern gate – 'Queen Margaret's Arch' – made in the wall near Bootham, possibly on the site of an existing, smaller postern
- 1539** Dissolution of St Mary's Abbey by Henry VIII. Abbot's House used as royal palace
- 1540** St Mary's Tower used to hold records of Yorkshire monasteries

1644–Late C19

- 1644** Siege of York. A mine under St Mary's Tower seriously damaged the building and destroyed a part of the adjoining wall. Tower rebuilt using old materials and a conical, tiled roof.
- 1700-1720** River wall demolished
- Early C18** Much of gatehouse demolished
- Early C19** Abbey Precinct acquired by Yorkshire Philosophical Society
- Early C19** Section of wall near Water Tower demolished and replaced with stone arch, giving access to riverside walk
- 1836** Gateway made in the wall beside the postern, granting pedestrian access to King's Manor
- 1840** St Mary's Lodge – the last remaining part of the buildings which flanked the gatehouse – was renovated for the use of John Phillips, Keeper of the Yorkshire Museum
- Late C19** Demolition of buildings between Marygate and the wall

1896–2019

- 1896** Demolition of buildings between the wall and Bootham begins
- 1896** York City Council takes on responsibility for the wall
- 1922** Wall scheduled as an Ancient Monument
- 1950-7** Wall restored
- 2005** Lighting introduced to illuminate walls and artwork (near Gallery)
- c.2015** New access gates into Museum Gardens, replacement gates to Marygate entrance, boundary fence with King's Manor and timber bin store. New gates to Marygate of timber in steel frame
- c.2019** Temporary structural tie and conservative repairs to stonework of Tower D

2.10 Literature, Maps, Pictorial and other Sources

There are a large number of primary sources for research and understanding relating to the City Walls, St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls and the associated buildings and structures (literature, maps, paintings, photographs, illustrations, postcards, correspondence and so on).

A large number of pre-photographic pictorial sources were catalogued and published by Barbara Wilson and Frances Mee in 2005³³ and several of the images catalogued there are reproduced here, mostly courtesy of York Museums Trust. There is no equivalent catalogue of photographic representations of the walls.

The historic photographs reproduced above also come from the online collection of York Explore Libraries and Archive. There are, however, many more photographs in that collection, and many photographs in other collections, especially from the late-19th century onwards. York Explore Archives contains many hundreds of plans and drawings relating to the walls from the office of the City Engineer and the cataloguing of these is an ongoing process. The plans illustrated above mostly derive from catalogued plans in the archive – a list of those used within the report can be found in [Appendix VI](#) and a list of all plans consulted for this exercise is presented in [Appendix VII](#). It was

not possible to consult every catalogued item and for the most part, uncatalogued items were not consulted.

Other archives are likely to contain useful information relating to the walls. Notable among those archives that could not be consulted within the available time owing to COVID-19 restrictions is the archive of the National Railway Museum, which is likely to contain useful material relating to the construction of the original railway station within the walls, and the resultant modification to their fabric and their setting.

A list of sources identified for the 2004 CMP and this study can be found in [Appendix V](#), which also includes a bibliography. It should not be assumed that these lists are exhaustive or complete but merely provide a starting point for further research. It was not possible to obtain all catalogues of some additional known collections and to attain these would be a good starting point for further research projects as identified within the Opportunities section and for future revisions of this CMP.

33 B. Wilson and F. Mee (2005)



3.0 Summary of Site Surveys

3.1 Site Survey

As part of the research and preparation of this CMP, a site survey was conducted in October 2020 and provides an assessment of the monuments at one moment in time. The size of the monuments (and each section) has required that an overall description be provided for each section of the monument, based on a typicality or average rather than on specific detail. A summary of the results of the survey is provided below, with the survey sheets for each section of the walls provided separately in [the Gazetteer](#), with explanatory notes, a brief character assessment and potential opportunities are provided where appropriate.

3.1.1 Criteria/Methodology for Assessment

This section provides an overview of the condition of each of the 20 sections of the walls.

The condition 'priorities' within this survey have been developed primarily from surveys conducted in 1991 and 2004 and have been reviewed during a visual inspection of the walls in October 2020. This survey does not go into the level of detail contained in the 1991 survey, but does provide more than the 2004 survey; it seeks to allow a clear prioritisation of works which will prove a useful tool for planning future maintenance and repair. It is advised that a regular programme of condition surveys and record keeping should follow the level of detail recorded in 1991.



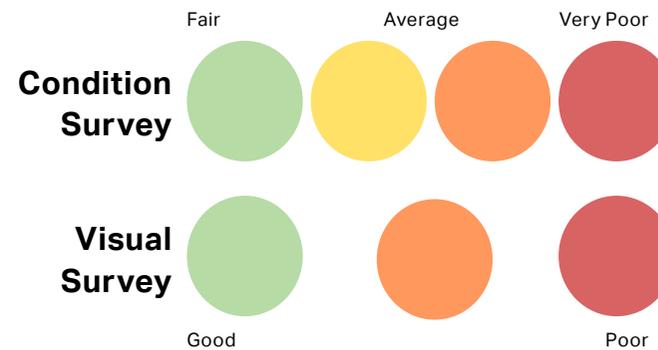
Tom Bromet carrying out a site survey, October 2020

The assessment also includes a review of the intangible state of the walls such as their aesthetic appeal, views and a review of the existing lighting, signage, orientation or interpretation. Assessments regarding physical and intellectual access are included in addition to some indication of the level of visitor facilities currently provided, but given the current closures due to Covid-19, this is not exhaustive. This review is intended to provide an indication of the opportunities available for future enhancement of the walls.

3.1.2 Survey Abbreviations and Traffic Light System

The abbreviations used for this survey have been developed from the codes established within the 2004 CMP, with simplified descriptions, leaving the detail and evidence for the summary within the comments columns of the Gazetteer. In addition, the codes are colour-coded with a 'traffic-light' system for clarity, to enable CYC to clearly identify areas for enhancement and to prioritise works to the walls. The condition survey uses four categories ranging from green to red – green being 'fair', yellow: 'fair to average', amber: 'average' and red: 'very poor'. This section concludes with a map which visually presents the condition of the walls. The visual survey, looking at the intangible state of the walls, has three categories, similarly ranging from green to red – 'good' to 'poor'. The visual survey concludes with a series of maps which demonstrate views, contributions to the immediate setting of the walls, listed buildings within their setting and a series of potential opportunities. The abbreviations can be seen in full [here](#), and the categories used within the 2020 survey are listed on the following page:

Key



3.2 Summary of Survey by Section

This section provides a summary of the site surveys, section by section using the traffic light system, and concludes in an overall summary of the **Condition, Signage, Interpretation and Lighting, Views and Setting, Visitor Facilities, Access and Environment**. Full comments and recommendations can be found within the [Gazetteer](#).

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 1	Red	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Green								Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Orange
Tower 1	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Green	Yellow	Green	Yellow						Green				
Baile Hill						Green								Yellow				
Tower 2	Red	Red	Red	Red	Red													
Section 2 Bitchdaughter Tower	Orange	Yellow	Orange	Green	Yellow		Red		Orange		Yellow	Orange	Green	Green	Orange	Orange	Orange	Red

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 3	●	●	●	●	●									●	●	●	●	●
Tower 4	●	●	●	●	●		●		●		●	●	●					
Tower 5	●	●	●	●	●													
Tower 6	●	●	●	●	●													
Victoria Bar	●	●	●	●	●	●	●						●					
Tower 7 Sadler Tower	●	●	●	●	●		●	●	●		●	●	●					
Tower 8	●	●	●	●	●		●		●		●	●						
Tower 9	●	●	●	●	●		●	●	●		●	●	●					
Tower 10	●	●	●	●	●													
Tower 11	●	●	●	●	●		●	●	●		●	●	●					
Section 4 Micklegate Bar	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 5	Red	Orange	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Yellow									Red	Green	Red	Red
Tower 12	Orange	Green	Orange	Yellow	Green	Green												
Tower 13, Toft's Tower	Orange	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Green	Yellow		Yellow		Yellow	Yellow						
Tower 14	Green	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Orange												
Tower 15	Yellow	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Green			Yellow										
Tower 16	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow		Green	Yellow	Yellow		Yellow	Yellow						
Tower 17	Red	Orange	Red	Yellow	Yellow													
Section 6 Barker Tower	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Yellow	Green	Yellow	Green	Green	Green	Orange	Red	Orange	Orange	Orange
Section 7, Lendal Tower															Orange	Green	Green	Orange

Sections	Condition Survey Elements												Visual Survey					
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 8, Chainage no. 1350 -1400	Yellow	Orange	Yellow	Red	Orange	Yellow	Green						Yellow		Red	Green		
Section 8, Chainage no. 1400-1600	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Yellow								Red	Green			Orange
Multiangular Tower	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow			Yellow	Yellow										
St Leonard's	Orange	Orange	Orange	Orange			Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Yellow	Orange	Green						
Anglian Tower		Orange		Orange	Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Red						
Section 9 Bootham Bar	Yellow	Orange	Green	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Red	Yellow	Green	Green		Green	Green	Orange	Orange

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 10	Orange	Red	Orange	Red	Orange	Yellow								Red	Red	Orange	Red	Red
Tower 22	Orange	Yellow	Red	Green	Yellow													
Tower 23	Yellow	Green	Red	Green	Orange			Orange										
Tower 24	Red	Red	Red	Orange	Yellow	Orange		Green										
Tower 25	Orange	Orange	Orange	Orange	Orange	Green	Red		Orange		Red	Green						
Tower 26	Yellow	Orange	Yellow	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Yellow		Yellow		Red	Green						
Tower 27 Robin Hood Tower	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Green	Green	Yellow		Yellow	Green	Yellow					
Tower 28	Yellow	Green	Orange	Green	Green	Yellow	Green	Green										
Tower 29		Red			Red	Yellow												
Section 11 Monk Bar	Orange	Orange	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Red	Orange	Green	Yellow		Green	Green	Red	Green

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 12	●	●	●	●	●	●								●	●	●	●	●
Ice House	●	●	●	●	●	●	●				●	●						
Tower 30		●		●														
Tower 31 Harlot Hill Tower	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		●	●						
Tower 32 New Tower	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		●	●						
Tower 33	●	●	●	●	●	●												
Tower 34	●	●	●	●	●													

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 13 River Foss															●	●	●	●
Section 14 Red Tower	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		●	●	●	●	●
Section 15	●	●	●	●	●									●	●	●	●	●
Tower 35	●	●	●	●	●	●												
Tower 36	●	●	●	●	●			●										
Section 16 Walmgate Bar	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 17	Orange	Yellow	Red	Red	Yellow									Orange	Orange	Red	Orange	Red
Tower 37	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Yellow													
Fishergate Bar	Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Yellow	Yellow	Green												
Tower 38	Yellow	Yellow	Orange	Yellow	Green													
Tower 39	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Green		Orange	Green	Yellow		Yellow	Yellow	Yellow					
Section 18 Fishergate Postern Tower	Green	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Green	Green	Green	Green	Red	Orange	Yellow	Green		Orange	Red	Orange	Orange

Sections	Condition Survey Elements													Visual Survey				
	External Masonry	Internal Masonry	External Mortar	Internal Mortar	Flagstone (walkway)	Railings	Doors	Windows (arrow slits and embrasures)	Ceiling	Roof	Internal Walls	Internal Floor	Features	Ramparts	Signage, orientation, interpretation, lighting	Significant views	Access	Visitor Facilities
Section 19	●	●	●	●	●	●												
Davy Tower	●		●				●	●		●					●	●	●	●
Section 20 St Mary's Abbey Precinct	●	●	●	●	●										●	●	●	●
Water Tower	●	●	●	●			●	●			●							
Intermediate Tower A	●	●	●	●														
Intermediate Tower B	●	●	●	●														
Intermediate Tower C	●	●	●	●	●			●										
St Mary's Tower	●	●	●	●			●	●		●								
Intermediate Tower D (Fire Damaged)	●	●	●	●	●													
Intermediate Tower E	●	●	●	●	●			●										
St Margaret's Postern Tower	●	●	●	●			●	●	●	●	●	●						

3.3 Summary of Surveys by Theme

3.3.1 Condition

The 1991 survey reported the following on the condition of the walls:

*In...1980...it was stated that 'on the whole the walls are not in a good state of repair'. The current survey confirms that this is still true, with significant lengths of masonry showing signs of long-term deterioration.*³⁴

During the course of its history, many different mortars have been used to repair the City Walls. Therefore, the mortar assessment in this survey relates to condition rather than appropriate type. During the surveys carried out in 2004, it was noted that the City Maintenance Team had used varying strengths of mortars, some harder than stone, for the last seven years (preceding 2004), and had only recently been instructed to return to the use of lime mortar. During the 2020 surveys, a range of mortars were found from 1960s 'pebble dash' style cementitious mortar and dark cement mortar to very recent hot lime mixes, NHLs and natural cement additives. Generally, hard cementitious mortar was found though not all areas exhibiting the hard mortar showed signs of accelerated decay mechanisms.

The 2020 survey confirmed that the walkways have been kept in good repair with continual monthly review but there has been significant structural movement to many areas which have led to accelerated decay mechanisms - resulting in areas

requiring urgent and emergency works. It should, however, be noted generally regarding the condition that the walls are outdoor monuments and will always be subject to continual decay leading to the need for continual maintenance. As in the 1991 survey, this survey notes the various forms of deterioration to which the walls are subject and divides them into two groups: those related to poor design or construction and those caused by decay mechanisms. These are listed on the following page, some with illustrated examples.

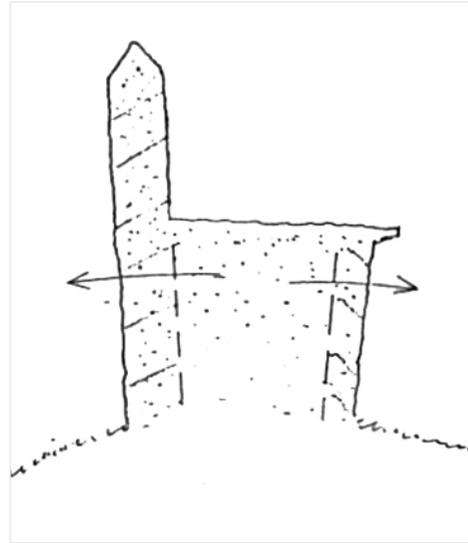
Poor Design/Construction

- Unstable foundations and ramparts **[Plate 3.01]**
- The 'spreading' between Victorian structure and historic parapet wall (widespread) **[Plate 3.02]**
- Leaning and bulging of the wall **[Plates 3.03]**
- Use of unsympathetic, non-breathable and brittle materials, such as concrete slabs, cementitious mortar
- polysulphide and water proofing **[Plates 3.04 & 3.05]**
- Masonry infill within towers (dramatically increasing weight)
- No movement joints to railings **[Plate 3.06]**
- Poor tying-in of masonry joints between wall constructions or structural elements **[Plate 3.07]**
- Surface water to walkways not managed
- No drip detail to walkway internal edge stones **[Plate 3.08]**
- Ferrous metal fixings into stone **[Plate 3.09]**

³⁴ Pywell, D. (1991), p4



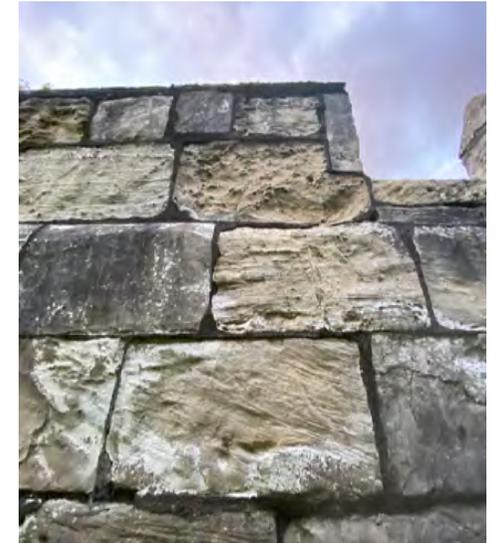
3.01 Unstable foundation



3.02 Spreading



3.03 Bulging



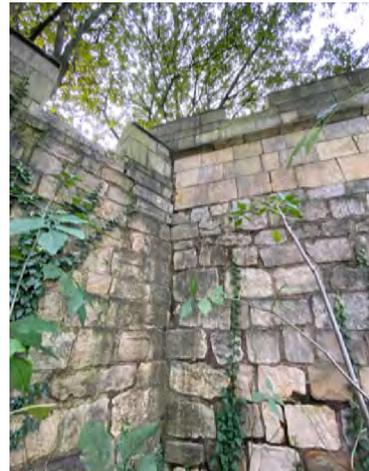
3.04 Cementitious Mortar



3.05 Concrete slabs



3.06 No movement joints to railings



3.07 No tying in of masonry joints



3.08 Edge stones with no drip detail



3.09 Ferrous Metal detail

Accelerated Decay Mechanisms

- Structural movement **[Plate 3.10]**
- Open joints to walkway paving (secondary factor but with considerable implications)
- Water ingress and saturation (increased effect because of other causes) **[Plate 3.11]**
- Open joints to masonry (secondary effect but is accelerating decay individually) **[Plate 3.12]**
- Sulphuric Crust (preventing water movement) **[Plate 3.13]**
- Rust jacking (secondary effect from water ingress) **[Plate 3.14]**
- Salt movement or efflorescence (secondary effect from water ingress) **[Plate 3.15]**
- Wind vortex **[Plate 3.16]**
- Vegetation ingress and jacking **[Plate 3.17]**
- Vibration (much reduced since previous surveys with reduced traffic volumes) **[Plate 3.18]**
- Seasonal temperature fluctuations (to lead) **[Plate 3.19]**



3.10 Structural Movement



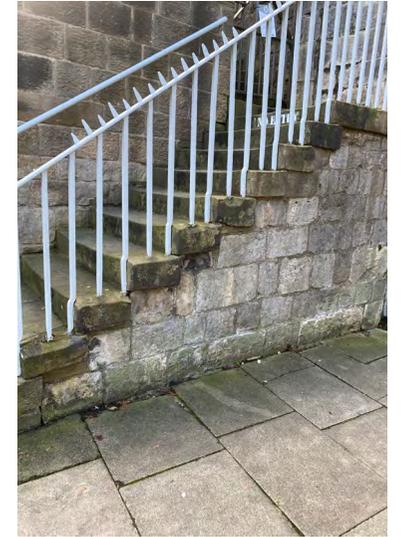
3.11 Water ingress and saturation



3.12 Open joints



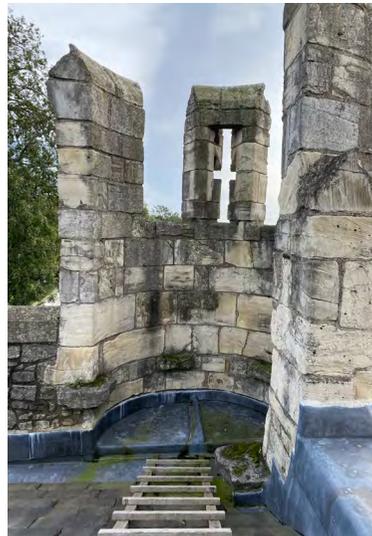
3.13 Sulphuric Crust



3.14 Rust Jacking



3.15 Salt Movement and Saturated Masonry



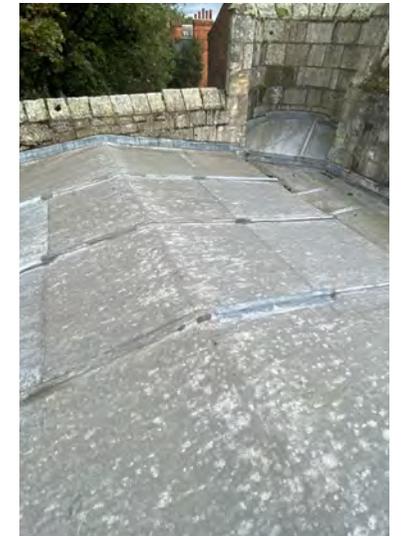
3.16 Wind vortex



3.17 Vegetation Jacking



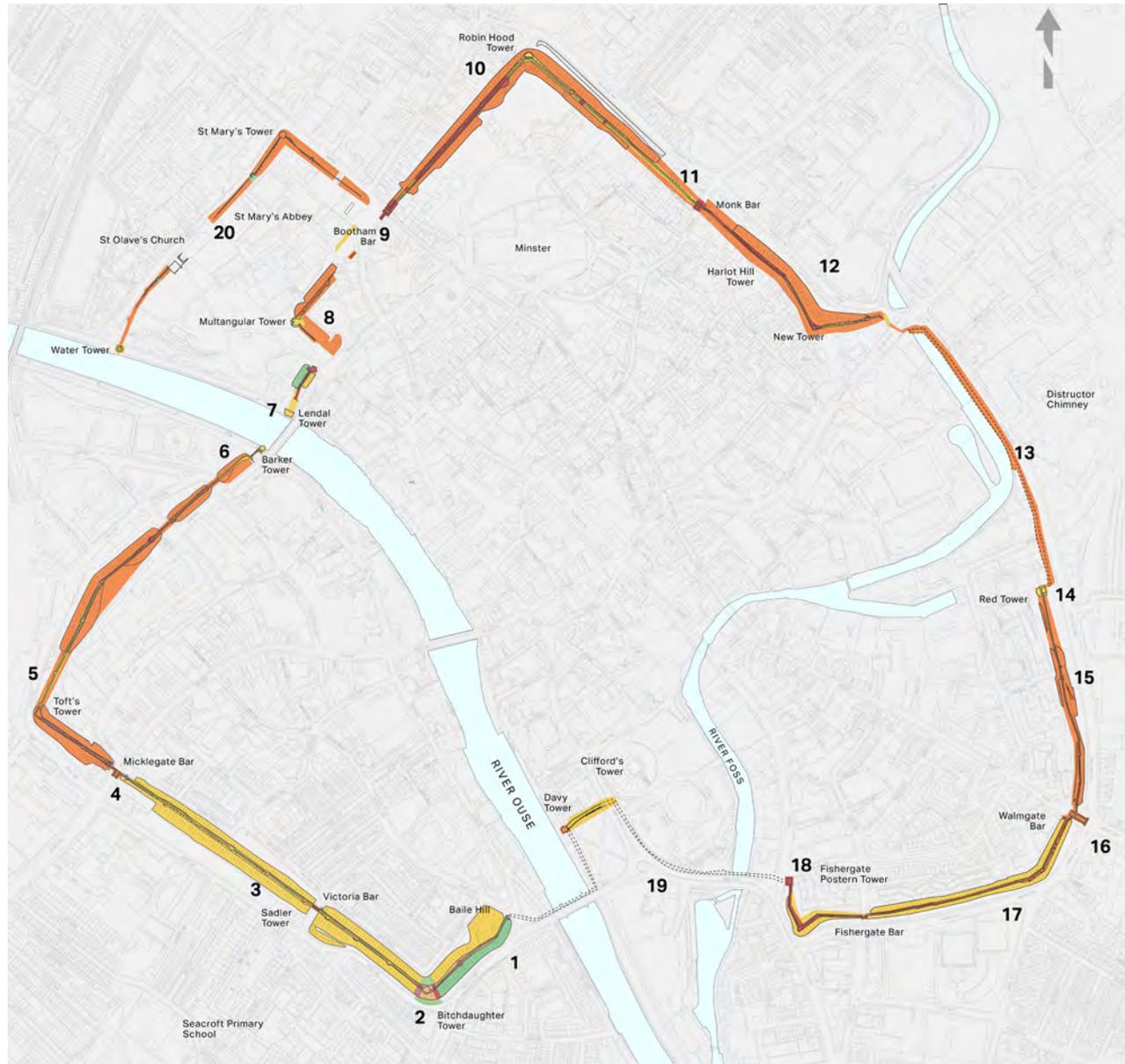
3.18 Vibration



3.19 Seasonal temperature changes

Key

- Good condition
- Average condition
- Poor condition



Map 3.1 Summary of Condition Map

3.3.2 Views and Setting

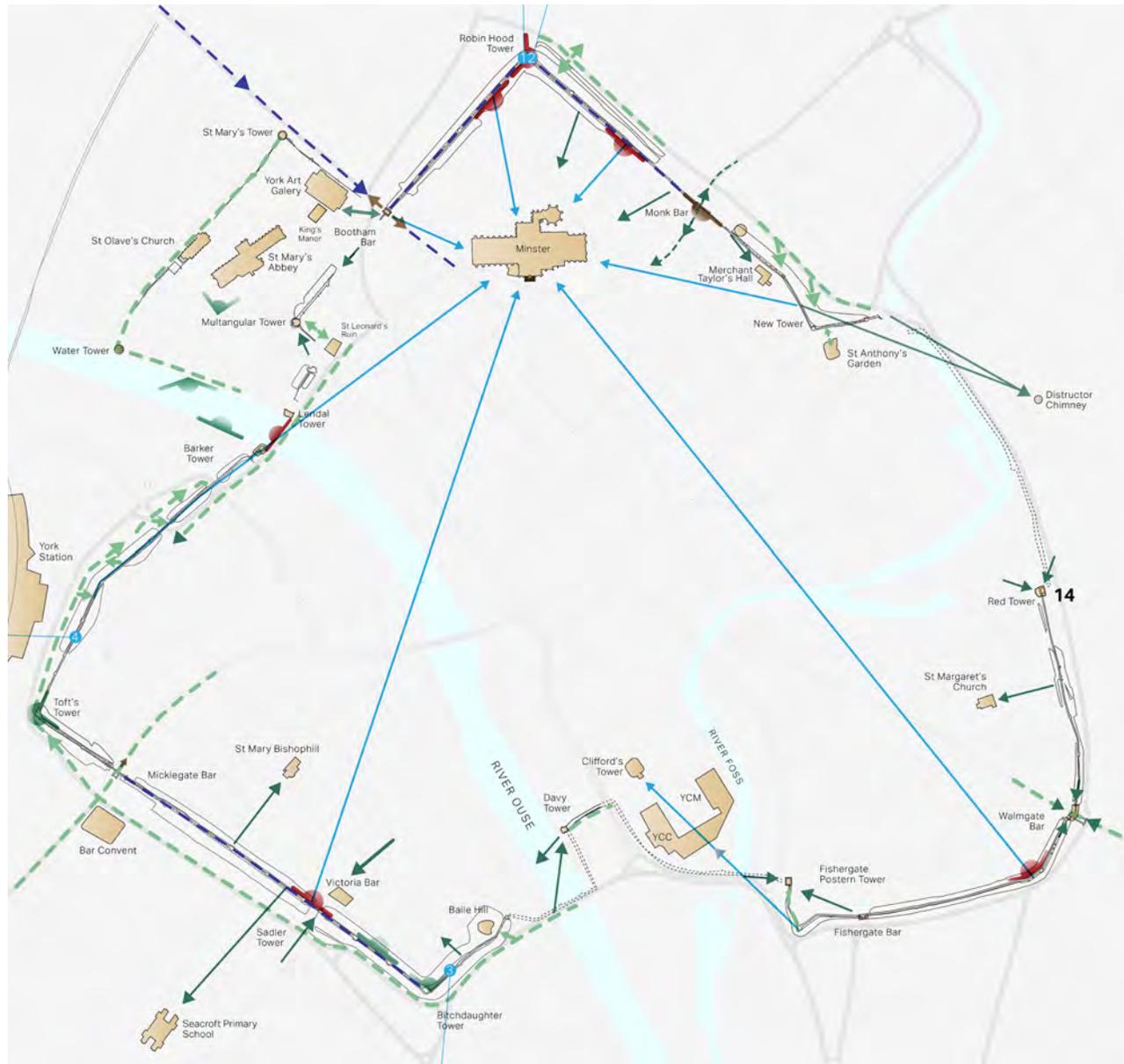
The size and nature of the walls and bars means that they are often viewed from a distance and the wall walk enables views out from it – both are integral to its historical function and significance. Views towards and across the city of the Minster are spectacular - it holds the most prominent position over the skyline of York and the walls provide many opportunities to view it. Similarly, key landmarks, fundamental to the understanding of the wider history of York are visible from the walls, such as the station. Whilst this is not an exhaustive list, the key views are marked on the map on the adjacent page **[Map 3.2]**.

Longer-range views from this section include those of Terry's Tower, from just north-east of Bitchdaughter Tower)tree management From Mickelgate Bar, local views along Blossom Street contain a variety of building types; the most notable landmark is Bar Convent. Longer-range views from this section of the walls include those looking east to Severus Hill – which is defined by a distinctive water tower and Holgate Windmill. Closer to the centre, the bars and walls generally have more urban settings, made up of a variety of building types of various ages and there is in most cases a distinction between the grain of development within the walls and without. Within, are the narrow and tightly packed historic high streets leading to and from Bootham, Micklegate and Monk Bars which frame views which terminate in the bars, and the archways of the bars themselves equally enclose/frame views along the slightly deflecting streets **[Plates 3.25 & 3.26]**. At Bootham and Monk Bars, some

of the surrounding buildings are convex in plan – deferring to the bar. In most instances, it is the bar that dominates the streetscene, despite the proximity of some of the development. Views between the Art Gallery / Exhibition Square / the King's Manor and Bootham Bar are particularly notable. The settings of Victoria, Walmgate and Fishergate Bars have a more open in grain and are set along modern arterial roads, which reduces their dramatic presence in the streetscene to some extent **[Plate 3.27]**. Other notable views of features within the city include those in Section 12 of the 18th century ice house, Merchant Taylor's Hall and Roman corner tower, whilst long-range views from Robin Hood Tower of the Howardian Hills / North York Moors are achievable and from the stretch of wall along Lord Mayor's Walk there are distant views of the Yorkshire Wolds.³⁵

35 Pers comm with York Civic Trust (2021)

- Key**
-  Key Views
 -  Local Views
 -  Dynamic Key Views
 -  Dynamic Local Views
 -  Key Panorama
 -  Local Panorama
 -  Key Private Views
 -  Key Private Panorama
 -  Landmark
-  1 Long Range View to Howardian Hills
 -  2 Long Range View to North York Moors
 -  3 Views of Terry's Tower
 -  4 Views of Holgate Windmill and Water Tower (Severus Hill)



Map 3.2 Views



3.21 Section 3, View towards Minster over the rooftops of Bishophill



3.22 Section 3, View towards Micklegate Bar



3.23 Section 5, Stephenson House and carparking adjacent to the Walls



3.24 Section 5 View of the Minster with the Grand Hotel to the right



3.25 Section 4, View of Micklegate Bar from Blossom Street



3.26 Section 11 Monk Bar's arch framing views of Goodramgate



3.27 Section 16, Walmgate Bar from Foss Island Road

The ramparts are a fundamental aspect of the City Walls and their setting and they form a considerable green corridor. Their value in terms of ecology and amenity is particularly evident in **Sections 1-3**, which features Baile Hill, ramparts and historic tree planting. Also the northern parts of **Section 5**, which now regularly contain formal municipal planting schemes, and its outer ramparts (although largely eroded) that provide valuable green amenity space which feeds into a wider green network (including the gardens at Station Rise and the Memorial Gardens lining the river) **[Plates 3.28 & 3.29]**. Tree planting along the roadside at the base of the ramparts encircles the walls and provides an attractive setting, but in some instances conceal the walls and views from them **[see Plate 3.28]**.



3.28 Section 1, View of Ramparts, Tower 1 and beyond Baile Hill



3.29 Section 5, View of Outer Rampart along Station Road

Sections 8 and 20 have an exceptional landscape setting - Museum Gardens - containing the ruins of St Mary's Abbey and St Leonard's, enclosed by the City and Precinct Walls **[Plate 3.30]**. **Section 8** also faces onto the less impressive /Explore York gardens, which also contains modern hard landscaping close to the walls and gravel paths **[Plates 3.31]**. **Sections 6, 7, 13 and 18- 20** either front onto or lie close to the rivers Ouse/Foss – which is a fundamental part of their setting both visually and historically **[Plate 3.32]**. **Section 10** is surrounded by a variety of landscapes, including the private gardens to the houses on Gillygate, the grassed and tree-lined ditch along Lord Mayor's Walk and the gardens within the Minster Precinct. Trees provide a strong contrast with the walls and frame the views along the wall walk and across the Precinct to the Minster **[Plates 3.33 & 3.34]**. The setting here is unique and is dominated by the Minster Precinct and the distinctively straight sections of the Roman *Eboracum*. Views along these sections of wall are dramatic (although marred by modern railings) and can also be appreciated from the roof of Monk Bar (**Section 11**) **[Plates 3.35 & 3.36]**. This vantage point also provides dramatic views of the Minster and Goodramgate; the rooftop of Bootham offers similarly distinctive views along Petergate and Micklegate provides views along Micklegate and Blossom Street - though these views are currently private with limited access **[Plate 3.37]**.



3.30 Section 8, View of Multangular Tower from Museum Gardens



3.31 Section 8, Hard landscaping to the rear of the Library



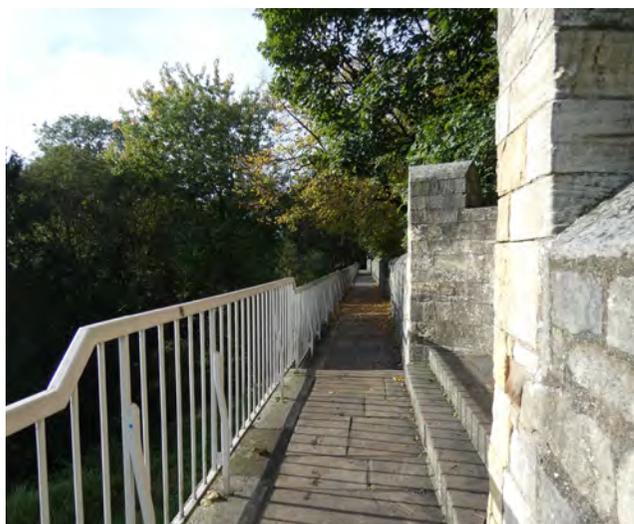
3.32 Section 20, Views from south side of River Ouse near Barker Tower and Memorial Garden



3.33 Section 10, View of Minster from the Wall Walk



3.34 Section 10, View along Wall Walk



3.35 Section 10, View along Wall Walk



3.36 Section 11, View of Wall from Monk Bar



3.37 Section 11, View of Minster and Goodramgate from Monk Bar

Section 19 also has a distinctive and highly significant setting, with the York Castle site, Clifford's Tower, the Castle Museum and Debtor's/Female Prisons and the Crown Court, part framed by the curtain wall and the Foss and weir lock, whilst the Ouse lies to the west. The modern road network, street clutter, surface car parking detract from the setting and the low quality landscaping to St George's Field is neutral at best [**Plates 3.38 & 3.39**].



3.38 Section 19, View of road network and street furniture



3.39 Section 19, St George's Field

Sections 13-18 are lined by modern commercial development along Foss Island Road, Paragon Street, parts of Fishergate and Piccadilly. The 'Destructor Tower' (Grade II) is a key landmark in this otherwise low-scale area and features in many views. 20th century housing developments are also located within the setting, some of which contribute to the understanding of the historic development of the areas in relation to slum clearance, municipal housing and nearby philanthropic housing initiatives, however most of the later-20th century developments detract from the setting of the walls **[Plates 3.40 & 3.41]**.



3.40 Section 13, Late-20th century Commercial Development and the Destructor Tower beyond



3.41 Section 15, Neo-Georgian Housing set within generous landscape on Rosemary Court

Inappropriately sited development and the lack of good design for modern structures has had an impact on views of or from the monuments. Examples of large-scale 20th and early-21st century development within the setting includes Stephenson House, Westgate Apartments and the CYC Council Offices near **Section 5**, the Barbican near **Section 15** and Travelodge near Fishergate Postern Tower - which visually compete in scale, in some cases use inappropriate materials and dominate the setting of the walls **[Plate 3.42]**. Recent developments within the setting of the walls include McQuade's Court adjacent to the wall walk in **Section 15** and Hudson Quarter Development adjacent to **Section 5**; both are situated close to the walls and dwarf them in scale and, in the case of the latter, visually compete with the parapet of the walls in views from the station **[see Plates 3.23 and 3.43]**.

In some instances the street furniture, light fittings, signage road network and surfaces detract from the appreciation of the walls and bars, for example at Lendal Tower, Micklegate Bar, near the station along **Section 5**, on Bootham adjacent to the Postern Tower, at Layerthorpe Bridge/Foss Island Road, surrounding Walmgate Bar and in **Section 19 [Plate 3.44]**. Furthermore, some of the crossings are dangerous or difficult to navigate for pedestrians – particularly near Bootham Bar and **Sections 18 and 19**.

Furthermore, unmanaged trees and planting detract from the setting or conceal key views such as those in **Section 10** towards the Minster and to the rear of Gillygate and planting within St George's Field (**Section 19 [Plate 3.45]**).



3.42 Section 18, Travel Lodge adjacent to Fishergate Postern Tower



3.43 Section 5, Hudson Quarter Development



3.44 Section 20, Street Furniture adjacent to the Postern Tower



3.45 Section 19, Planting and bins adjacent to City Wall

3.3.3 Orientation and Interpretation

The wall walk features a combination of historic material, maps and street signs; this is provided in interpretation panels at points of interest, such as the main structures (bars and towers). These were installed by CYC in c.2006 following the guidelines set out in the *Access and Interpretation Plan* (2004) and the information includes illustrations, maps, information on walking distances/times between the sections, QR codes³⁶ providing links to additional information and 'Retrace York' panels³⁷ [Plate 3.46]. Most are fixed to the walls, towers and bars. These boards will likely appear dated in a relatively short period of time given their visual 'busyness' and distinctive graphic design. In some cases, there is too much information on one board and the links to additional information via the QR codes are useful, but the FOYW website could be improved visually as it is very text heavy. Alongside these boards are maps, which were recased in wooden box frames in c.2004, these are now sun-faded and shabby [Plate 3.47]. There are a series of older signs and plaques, some are late-20th century and are now difficult to read, whilst others such as those at St Leonard's and Lendal Tower are probably mid-20th century and of good quality [Plate 3.48]. There is a duplication of panels and signs, of varying design and quality; in some cases they are in poor condition, in others they

36 Providing links to the Friends of York Walls Website

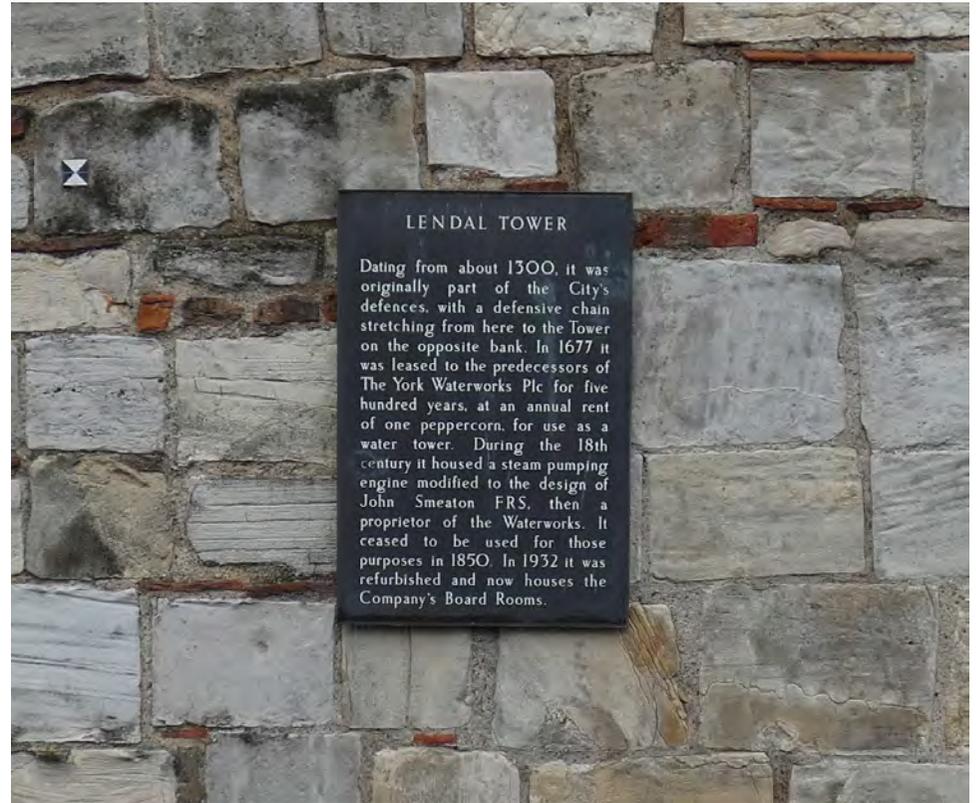
37 An interactive experience for visitors on the City Walls, whereby a metal map of York has been split up and visitors are invited to assemble a complete map, travelling around the walls in any direction, by taking a rubbing of each panel.



3.46 Section 14, Interpretation board and Retrace York panel at Red Tower



3.47 Section 14, Sun-faded map at Red Tower



3.48 Section 7, Signage at Lendal Tower

contain misleading/incorrect information – such as those at Bootham Bar which suggests there is no City Wall between the Bar and Lendal Bridge and also does not clarify that the wall walk continues through the gate to the Bar. Along the 'City Walls Trail' is a series of in-ground brass markers, which lead the way where the trail is not along the wall walk itself.

Particular areas of the wall circuit are difficult to navigate or feel private and discourage exploration; these areas include **Section 8**, parts of **Section 20** (adjacent to the King's Manor) and **Section 13**. **Section 8** also contains some of the most archaeologically interesting sections of wall and physical interpretation, but this is poorly explained and difficult to access.

A signage survey of the walls was conducted in 2002 and it appears that no overarching review has been carried out since the installation of the interpretation boards in c.2006. While they have certainly helped to improve the consistency and presentation of information about the walls, the panels are still limited in their accessibility - as noted below there is little in the way of information for those who are visually impaired. Naming of the key features, bars and towers could be improved across the wall circuit, and could be done with subtle, tactile signage. Successful new finger post street signage, which directs visitors towards the wall walk or its key features, has been introduced in a few areas as part of a city-wide signage strategy (part-implemented), namely by the Red Tower, on Rosemary Place and Palmer Street within the Hungate development area [**Plate 3.49**].



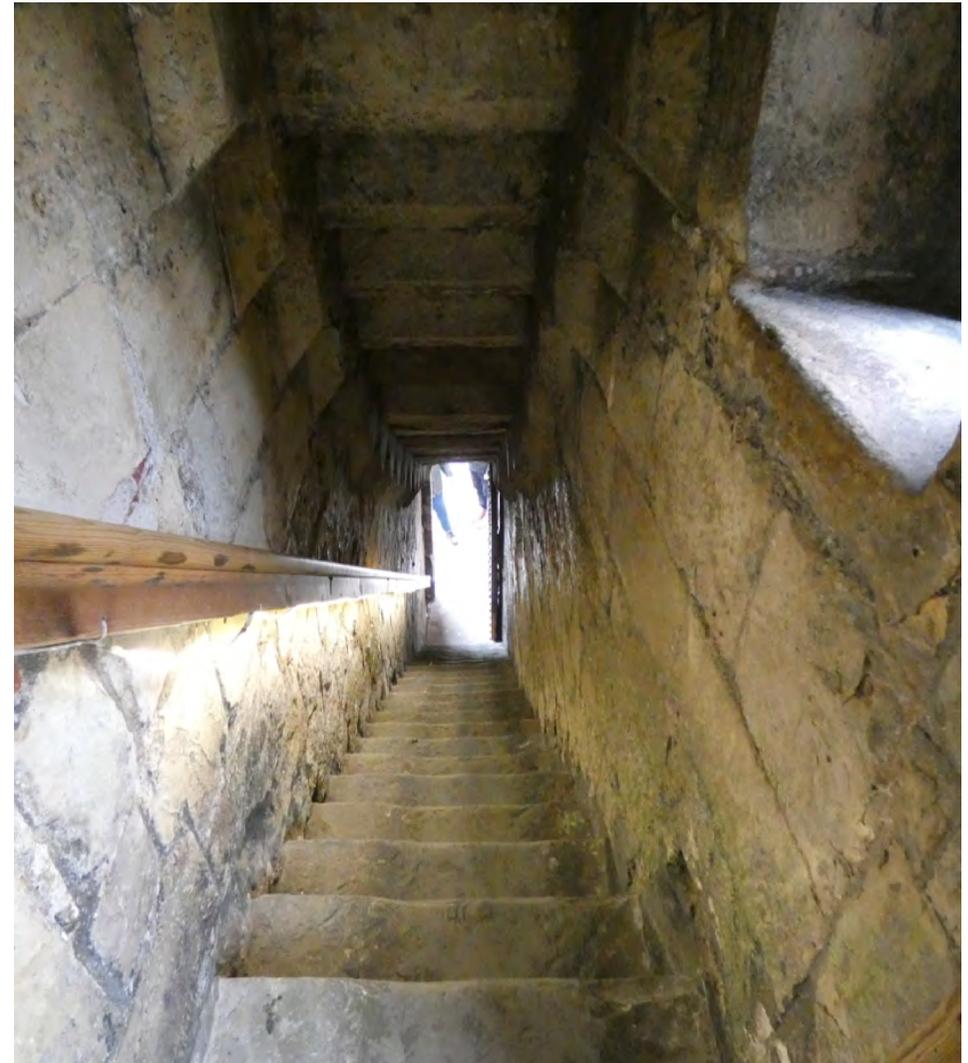
3.49 Section 13, new CYC street sign

3.3.4 Visitor Facilities

Museums/Visitor Attractions along the City Walls include museums within Micklegate Bar and Monk Bar (which have remained closed since March). Monk Bar contains the Richard III Experience (York Archaeological Trust (YAT)), access to the Museum is via a steep flight of steps in a small, narrow passageway on one side of the Bar **[Plate 3.50]**. Micklegate Bar contains the Richard III & Henry VII Experience - a civil and social insight into the city's history; it is accessed via the wall walk, again up a flight of steps. Other bars and towers are open to the public and provide information on a smaller scale, these include Fishergate Postern Tower, which is open typically one or two Saturdays per month and its rooms are used for interpretation; the exhibits are currently being developed by the FOYW. Red Tower was refurbished in 2018 and is open to the public on a limited basis at present; the ground floor contains information on the Tower.³⁸ Within Bootham Bar, there is a freestanding interpretation panel, but little else. N.B. the leasing of the upstairs rooms of Micklegate (and other bars); the presence of pay barriers and limited opening times restricts access.

Seating along the walls comprises a mixture of plain timber 'municipal park' benches and steel framed timber slatted seats; many are poorly maintained and detract from the setting of the

³⁸ The Red Tower was the subject of a community asset transfer from CYC to the Red Tower Community Interest Company



3.50 Section 11, Staircase within Monk Bar

walls. These are provided at several places along the City Walls, including the following locations: Tofts Tower; Barker Tower/ Lendal Bridge; Tower 24; Robin Hood Tower; Tower 28; and Tower 37. In addition, several seats are provided within Museum Gardens, Explore York Gardens and St George's Field **[Plate 3.51]**.

Litterbins are provided at intervals along the wall walk, including those at Tofts Tower and Robin Hood Tower and also within St George's Field. The wall walk bins are large, rough stone-faced and bulky and whilst they meet basic good practice design guidelines (attempt to blend in with the colour of the wall, minimal intervention), they are not successful and detract from the setting of the walls **[Plate 3.52]**. Those within the gardens are mixed and in some cases are large plastic wheelie bins. Those at street level adjacent to the bars are 'standard issue' municipal bins and could also be improved visually.

Public toilets are provided in the Nunnery Lane carpark, at the base of the steps leading up to Bootham Bar (although this building could be improved), within the café at Walmgate Bar, the St George's Fields carpark and those near Clifford's Tower (the north side of the carpark). Other public WCs within close proximity to the walls include those at the pub near Monk Bar on Union Terrace and Rougier Street.



3.51 Section 17, Standard seating along the Wall Walk



3.52 Section 10, Seating and Litterbin at Robin Hood Tower

3.3.5 Lighting

Lighting is currently in the form of large floodlights housed in green cages, set on the ramparts. They are intended to illuminate the walls and towers, but in some cases light the ramparts alone. Alternative more focussed lighting is provided at some of the bars, such as Monk Bar, where large fittings have been added to buildings adjacent to the Bar. The floodlighting is currently being renewed by CYC - the new floodlights will be smaller, more efficient and programmed to change colour. Beneath some of the bars and bridges, 20th century bulkhead fittings are common **[Plate 3.53]**. Most of the light fittings are bulky and visually intrusive and do not illuminate the key features of the walls adequately **[Plate 3.54]**. As part of CYC's review, the redundant bulkhead fittings will be surveyed and carefully removed.

3.3.6 Access

The City Walls walkway is, for the main part, only physically accessible via several sets of stone steps, which is limiting to those with any form of mobility issues and those with prams and pushchairs. Access to Baile Hill could be improved with a new level path from the walkway to the hilltop, sensitive landscaping and seating.³⁹ Bitchdaughter Tower also has the potential for ramped access provision, which could open up a good portion of the wall walk and the Tower itself. **Section 8** is accessed via

³⁹ Subject to a review of the archaeological implications.



3.53 Section 11, Bulkhead Light at Monk Bar



3.54 Section 5, Standard Floodlight

gravel paths, lawns and adjacent to the walls - steps, which are likely to be inconvenient for wheelchair users and those with prams etc. Furthermore, the width of the wall walk varies and in some areas is quite narrow, particularly along parts of **Sections 5, 10 and 15** and some steps are uneven, given the nature of their age and material **[see Plates 3.14 & 3.34]**.

Railings are provided in several areas along the inside of the wall to minimise risk to wall walk users and have been located where there is high footfall and a steep drop, where walkways cross carriageways and where access needs to be limited at night time. However, in a number of areas they detract from the appearance of the walls; this is particularly the case in **Sections 1, 3, 5, 10, 12 and 16**; and in some cases they are causing damage to their fabric; for example in **Section 10** where they appear to be exacerbating pre-existing issues **[see Plates 3.6.& 3.35]**.

External visual access to the bars can be achieved from street level, however, access to their upper floors is only via steps, which are largely steep, narrow and uneven, those at Monk Bar and Fishergate Postern Tower (although access to the ground floor is possible here) are particularly difficult to navigate. External visual access to the towers is possible from street level along most sections except for **Section 8** (which is accessed via gravel paths and lawns) and parts of **Section 10** which are hemmed in by private gardens, the wall walk and in some cases via the ramparts. Those with internal spaces are locked and only opened for maintenance purposes.

Websites which provide information on access include: CYC's York Walls page, FOYW Wall Trail page (which includes 'From the Ground' map) and York Explore.

For those with impaired vision, it is not clear whether an assessment of this issue has been carried out. Guide dogs are allowed on the wall walk (other dogs are not). The aforementioned 'Retrace York' metal panels have raised graphics representing the form of the wall by section, which provides some tactile quality and information, but the text is incised. Sections of the wall walk, particularly steps, have been painted white to assist in the navigation and to avoid trip hazards; however this is not consistent across the entire circuit.

Severe weather conditions often affect the accessibility of the wall walk, especially ice, snow or wind and CYC closes the wall walk at such times. The wall walk was also recently closed during the Government-imposed lockdown in spring of 2020 and CYC subsequently introduced a one-way system to enable adequate social distancing.

Virtual Access

There are a number of useful websites providing visitor information on the City Walls, however the majority of these have been written and developed by individuals or companies who have an interest in promoting visitor facilities in the area. The principal websites providing detailed information are: FOYW,

which the CYC website provides a link to; Visit York; Jorvik and commercial websites such as Think Adventure. **Plate 3.55** shows one of a number of maps, in this case an online trail map, provided by FOYW.

Most other sites which provide information provide a brief reference about the age of the walls, although two different dates of origin - Roman and Norman - are commonly provided. A number incorrectly describe the circuit as being 'incomplete' due to the lack of walls between the Layerthorpe Postern and the Red Tower. The quality of the information and graphics vary considerably across the sites and the majority of the sites are primarily text based. Some provide detailed descriptions of the various sections of the walls, focusing on their history, others highlight key attractions, such as the Monk Bar Museum. A number of sites stress that the most interesting section of the walls is that between Bootham Bar and Monk Bar (**Section 10**).

More recent initiatives have sought to engage visitors as part of an 'Instagrammable Tour of York' and Visit York's Selfie Trail, which draws visitors to key iconic locations across York, including those along the walls and of bars [**Plate 3.56**].

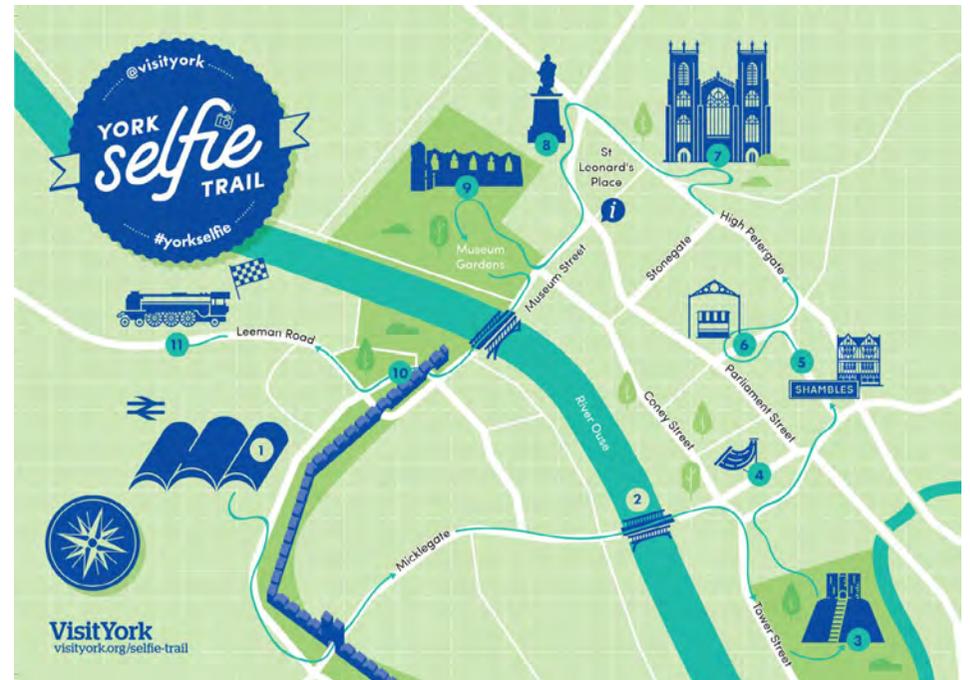
One of the recommendations within the *Access and Interpretation Plan* (2004) was to develop a virtual tour as part of Explore York website. Whilst this has not been fully carried out to date, the FOYW provide virtual tours of particular towers on their own website, including Fishergate Postern Tower, as well

as additional tours available on YouTube™. In addition, Google *Streetview*™ provides virtual access to a good proportion of the wall walk and could be expanded as part of a special project between Google/CYC (see opportunities in Section 6).

A new website for the City Walls is currently being developed by CYC; this has been delayed due to COVID-19, but will provide statutory and basic information about the history of the walls and visiting them to CYC editorial/accessibility standards and will be less detailed than the FOYW website.



3.55 Friends of York Walls Trail Map (www.yorkwalls.org.uk)



3.56 Visit York Selfie Trail Map (<https://www.visit-york.org/explore/selfie>)

3.3.7 The Natural Environment

Whilst not the central emphasis of this CMP, the following section summarises some of the ecological potential of the walls. *CYC's Local Biodiversity Action Plan (2017) and Pollinator Strategy* (2020-25) discuss CYC's overarching findings and strategies and forthcoming studies by CYC will explore them in relation to the walls.

The Ramparts

The embankments are likely to have been used for grazing in past centuries and a large cattle market was regularly held from 1827 until 1970 along the outer ramparts of **Sections 15 and 17**, those lining Paragon Street were cut away to make space for the cattle pens [**Plate 3.57**]. Cutting away of the ramparts has occurred at several other places both inside and outside the walls, for example in 1923 to allow room for the Lutyens war memorial (**Section 5**) and in many places inside the walls to allow for the erection of buildings, such as those lining **Sections 5, 10, 12 and 14-18**. Some of the ramparts are suffering from natural erosion, at Baile Hill and ramparts to **Sections 1, 3, 5, 12 and 14** [**see Plate 3.58-3.60**]. In **Section 10**, the outer ramparts lining Gillygate are largely overgrown, some have been incorporated into gardens and have dwarf walls dividing the property boundaries, which detracts. Those to the Minster Precinct are similarly overgrown and eroded, and within Deanery Gardens and Gray's Court, rockery gardens have been formed on the rampart.

Also near the War Memorial in Section 5 is a Second World War air raid shelter, intended for railway staff, the opening for which is set within the brick retaining wall [**Plate 3.61**].

The ramparts cover at least six hectares of grassland or woodland, which is potentially a significant habitat and wildlife resource for York's urban area. They are considered in CYC's *Local Biodiversity Action Plan* (2017) to be of high 'district importance' and provide valuable accessible green space within the highly urbanised setting of York city centre. The walls can also be considered as a 'green corridor' for wildlife and it can be argued that the sights and sounds of birds, trees, grass and wildflowers in an urban centre greatly enhances one's experience and enjoyment. A few of the towers are used to provide a habitat for bees, particularly those in **Section 1**.

The *Access and Interpretation Plan* (2004) suggested creating a 'Rampart Walk' to provide a 'linear park' offering a new 24-hour, fully accessible route around the city. This has not been established to date.



3.57 Truncated Ramparts lining Paragon Street, Section 17



3.58 Section 5, Erosion to rampart



3.59 Truncated Ramparts near Section 15



3.61 Interior of Air Raid Shelter, near War Memorial (Claire MacRae, 2012)



3.60 Section 17, 1970s housing development cutting into ramparts

Bats

The North Yorkshire Bat Group was consulted in 2004 regarding the likelihood of there being a bat presence along the City Walls. It was their opinion that they were likely to be present and “*the various structures (gates, museums, York Water Works, etc.) may have bats in the roof spaces in summer. During the winter, some bats might be expected to hibernate in the walls.*”⁴⁰ Confirmed sightings of bats have been recorded at the Museum Gardens and York Water Works (Lendal Tower) and at many points close to the walls. English Nature identified that the walls and particularly the areas with trees such as those around Gillygate are likely to be used as commuting and foraging routes by bats. A list of recorded sightings was provided within the 2004 CMP and should be updated with a new survey.

Botany

A survey of the ramparts / embankments carried out in 2003 recorded around 75 different herbaceous plant species including: upright brome and bee orchid which are very rare in the City of York (bee orchid is a nationally uncommon species); spiked sedge and crow garlic, which are rare in the local area; and possibly sand leek which is nationally scarce [see Plates 3.62 and 3.63] At this time, the most botanically interesting sections can be found within Section 5. The conclusion of a survey was that they are of significant local nature conservation interest.⁴¹

40 Drewett, J. 2004. pers.comm

41 PLB Consulting (2004), p40

The outside of the ramparts from Micklegate towards the station comprises semi-natural calcareous grassland (probably due to leaching from the limestone City Walls), which is rare to find in the region and therefore supports a number of interesting botanical species including the *upright brome*. There are some mature elm trees at Nunnery Lane (along the road edge of the carpark), which are nationally an extremely rare resource.

Other interesting factors include the presence of *alexanders*, which occur infrequently inland. They are likely to have been introduced to Britain by the Romans and have been recorded in the same area since at least the 1780s. *Deadly nightshade* was frequently recorded in the past but has now been removed from accessible areas; this plant was used historically for medicinal properties and may be associated with monastic cultivation.

The *Edible Gardens Trail* is an initiative introduced in York in c.2014 to encourage residents of York to grow their own produce. The gardens at the Red Tower and the bed adjacent to the Barbican appear to be the only areas where this initiative is active, but it could be expanded. One section of the ramparts (at Queen Street) is managed in a pollinator-friendly way, with the cultivation of Knapweed, Cowslip, Field scabies, Ladies bedstraw, Bellflower, Meadow cranesbill.⁴²

42 The success of this initiative will be evaluated by CYC.



3.62 Bee orchid (*Ophrys apifera*) (www.kew.org)



3.63 Spiked Sedge (www.naturespot.org.uk)

3.3.8 Management

During the late- and post-medieval periods, Muremasters were elected to look after the walls. These were supported by a number of masons and 'Common Husbands'.⁴³ From the 18th century City Stewards were elected and from the 19th century Corporation Surveyors. A list of known city officials responsible for the walls from c.1448 to 1971 is included in the RCHME volume, which provides a comprehensive gazetteer of the monument.⁴⁴ The walls are opened every day at 8.00am except when there is a risk of ice resulting in slippery conditions. They are closed at around dusk.

There is an allocated sum of £30k per annum for revenue works, and a rolling capital programme of c.£90k per annum (although this fluctuates). The City Walls received £1.6m capital funding in 2016/17 from CYC.

The public access route is inspected monthly by CYC Highway Inspectors to check for trip and slip hazards, including uneven flagstones, unsafe handrails etc., with resulting works being undertaken by CYC's Ancient Monuments team. A structural inspection regime is currently being established and this will inform future structural conservation works to the City Walls. The on-going programme for repair and maintenance was set out initially in the three-volume condition survey of the

⁴³ In effect a Town Manager

⁴⁴ RCHME (1972)

walls undertaken in 1991 by CYC, with records updated and kept within a master copy of the condition survey, kept by the Council's Engineer. The recently retired City Archaeologist - John Oxley – has been consulted in the creation of a list of principle works to the walls since c.2000, which is summarised within Section 2.

The Council Parks Department has responsibility for the management of the ramparts; this typically includes a grass cut around June/July and another in late summer/early-autumn and the maintenance of display beds.



4.0 Assessment of Significance

4.1 Assessing Significance

This assessment responds to the requirement of the National Planning Policy Framework to 'recognise that heritage assets are an irreplaceable resource and conserve them in a manner appropriate to their significance'. The NPPF defines significance as:

'The value of a heritage asset to this and future generations because of its heritage interest. That interest may be archaeological (potential to yield evidence about the past), architectural, artistic or historic. Significance derives not only from a heritage asset's physical presence, but also from its setting'.

Historic England's *Conservation Principles, Policies and Guidance* of 2008 sets out current good practice for assessing the significance of historic buildings in England and is derived from the 1979 Burra Charter. It states that the following values should be considered in order to fully understand the significance of a place:

Evidential value: the potential of a place to yield evidence about past human activity.

Historical value: the ways in which past people, events and aspects of life can be connected through a place to the present – it tends to be illustrative or associative.

Aesthetic value: the ways in which people draw sensory and intellectual stimulation from a place.

Communal value: the meanings of a place for the people who relate to it, or for whom it figures in their collective experience or memory.

The Burra Charter introduced the concept of 'communal' or 'social value' as an equal category of value used to assess the 'cultural significance' of the historic environment - alongside historic, aesthetic and scientific value.⁴⁵ For the purposes of this report, the assumptions relating to the social value of the walls are based upon best practice in conservation management and the author's understanding of the role which heritage plays in terms of wellbeing, sense of identity, belonging and place, etc. To be able to celebrate the walls fully, it would be beneficial to assess these values from a wider variety of perspectives and using different methodologies. N.B. residential value being one of the main priorities to CYC.

This significance of a heritage asset should also be considered spatially, as well as conceptually, because significance is not always manifest in equal measure in all parts of a building or place. In some situations, for example, all four categories of heritage values are present; in others, fewer; in some places the heritage values might even be in conflict.

⁴⁵ Jones and Leech (2015), p.35

For the purposes of these particular monuments, the four core values above have been augmented or subcategorised as follows:

- *Engineering value (Historical)*
- *Group value (Aesthetic / Historical)*
- *Education/Research value (Evidential / Historical)*
- *Environmental value (Communal)*
- *Economic value (Communal)*

A hierarchy of significance is an essential tool for managing change. Areas of the highest or high significance are most sensitive to change; areas of medium and low significance are correspondingly more adaptable. Negative elements, and to a lesser extent areas of medium or low significance provide the clearest opportunities for change.

- **Highest** – an asset important at the highest national or international levels, including scheduled ancient monuments, Grade I and II* listed buildings and World Heritage Sites. The NPPF advises that substantial harm should be wholly exceptional.
- **High** – a designated asset important at a regional level and also at a national level, including Grade II listed buildings and conservation areas. The NPPF advises that substantial harm should be exceptional.

- **Medium** – an undesignated asset important at a local to regional level, including local (non-statutory) listed buildings or those that make a positive contribution to the setting of a listed building or to a conservation area. May include less significant parts of listed buildings. Buildings and parts of structures in this category should be retained where possible, although there is usually scope for adaptation.
- **Low** – structure or feature of very limited heritage or other cultural value and not defined as a heritage asset. May include insignificant interventions to listed buildings, and buildings that do not contribute positively to a conservation area. The removal or adaptation of structures in this category is usually acceptable where the work will enhance a related heritage asset.
- **Negative** – structure or feature that harms the value of a heritage asset. Wherever practicable, removal of negative features should be considered, taking account of setting and opportunities for enhancement.

4.2 Assessment of Significance

The City Walls are of **exceptional significance** on account of their long and unique history and their historic and continuing relevance to, and impact on, the culture, society, economy and environment of the City of York and its wider, universal context.

The walls of York are the longest in England – 2 3/4m. long – and the best maintained. Moreover, there is nothing in the country to emulate its gates or bars.⁴⁶

The **aesthetic value** of the City Walls is of the **highest value**, as demonstrated by the numerous historical representations of them, many of which form parts of universally valued collections. Their iconic status is reinforced by the volume of international visitors who come to York to experience and photograph them. The walls essentially define and form a fundamental part of York's 'sense of place'. Regrettably, there are instances where cluttered signage, street furniture and inappropriately sited or poorly designed development detracts from this outstanding aesthetic value.

As one of the most complex and best-preserved examples of city walls and their associated structures, York City Walls are of **universal archaeological and historical value**. The number of periods and features, both upstanding and buried, and the variety of built heritage represented within the monument

⁴⁶ Pevsner, N and Neave, D (1999)



reflects its long and unique history. Its level of survival and state of preservation contribute considerably to this value. The alterations and additions made over the centuries are a precious record and significant in their own right, telling their own story about the monument and demonstrating the prevailing values of each era.⁴⁷ The monument therefore provides a unique resource for archaeological study and research.

The walls are of the **highest historical value**, which derives from their association with numerous monarchs, globally renowned individuals such as Shakespeare, and their association with specific events, civilisations and groups that helped to shape global history such as the Roman Empire, the Vikings and the Normans, whilst the continued links with the Christian church are of considerable value. The poor interpretive provision, lack of intellectual access and the selectivity of the histories told, severely limits their historical value.

The walls are of the **highest communal/cultural value**.⁴⁸ Historically, for defence and amenity purposes, the City Walls had relevance to the communities living near them and their social development. The development and alteration of the circuit demonstrates the walls' role in various conflicts and the symbiotic relationship with the citizens of York – whereby their reliance on the walls for defence was reciprocated by

47 Earl, J. (2003)

48 With advice from: Roskams, S. (2004)

them manning and repairing them. The development of an autonomous, devolved city authority is also embodied within the history of the walls and they demonstrate their role in the control of movement into and out of the city, for example during times of plague, and their role in ceremonial activities. The walls also played their part in the success of Georgian York as a social centre, with their emergent use as an amenity resource, from which time nationally famous cultural figures flocked to York and immortalised the walls in literature and art.

The walls as they are presented to us today are a result of the shifting cultural values attributed to them - and our historic environment as a whole – from fulfilling their defensive and defining role (during the Civil War and Second World War), to something of a liability and stifling to development, to a widely recognised amenity for residents, as a tourist attraction and valued heritage asset. The constantly evolving cultural values of the walls differs between the various groups and individuals that experience them - from the local resident, to the regional or overseas visitor.

Today, the City Walls have continuing relevance and value for local people and play a considerable social and cultural role - being used as a shortcut and a meeting place, for exercise, viewed in transit through the city, physically defining communities such as Bishophill and also marking the difference between those communities within the walls and those outside.

Recently, the community uses of the Fishergate Postern Tower and the Red Tower have enhanced the communal value of the walls, particularly the latter through a community asset transfer. However, more generally, a perceived lack of community support and awareness of the value of the City Walls limits their communal value. As does the lack of physical and intellectual access and the instances of anti-social behaviour.

Education/research potential. The education opportunities afforded by the walls are considerable given their exceptional heritage value and their status as an incomparable global resource. The walls still have the power to relate dramatically the events and achievements of 2000 years of history and past civilisations and they have the potential to inform people in new ways as our understanding evolves. The current accumulation of knowledge about the walls has tended to be built on reactive work and a formal research agenda should be developed, with opportunities for co-operative and comparative research and study exploited.⁴⁹ Furthermore, the lack of accessible interpretive material relating to the walls and the poor orientation and signage in particular areas limits the appreciation and potential of the Wall's educational value, as does the poor physical access and health and safety issues.

The **group value** of the City Walls can be demonstrated in many ways: firstly through its state as an almost complete

49 [Appendix VIII](#) contains a preliminary list of research questions.

circuit of defensive elements – walls, towers, bars and rivers – which as a whole are of the **highest value**. Furthermore, to have a surviving medieval gate is rare, but to have four in good condition as part of an almost complete circuit of associated walls and other features is extremely unique. The variety of features and periods represented in the circuit contributes to this value, and their association with the many other significant sites that characterise York, such as the Minster, the Museum Gardens, Merchant Taylor's Hall and St Mary's Abbey is likely to be of exceptional significance. However, the true value of these other elements in relation to the walls would need further study (currently being undertaken in part) to establish their individual and combined level of significance holistically.⁵⁰ The destruction of any of the bars (currently an issue due to traffic impacts and fire risk), major features or sections of wall would have an extremely detrimental effect on this group value.

The potential for **engineering value**⁵¹ of the walls is considerable; however, little research appears to have been carried out. Studies should be undertaken on, for example: a comparison of the monument with various forms of prevailing historic construction techniques; whether the railway arches represent mainstream mid-19th century railway practice or are more unique; and confirmation on the existence of early experiments in reinforced concrete technology at Robin

50 As part of the forthcoming submission of a UNESCO WHS bid.

51 With advice from Peter Little, City of York Engineer. pers. Comm - PLB, (2004)

Hood Tower. The wall's 'poor' foundations will reveal medieval construction techniques relating to defensive structures and the large bars are likely to offer insights into the history of the structural use of timber and of defensive technology as a whole. In summary, this lack of research and therefore understanding limits this value at present, however the potential for **engineering value is considerable** and work in this field is required to develop the subject.

Whilst the walls are one of the key defining features of York – as a tourist destination and key location for business investment – they mostly provide indirect economic benefits alongside minor revenue from rent and the sale of souvenirs. The lack of opportunities currently exploited in relation to the City Walls limits their economic potential, as do anti-social behaviour and the lack of physical and intellectual access. Despite this, all sections of the walls certainly contribute to the economic value by representing the past prosperity of the city and its expansion (and decline) in various periods and for regulating the collection of taxes on goods. As demonstrated at the cafés at Bootham and Walmgate bars, there is potential for enhancement of the **economic value** of the City Walls, whilst retaining their significance.

The natural environment associated with the walls includes nationally scarce mature elm trees, nationally protected bats and regionally scarce botanical species in addition to providing a locally important green corridor for wildlife, and as

a fundamental element of the urban environment for visitors and local communities. Until recently, the lack of knowledge regarding the value of the ecology on and around the walls, has threatened or limited their potential contribution to the ecology of the city. Further assessment is required to fully appreciate their **environmental value**.⁵²

4.3 Summary

Evidential value: Highest

Engineering value: High

Historical value: Highest

Aesthetic value: Highest

Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: High

Education/Research value: Highest

Environmental value: High

52 PLB, (2004), p47

4.4 Key Elements and Sections

4.5 Section 1: Tower 1 to Bitchdaughter Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

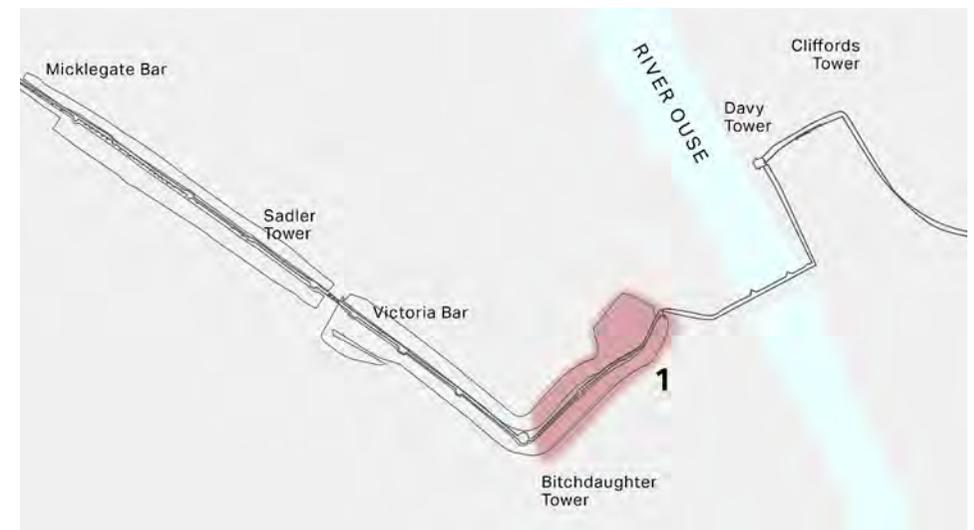
Aesthetically, the area has an attractive Victorian residential character that visually demonstrates the Victorian expansion of York against the setting of Baile Hill, which provides a reminder of the development of York from the Norman Conquest to the present day. Views and vistas from this section across the city to other landmarks provide opportunities for their appreciation.

The **evidential value** of the area has already been demonstrated by the results of several excavations which cover a considerable time period and association with significant events; however, the continuous wear and tear over time is potentially harmful to this value.

In terms of **historic value** through association, the area has links to individuals such as William the Conqueror, institutions such as the Christian church, has also played a significant role in many historical events and served a variety of uses. As discussed above, the **communal value** of the walls and this area are inherently connected to the development of autonomous towns and the conflict between church and state, citizens and governing authorities. These historic relationships present a richness to this area and it has exceptional potential for education/interpretive and research purposes, though to



Section 1 Tower 1 and Baile Hill



date this has not been fully exploited. This value is diminished by the lack of available information regarding these associations and there is an opportunity to enhance this.

This section makes an **exceptional contribution to the group value** of the monument as a whole, as one of the castle sites within a rare example of a 'two castle town'; the range of periods present, both buried and visible; as part of the almost complete wall circuit; and the range of characters and events with which it is related.

It is difficult to assess the **engineering value** without further study, although the range of building periods and features present indicates that this could be considerable.

Although the natural environment of this area is not as diverse and interesting as some other sections of the walls, there are some nationally scarce mature elm trees and the remnants of designed 18th century landscape features.

4.6 Summary

Evidential value: HIGH

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: Highest

Environmental value: High

Economic value: Moderate

4.7 Section 2: Bitchdaughter Tower

The **aesthetic value** of the Tower is derived from its largely Victorian setting and the role the Tower plays in providing a modest punctuation in that townscape. From its platform, it provides open views out into the suburbs and along the straight wall walk and has the potential to be enhanced as a viewing point.

As a part of the monument, Bitchdaughter Tower contributes generally to its **economic and group values** and it has **historic and social value** for its previous use as one of the many watch towers relied on by the citizens to warn of attack or observe hostilities. Through research, there may be potential to contribute to a better understanding of the building of medieval towers along city walls and into the historical naming and development of this tower, whilst there is also some potential for excavation of its internal room. Further research may also provide additional **historic value** regarding its use as the King's gaol by revealing noteworthy 'residents'.

4.8 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate (potential)

Engineering value: Moderate (Potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderated

Group value: Moderate/High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: Moderate (potential)

Environmental value: High

Economic value: Moderate/Low





Section 2 Bitchdaugher Tower

4.9 Section 3: Bitchdaughter Tower to Micklegate Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section's **aesthetic value** comes from the attractive residential areas, for the fleeting views of the walls provided to motorists from the surrounding roads and the distinctive straight sections of wall which represent the former Roman civil boundary. Whilst the Nunnery Lane carpark **deducts** from views to and from the walls.

This section contains some very early towers – including those built for Archbishop Melton - and has potential to enhance our understanding of medieval defensive engineering, this also affords it **evidential value**. Furthermore, the discovery of a previously unknown 'Lounelith' gate at Victoria Bar may demonstrate a potential for better understanding which applies to the walls as a whole. The opening of Victoria Bar for the burgeoning Victorian population by the notorious George Hudson contributes to this section's **historic and communal value**.

The elm trees mentioned previously are also present along parts of this section and the outer rampart, between Victoria Bar, and Micklegate is one of the most botanically interesting sections. The contribution Section 3 makes to the overall **group value is high**, as a long stretch of early wall with a high historic value and an impressive presence.

4.10 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High/Moderate

Aesthetic value: Moderate

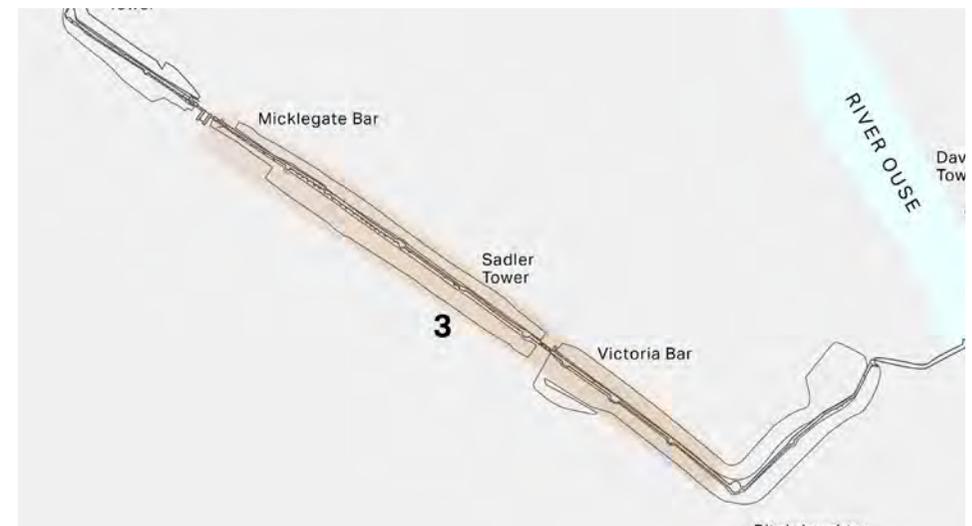
Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: Moderate/High

Environmental value: High

Economic value: Moderate/Low





Section 3 Victoria Bar

4.11 Section 4: Micklegate Bar

It is impossible to deny the distinctive **aesthetic value** of Micklegate Bar - one of York's defining structures whose form is replicated on countless tourist souvenirs. It dramatically frames and terminates views along Blossom Street and Micklegate.

Culturally, the Bar is of **high value**, it is York's most important gateway and was (and sometimes still is) the focus for civic events, such as greeting a monarch and for displaying the severed heads of traitors. Its economic value is well-established – through the historic leasing of its upper the rooms, for the many visitors who are encouraged to visit because of its reputation and for its museum use – it has the contributed to the regeneration of the Micklegate area and will continue to do so.

The use of Micklegate Bar as a museum affords it **education value** and whilst a great amount is known about this bar - as demonstrated within the museum - there are opportunities for increasing access to information and for new research to be undertaken, particularly in relation to engineering. As one of the four great medieval gates at York, the contribution this bar makes to the **group value of the monument is exceptional**. The significance of this structure, and therefore the whole monument, is threatened by further vehicle strikes and the possibility of arson.

4.12 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: High

Education/Research value: High

Environmental value: Low

Economic value: Moderate / High





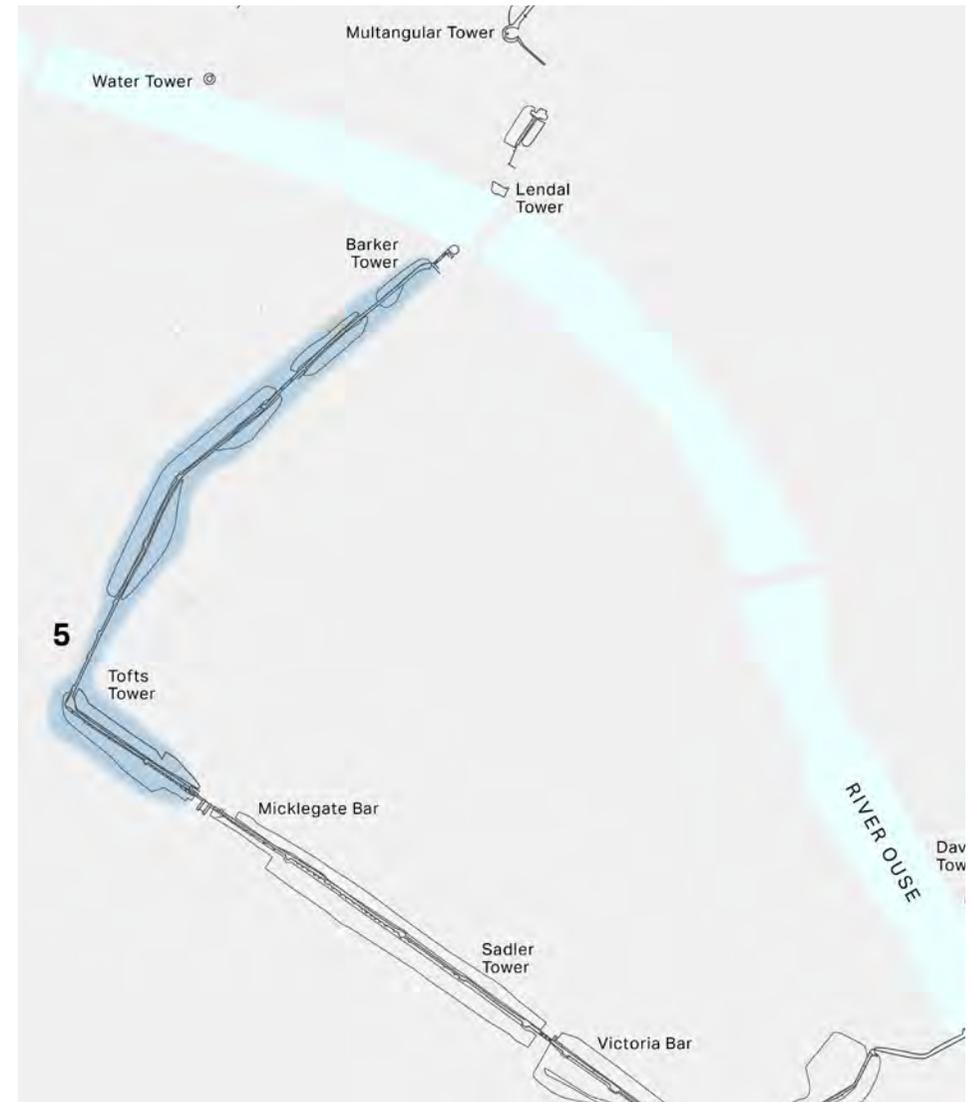
Section 4 Micklegate Bar

4.13 Section 5: Micklegate Bar to Barker Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

The **considerable aesthetic value** of this section is largely derived from the views of this stretch of wall with the Minster as a backdrop – it is one of the most photographed and reproduced views in the country and is recognised worldwide. Enhancing this are views of impressive Victorian and Edwardian buildings such as the North Eastern Railway Headquarters, the station and the War Memorial. However, its setting is quite altered, with inappropriate 20th and 21st century developments dwarfing the walls and visually competing with them in key views – which detracts from their setting.

The railway arches and other Victorian rebuilding provides opportunities for understanding engineering techniques and it is of **high historical value** as part of the wider arrival of the rail system and the significant nationwide social, economic and cultural changes which ensued. Events of the 20th century history are also represented through the presence of the air raid shelters, although there is a lack of interpretation and public access.

This extensive stretch of wall is of **high evidential** and the **highest group value** for the range of periods and features potentially present, including: Roman cemetery; King's Toft; Anglian, Norman, medieval and late-medieval walls; a cholera cemetery; tannery; and the Second World War. The presence of the air-raid shelter along this section is representative of the City



Walls / ramparts being used once more as a defensive feature, which adds to the **evidential, historical** and **communal value** of the walls. The area also has **engineering** value and further research should be carried out, for example on whether the railway arches represent mainstream mid-19th century railway practice or are in fact more unique.

This section is of **high environmental value** for its semi-natural calcareous grassland which supports rare plants and for the outer rampart between Micklegate Bar and Rougier Street, which is one of the most botanically interesting sections along the walls.

4.14 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

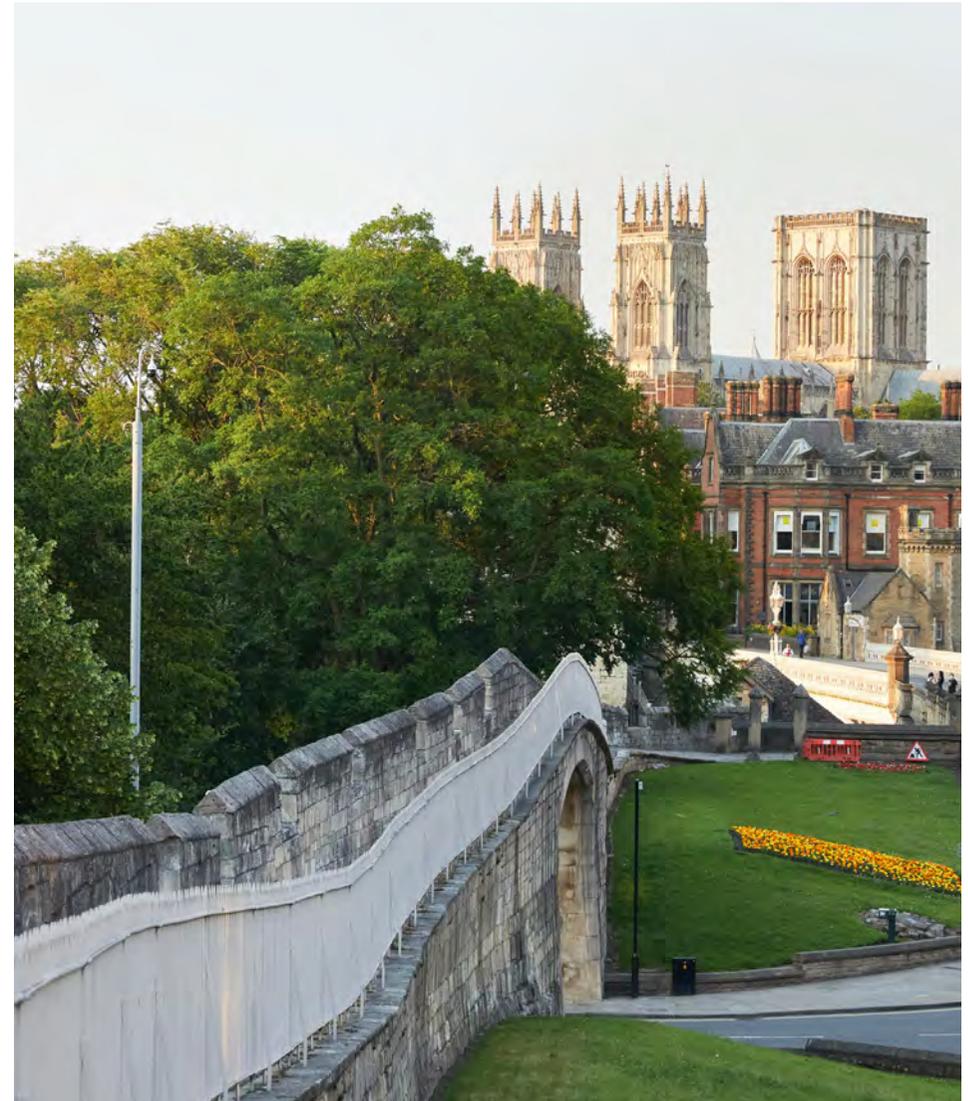
Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: Highest

Environmental value: High

Economic value: Moderate/Low



Section 5 View of Minster

4.15 Section 6: Barker Tower

Barker Tower is of **high aesthetic** and **historic value** as one of the most attractive structures along the City Walls; the conical roof form, the patina of its roof slates and its architecturally interesting interior are of particular note. Its historic evolution is apparent in the range of features and alterations, from gun loops, internal arches, and waterspouts to the reused timber in the roof. It forms a distinctive element of the Bridge's townscape and also of the riverside, having a strong visual relationship with Lendal Tower. In terms of **evidential value**, the historic fabric of the Tower is fascinating, though little understood, and there is also potential for excavation and **research**.

As one of the three surviving 'chain' towers (and the least altered), it contributes **considerably to the group value** of the monument and the Tower's role in controlling the river to protect the city and its use by the ferryman as living accommodation, a mortuary and an artist's studio demonstrate its social, cultural and economic role over time and contributes considerably to its **communal value**.

Constant damp and flooding may in time prove to be intrusive to the overall significance of the structure, although the fabric appears to be surviving comparatively well. Its position on the banks of the Ouse and its propensity for flooding has made suitable as a case study for the Parnassus Project.⁵³ Its

⁵³ 'Parnassus is an interdisciplinary research project investigating the effects of climate change, particularly flooding and wind-driven rain, on cultural heritage, and the protective adaptation needed'

previous use as an artist's studio allowed some degree of public access, which has more recently been expanded through its conversion into a café.

4.16 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High

Historical value: High

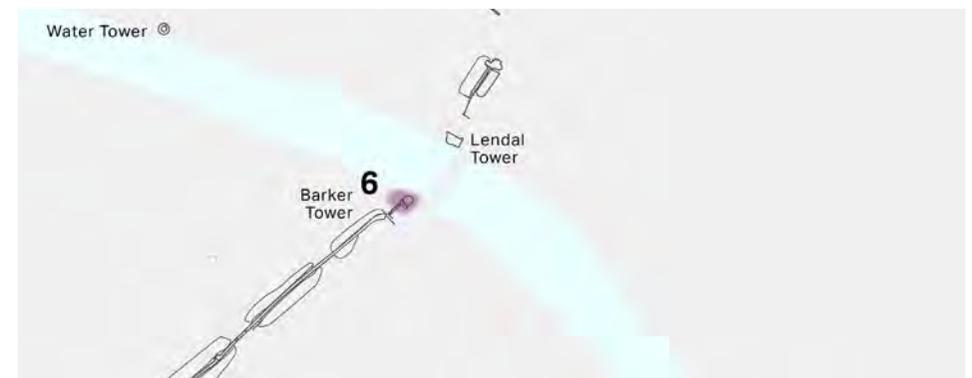
Aesthetic value: High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: High

Economic value: Moderate



University College, London: <https://www.ucl.ac.uk/civil-environmental-geomatic-engineering/research/groups-centres-and-sections/parnassus>



Section 6 Barker Tower

4.17 Section 7: Lendal Tower

Whilst its appearance has changed much more dramatically than that of Barker Tower, it remains of **considerable aesthetic value** and contributes greatly to the character of the city, in particular adding to the townscape of the Bridge and Museum Street – where it defines views of the Minster - and the character of the riverside.

With the same original function as Barker Tower, Lendal's additional use as an early and long-lived waterworks adds considerable **social and communal value** as well as **engineering value** (especially given the different methods of power), as does its position at an important landing place, which remains in use today.

Its construction, using much reused stone and its early and continued alterations make this tower **archaeologically** interesting, while more **research** could be done into the origins of some of the fabric and the Tower's development. Its **historical association** with St Leonard's Hospital, and therefore St Mary's Abbey, are interesting historically and important as part of the history of the city and may have wider links. The associations with York Waterworks and any remaining artefacts in the Tower that relate to the history of this company will also have a **historical value**.



Section 7 Lendal Tower



Lendal Hill House and the engine house/payments hall are closely associated with the Tower through historic use,⁵⁴ which affords the site a **strong group value** and forms part of its historic interest. As one of the most potentially accessible structures along the walls and with interesting links to the history and development of the City, this tower provides potentially high **interpretative and education** opportunities. It is currently in use as a holiday home and the engine house/ payments hall contains a restaurant. Future uses which expand upon this public access, with interpretive/education/community uses could enhance its value further.

Bats have been recorded here, giving the Tower an **environmental value**.

4.18 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: Moderate/High

Environmental value: High

Economic value: High

⁵⁴ These buildings are not part of this study.

4.19 Section 8: Lendal Tower to Bootham Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)⁵⁵

This section has **considerable aesthetic value** for its Roman and later medieval structures and walls and for its setting comprising aesthetically distinct medieval, 19th and 20th century structures and landscapes. The Roman defences strongly influenced the development of York and they are rare nationally on account of their above-ground survival, and decorative architectural character. The area within St Leonard's precinct is quiet and contemplative, despite its very central location, and within the Museum Gardens is a 19th century 'picturesque' or 'romantic' landscape with ruins, where the Roman and medieval walls form an important backdrop.

The **considerable evidential, historical and communal value** of the site is particularly high in the Roman, and late-medieval periods, with the other periods of being of lesser value due to the destruction of archaeological deposits. The most important distinct elements include: the legionary fortress, the Anglian Tower (19), the -City Walls and within the setting, St. Leonard's Hospital, with high potential for further evidence in other unexcavated areas of the site.⁵⁶ St Leonard's Hospital is historically significant for its sheer size, high status and social function in the medieval city and the site's later use for the

55 Simpson & Brown Architects, Addyman Archaeology (2012), pp171-200

56 The rampart between Lendal Hill House and the Museum Gardens entrance could enhance the archaeological value, if, as suspected, it is one of the least disturbed sections of rampart.



Section 8 View of Multangular Tower from Undercroft of St Leonard's



Royal Mint (mid-16th-early-17th century) is also of interest. The Roman and medieval ruins were important in the laying out of the Museum Gardens in the 19th century, which demonstrated the growing appreciation of archaeology in that period. The 20th century Explore York building provided the people of York with two highly valuable assets - its building and the collection.

The site occupies a key position in York on the main tourist route between the railway station and the Minster and marks the beginning of a number of City Wall walking tours. At present, the most significant elements within this section are difficult to find, poorly signposted and the feeling of privacy discourages exploration – the potential for interpretation and education is considerable but at present not realised. The 1970s interpretive banks near the Anglian Tower (19) physically demonstrate the periods of development, although it may need to be revised in light of the 2004 excavations.

4.20 Summary

Evidential value: High/Highest

Engineering value: Highest

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: High/Highest

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: High/Highest (potential)

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: Moderate / High

4.21 Section 9: Bootham Bar

The **aesthetic value** of Bootham Bar is considerable, despite its relative plainness when compared with York's other main medieval bars. It is a crucial part of the character of Exhibition Square and provides a highly distinctive focal point for the views along High Petergate and Bootham. It is a key access point for the walls and many local and tour buses stops here. The signs and clutter of the junction and pedestrian crossings outside the gate detract considerably from this aesthetic value.

The structure contains, despite extensive restoration, some of the earliest medieval stonework on the walls and it has been extensively documented in early photographs. The restoration work itself is of **historical/archaeological/engineering value** as a demonstration of Victorian methods of repairs and conservation philosophy and how this demonstrated a growing appreciation of the historic environment.

The existence of a gateway on this site for over 1,900 years, the evidence of its development and its present state provide valuable insight into the design and use of city gates and their role in the **social, political and cultural** development of towns and cities generally – this affords it **educational value** and **research potential**.

The Bar has **considerable group value**, as one of the four surviving main medieval bars of York and due to its historical



Section 9 Bootham Bar



links with St Mary's Abbey and the Roman fortress. In addition, the Bar's connection with historical figures such as Thomas Mowbray – whose severed head was fixed here in 1405 after he had joined Archbishop Scrope's rebellion against Henry IV - adds to its **historical value**.⁵⁷

Bootham Bar also contributes to the moderate **economic value** of the walls indirectly, however, the interior of it is underused and offers the opportunity to enhance its **educational value**, access key views from its roof and boost its **economic value**. The café and WCs set within the walls have been neatly introduced and have enhanced its economic value and visitor provision.

4.22 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate/High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: High

Education/Research value: High

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: Moderate (potential)

⁵⁷ Mowbray (1385-1405) was Duke of Norfolk, Marshall of England, descended from Edward I through his grandmother and a member of one of the richest families in England.

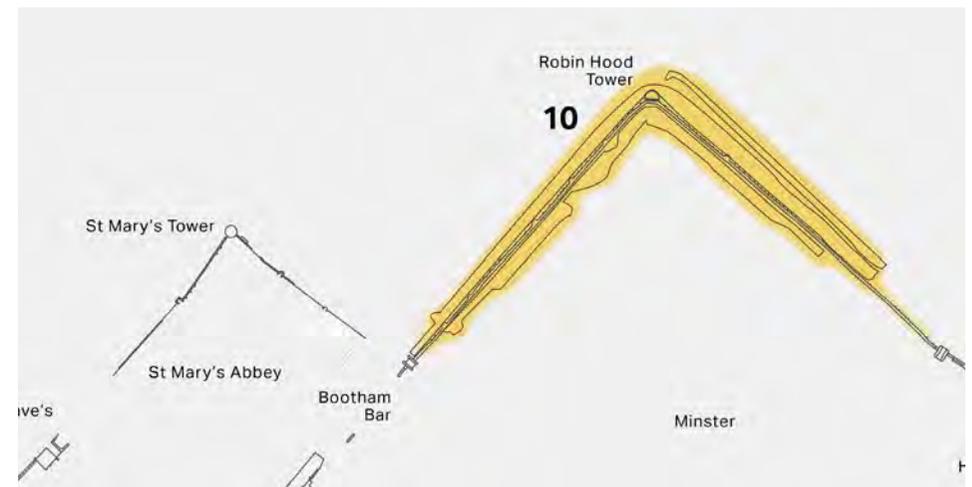
4.23 Section 10: Bootham Bar to Monk Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

The **aesthetic value** of the setting here is **exceptional** and it is one of the most attractive stretches of the City Walls, drawing many tourists and thereby having an indirect economic impact. The Minster Precinct contains an exceptionally high concentration of heritage assets and there is a series of spectacular dynamic views of the Minster and its historic precinct from the wall walk – particularly those from near Robin Hood Tower and the stretch of the walk by the Treasurer’s House – all within a setting of mature gardens, which contributes considerably to the setting of the walls. Some of the trees obscure views of the Minster and could be better managed, whilst some areas adjacent to the ramparts are scrubby in places - which reduces their contribution to the setting. Outside the walls, the tree-lined Lord’ Mayor’s Walk provides an attractive setting, pleasant route and, moreover, the best preserved ditch of any section along the walls. This section is distinct from other sections of the walls given that its upper sections were largely rebuilt by the Victorians – in some cases following their own fanciful ideas of medieval defensive walls and towers; which adds to its **historic value**.

This section has **considerable group value** with the City Walls as a whole, with the Minster and its Precinct and the prestigious houses which line Gillygate and whose gardens front onto the walls.



Section 10 Wall Walk and Tower 25



Being built above or close to the line of the Roman fortress wall, retaining the most clearly defined section of outer ditch, and the existence of an unexcavated ice-house within the ramparts means this section has **considerable archaeological potential** and **interpretive** and **education value**. Robin Hood Tower is thought to provide an example of the early engineering use of reinforced concrete and should be studied. As with Bootham Bar, it demonstrates Victorian approaches to restoration and consequently holds **historical/archaeological/engineering value**.

As all of this section is railed (or walled), it is more suitable for children, those with vertigo, or people unsteady on their feet, however the railings themselves are visually intrusive and detract from views of and along the walls.

This section is potentially important for bats and therefore holds **ecological potential**.

4.24 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate/High

Engineering value: Moderate (Potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Highest

Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: High (potential)

Environmental value: High (potential)

Economic value: Moderate/Low



Section 10 View of Minster

4.25 Section 11: Monk Bar

The **aesthetic value** of Monk Bar is **exceptional** and it is considered to be the most elaborate and ornate of the surviving gates. Technically, it is extremely interesting as its design allowed it to function as a self-contained fortress, with each floor capable of being defended independently.

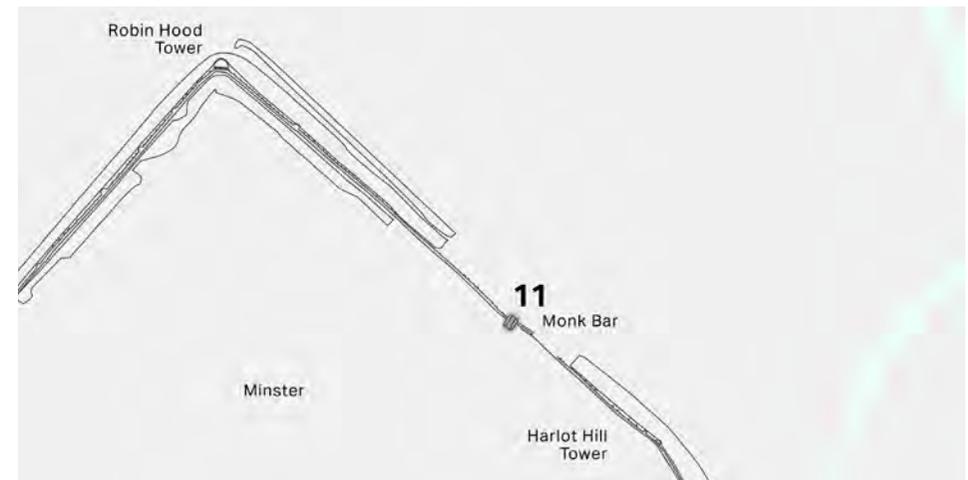
As a structure, it contains a number of archaeologically important features, and as one of the surviving four main medieval gates and an integral part of the group value of the wall circuit, its **value is extremely high**. As with Bootham, Monk Bar enhances its environment by providing a focal point for views along Goodramgate and from Monkgate. Views from its roof (currently private) afford spectacular views over the rooftops of properties on Goodramgate and Ogleforth, towards the Minster and along the straight sections of City Wall.

It is of **high historical value** for its association with the pre-conquest Minster, notable tenants, and the possibility that Richard II built its top storey.⁵⁸ Previous uses by the police, the scouts, as a prison and currently as a museum/small theatre affords the Bar considerable **social and cultural value**, and like Bootham it demonstrates the relationship between city gates and town development which is of **cultural value** and presents **education value** and **research potential**. Furthermore, the control of goods

58 RCHME (1972), pp108-138



Section 11 Monk Bar



and taxes on goods at city gates is of historic economic interest and is demonstrated physically in its blocked doorway under the main arch from which murage tax was collected.

As with Micklegate, the current use as a museum affords it interpretive and **education value** and economically, the lease of the Bar has provided an income for the city authorities for many years. Areas adjacent to the wall are underused and unkempt.

4.26 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: High

Education/Research value: High

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: Moderate (potential)

4.27 Section 12: Monk Bar to Layerthorpe Postern (walls and interval towers etc.)

The **aesthetic value** of this section is drawn from the contribution the walls makes to the character of the area - which contains Roman and later medieval structures and walls and for its setting comprising medieval, 15th, 18th and 20th century development - and vice versa. St Anthony's Garden provides an attractive landscape setting with the arcaded wall walk providing a backdrop, but is tantalisingly difficult to access.

The walls, towers and ramparts are of **considerable evidential** and **historical value**, and the nearby features such as the late-18th century ice-house (Grade II), the Merchant Taylor's Hall (Grade I), the consolidated remains of the Roman fortress wall and corner tower (Grade I), and the variety of periods of habitation they represent contribute considerably to their setting and group value. As a result of their proximity to the walls, the interpretive and education potential of this section is increased. The research and archaeological value has been confirmed by the results of excavations in the area.



Section 12 Roman Structures



The clutter of signage and late-20th and early-21st century developments off Aldwark and near Layerthorpe Bridge detract from the setting of the walls and the removal of Layerthorpe Postern has negatively affected the historical and group value of the entire monument. The railings along the wall walk are modern and detract from the appreciation of the walls from the walk and St Anthony's Garden.

4.28 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate/High

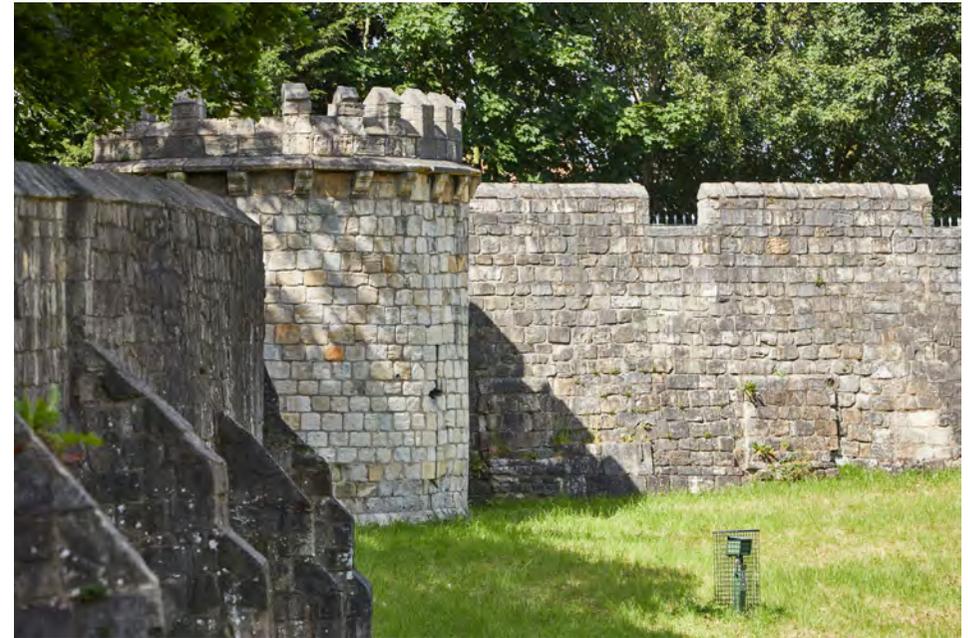
Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: High

Environmental value: Moderate/Low

Economic value: Moderate/Low



Section 12 New Tower

4.29 Section 13: Layerthorpe Postern to the Red Tower (King's Fishpond area)

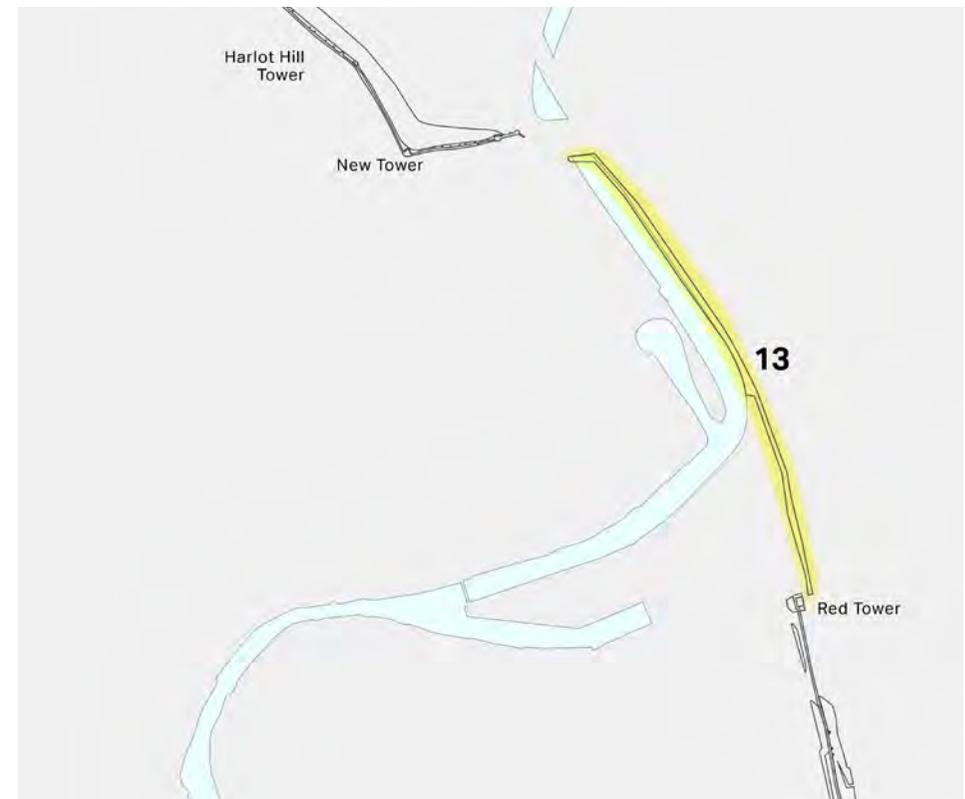
This area is perhaps the least obvious section of the city's defences and the least aesthetically valuable, given the development within its setting and lack of tangible heritage, other than the Foss. However, in terms of **evidential value**, the existence of the Fishpond and the gradual raising of land level with rubbish is likely to provide a rich archaeological resource, providing recent development has not destroyed this.

Current interpretive provision and poor signage mean that many visitors lose interest in this section, which is harmful to its historic value. The interpretive and education potential here regarding the defence system utilised here is relatively high, as many visitors consider this as a 'gap' in the defences. Most of the Foss's setting is made up of large-scale commercial development, which visually dominates the area, detracts from its visual quality and overall significance.

As an additional feature to the vast variety of defensive structures used by the city, it makes a **high contribution to the group value** of the monument and the understanding of the historical development of York. The Fishpond's association with William I, other important archaeological sites in York (such as the mill site by the Castle) and the network of ponds and dams provide **historic value** through association and **engineering value**. The existence of the Rowntree Wharf nearby, a reminder of the family's

long association with York and their philanthropic principles provides some **communal value**.

The poor quality of the light industrial units, the intrusion of the busy road and the unkempt appearance of the river area detract from the character of this section but provide opportunities for enhancement.



4.30 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate/High (potential)

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderated/Low

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: Moderate (potential)

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: Moderate/Low



Section 13 River Foss and Foss Island Road

4.31 Section 14: The Red Tower

The Red Tower is of **high aesthetic value**, which is distinguished by its form and materials, being of red brick rather than the typical limestone. It provides a distinctive and picturesque character to the residential development within the walls, whilst the 20th century commercial development outside the walls detracts.

It is of **moderate to high evidential value**, however, the changes to the ground level around this structure has had implications on its archaeological potential. The lack of understanding regarding the low wall surrounding the western side of the Tower provides opportunities for non-intrusive community archaeology.

The Red Tower's possible use as a brimstone (sulphur) manufactory is of interest and its relationship with York's industrial history and the nearby Rowntree Estate adds to its **historical and communal value**, whilst providing interesting education opportunities. Sulphur has many historical uses but its regular use as an insecticide/fumigator may indicate associations with social issues of the time. Further research could be conducted regarding the slum clearance of this area, the historical use of the Tower and more generally the use of sulphur in Yorkshire. The recent conversion and reuse of the Tower, as part of a community asset transfer, to become a community and interpretive space has contributed substantially to its **communal value**.

4.32 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate/High

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate/High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: High

Education/Research value: Moderate

Environmental value: Moderate/Low

Economic value: Moderate





Section 14 Red Tower



Section 14 Red Tower

4.33 Section 15: The Red Tower to Walmgate Bar (walls and interval towers etc.)

The **aesthetic value** of this section is drawn from its combination of retained medieval fabric alongside Victorian repairs. However, its ramparts are heavily altered and its setting is dominated by commercial development and later 20th and 21st century residential development nearer Walmgate Bar, which visually detracts from the setting of the walls. Where the development cuts into the ramparts, this has harmed the significance of the walls.

The use of foundation arches to resolve the 'watry situation' demonstrates medieval engineering techniques and is of both **aesthetic** and **engineering value**. The Victorian rebuilding demonstrates historical conservation techniques, which as mentioned above, are of **historical** and **cultural value**.

4.34 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate/High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: Moderate

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: Moderate/Low





Section 15 Wall Walk

4.35 Section 16: Walmgate Bar

The values discussed in the previous sections, relating to the importance of the medieval Bars in general, apply equally here. The **aesthetic value** of Walmgate Bar is high - particularly given the survival of its barbican and the jaunty Elizabethan addition on its internal face which has a charming character - and it contributes considerably to the environment in this area of the city.

Walmgate Bar originated in the mid-12th century, potentially earlier, though was substantially rebuilt in the 14th century, in the 17th century following the siege (1644) and again in each of the ensuing centuries. It is of the **highest evidential** and **aesthetic value** due to its rare role as the only medieval gate in the country to retain its barbican (aiding understanding of the other bars), the survival of the inner more delicate Elizabethan façade and fine architectural features, such as the window with loophole, corbels and portcullis. There is also evidence of former attacks on the Bar from potential bullet holes to the sagging of the barbican wall, probably the result of Civil War mining.

The current use by a local community church and coffee shop, its previous use for local celebration of national events (illumination of – the Bar for Edward and Alexandra in 1901 and in again 1911) and its role in the Civil War affords the structure **high communal** and **historical values**.



Section 16 Walmgate Bar



However, the busy arterial road network, drab streetscape and difficult crossing point for pedestrians detract from the Bar's aesthetic value. Furthermore, the frequent damage and resulting repair and replacement of fabric also detracts heavily from its value. The Bar also lacks interpretive links and signage in connection with the city.

4.36 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: High

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: High

Environmental value: Moderate/Low

Economic value: Moderate



Section 16 Walmgate Bar

4.37 Section 17: Walmgate Bar to Fishergate Postern Tower (walls and interval towers etc.)

This section of the City Walls contains Fishergate Bar, which is both aesthetically and historically distinct from the other bars in the circuit and as a plainer and later structure was perhaps never so extensive a structure. Its destruction in the rising of the commons in the north in 1489 and subsequent blocking of its arch are of **considerable historic** and **evidential value** – its pink hue to its stonework is a reminder of the fire damage and its closure is likely a factor of the extensive survival of its historic fabric. Its association with, and potential use as, a prison in the 16th century also contributes to its historical value. It is of **high historical, cultural** and **evidential value** and the Bar contributes considerably to the **group value** of the walls as a whole.⁵⁹

There appear to be many records relating to expenditure on this stretch of wall, one relating to the rebuilding of a stretch funded by the local benefactor Sir William Todd, which afford this section,⁶⁰ adding further **historical** and **cultural value**. The 14th century Tower 39 features a series of successive alterations, including the post-Civil War blocking of two arrow slits, the introduction of the fireplace and the brick depressed arch vaults and is of **high evidential** and **historical value**.

⁵⁹ Enhanced by the survival of a description by a prisoner of conditions in the prison, see RCHME, (1972) pp139-159, (fn. 48)

⁶⁰ Possibly the stretch of wall adjoining Fishergate Bar, where the merlons are pierced with small loops for hand guns. RCHME, (1972) pp139-159



Section 17 Fishergate Bar



The ramparts between Walmgate Bar and Fishergate Bar were cut back externally for the cattle pens of the market held on the site of the ditch between 1867 and 1969, and internally for the backyards of houses, which has reduced the value of the circuit, but the association with the market is of some **historical significance** and also now offers opportunities for a more accessible appreciation of the walls. The outer rampart along Paragon Street is one of the most botanically interesting sections and is of **high environmental value**.

The early-21st century development on the outside of the walls, including the Barbican (which visually competes in scale, material and dominates in its scale) and modern housing developments detracts from the aesthetic value of the walls and their setting.

4.38 Summary

Evidential value: Moderate/High

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate

Education/Research value: Moderate

Environmental value: Moderate

Economic value: /Moderate (potential)

4.39 Section 18: Fishergate Postern Tower

Aesthetically, Fishergate Postern Tower is an impressive and distinctive structure, however its scale and appearance are dominated by late-20th and early-21st century developments which visually compete though their scale, form and materials and this is compounded by the busy arterial road – together these features prevent visitors from fully appreciating the building.

It is of **historical value** as the only surviving gateway for foot traffic of the seven medieval posterns built during the medieval period and would have been furnished with a portcullis (the slot of which is evident); as such it **contributes considerably to the group value** of the City Walls. It has **archaeological interest** for its continued development and adaptation, including the addition of its roof in the early-17th century and the unidentified/unexplained pockets within the walls at first and second floors – which deserve further research. Externally the Tower appears to be in good condition and many interesting historic/archaeological features survive including the watch tower, spiral staircase, garderobe and many blocked up features or scars from removed fabric; all of which would benefit further research and interpretation. However, severe decay of the internal stonework is a concern and could result in loss of significant amount of fabric, features and structural issues.



Section 18 Fishergate Postern Tower



The Tower was tenanted for most of its lifetime and derives further **historical** and **cultural value** for its previous use as a dovecote and more importantly its 'keyholders', who controlled the passage of people into the city.

The provision of public access, new electrical services and a growing exhibition, led by FOYW, has begun to enhance the **interpretation** and **communal value** of this building.

4.40 Section 18 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate/High (potential)

Group value: High

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: Moderate

Environmental value: Low

Economic value: Moderate

4.41 Section 19: Fishergate Postern to Tower 1 (walls and minor towers etc.)

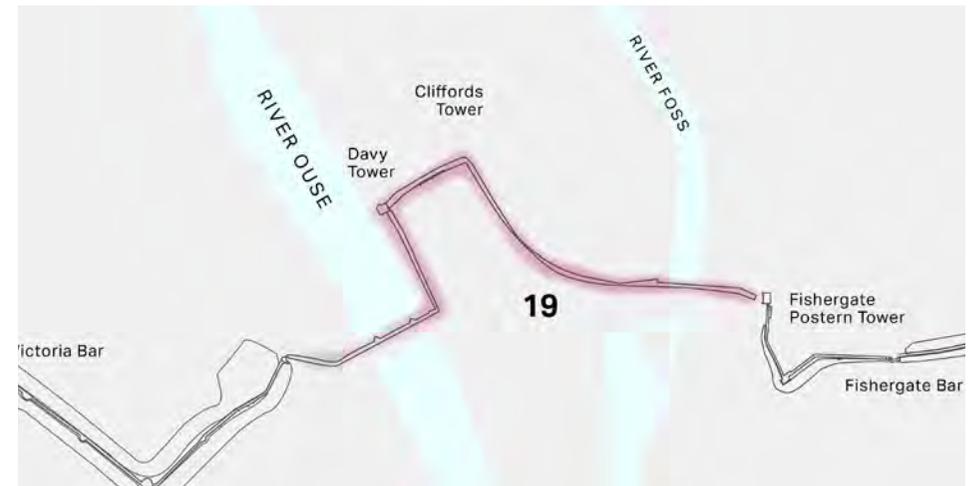
The **aesthetic value** of this section derives from its combination of defence types and from its setting, which contains the two rivers, Friary Walls, Clifford's Tower, York Castle and the Crown Court. Aesthetically the stretch of wall running between Tower Street and Davy Tower is very attractive and provides a characterful backdrop to the terraced houses. Between Fishergate Postern Tower and Tower 1 the modern road network, surface car parking and associated paraphernalia detract from the setting. The wall in this section provides a backdrop to a small public park lining the River Ouse, however its planting conceals much of the wall and the park itself contains paths and surfaces which detract from its setting.

As natural defensive features used to protect the city,⁶¹ the Foss and Ouse make a **high contribution to the group value** of the monument. However, like Section 13, the use of the river as a defence, rather than walls, is not clear to many visitors and offers an opportunity for improved interpretation and understanding. The group value of this section is greatly increased by Clifford's Tower and York Castle and by the presence of the Friary Walls (and historically the Friary) and there is also considerable

⁶¹ The rivers provided natural defensive barriers, which were historically altered and augmented with a series of protective ditches, to protect the city.



Section 19 Davy Tower



potential for interpretive and education provision which is currently not being fulfilled.

This section provides one of the few examples of the original stretches of wall walk, which is of **historical and interpretive value**, and along with Davy Tower offers potentially interesting archaeology and historic associations. Davy Tower is a private residence, with no public access.⁶² This private use, combined with its isolation from the other parts of the walls and lack of interpretation and signage mean that this building is often not considered part of the City Walls, which is harmful to its significance.

4.42 Section 19 Summary

Evidential value: High (potential)

Engineering value: Moderate (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: Moderate

Group value: Moderate

Communal/Cultural value: Moderate/Low

Education/Research value: High (potential)

Environmental value: Moderate/Low

Economic value: Moderate (potential)

⁶² It has also not been possible to gain access to the Tower to inform this study.

4.43 Section 20: St Mary's Abbey and its Precinct Walls⁶³

The St Mary's Abbey Precinct site as a whole is of **national aesthetic, archaeological, historic and cultural value** as a unique survival of an Abbey Precinct within an urban setting. All periods of York's history are represented here and both the structures/features and the Yorkshire Museum's collections are an invaluable heritage resource. The history of the site illustrates a number of themes that indicate a continuity in the utilisation of the site and it has a well-established position as a visitor attraction dating from the medieval period. Its role as a pleasure garden gives it a unique character whereby the display of archaeology, artefact and botany are intricately linked historically and visually and the site is of exceptional value for its unified role as a historic and natural resource.

The Precinct Walls of St Mary's Abbey are also of **national aesthetic, archaeological and historic value** and are considered to be: 'the finest to have survived from any English medieval monastery'.⁶⁴

They are of **exceptional aesthetic and historic value** as they represent the prosperity of the Abbey, as a distinct, powerful and rich community. They followed the same pattern as the City Walls - with strong corner towers, interval watch towers and narrow controlled entry points. In a military sense, the walls

63 Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates (2005), pii

64 Wilson and Burton (1988), p13

remained an important defensive feature up to and including the Civil War, and the examples of its protective shutters reproduced on the Marygate Wall and the damage to St Mary's Tower are strong reminders of this. They have historically protected the site and are still highly significant in terms of the townscape and 'image' of York, in defining the Abbey Precinct as a separate 'quarter' of the city and offering a strong, enclosing identity and character to the Abbey Precinct. Given the close proximity of the Abbey Precinct site to the fortress and its occupancy of part of the site of the fortified annex there is a strong likelihood of hitherto undiscovered Roman remains and associated artefacts to be found below ground. Further research should be carried out into their role not only in defending the Abbey from the citizens but in their role in the wider defence of York.



Whilst a reasonable amount is known about the walls, this is not necessarily demonstrated well across the site and there are opportunities for increasing access to information and for new research to be undertaken, particularly in relation to their role in supporting the wider city defences and engineering.

The location of service yards against the Precinct Walls, whilst perhaps historically typical, means that some key features are hidden from public views, such as the section of walkway in the service yard. Further interpretation of the defensive structures along the Precinct Walls could be provided, particularly where they demonstrate rare features or historic events.

4.44 Section 20 Summary

Evidential value: High

Engineering value: Moderate/High (potential)

Historical value: High

Aesthetic value: High

Group value: Highest

Communal/Cultural value: Highest

Education/Research value: Highest (potential)

Environmental value: High

Economic value: Moderate/High



Section 20 St Mary's Tower



Section 20 Multangular Tower from Museum Gardens



Section 20 Water Tower



5.0 Risks

5.1 Introduction

The CYC’s challenge is to maintain and manage the monuments so that they meet public expectations as a historic tourist attraction and piece of civil infrastructure and complies with current legislation within a constrained budget, whilst protecting its exceptional significance. Historic England’s *Conservation Principles, Policies and Guidance* sets out six high-level principles to guide the management of heritage assets:

- the historic environment is a shared resource;
- everyone should be able to participate in sustaining the historic environment;
- understanding the significance of places is vital;
- significant places should be managed to sustain their values;
- decisions about change must be reasonable, transparent and consistent;
- documenting and learning from decisions is essential.

The purpose of the CMP is to provide a framework to manage the heritage of the place, both for regular maintenance and repair and for when decisions about change have to be made. The earlier sections of this document have explained the historic evolution of York City Walls and St Mary’s Abbey Precinct Walls, set out their heritage values, and assessed what has significance and why.

This section sets out present-day issues and risks, alongside those that may arise in the future – these have informed the Management Plan, upon which the site’s future management will be based.

5.2 Current Ownership, Use and Management

While there are no title deeds for the City Walls, CYC has acquired ownership, almost by default. Historically various parts were owned and managed by a number of bodies in the city, predominantly the Church, the State and the Corporation of York. in Appendix XII.

The responsibility and management of the City Walls is devolved and divided, but for the purposes of this report the shared management responsibilities at CYC can broadly be considered as follows:



Supported by 4.4 FTE stonemasons, several part-time walls attendants and a member of the city centre team delivering frontline services. Professional support is also provided by the Central Property, Communication and Finance teams (plus HR, ICT etc.).

Between c.2012 and 2020, the public access route of the walls was inspected for safety by a highways inspector, whilst stonemasons have been responsible for ad-hoc programmes of structural monitoring. Structural inspections have largely been undertaken reactively or in advance of larger projects. These larger programmes of work have been put out to tender to external companies, such as engineers WSP, who were appointed between 2015-2020 to undertake inspections relating to planned capital works and emergency inspections. In 2020, this changed to a risk-based system of structural inspection, following the appointment of Mason Clark Associates (MCA). The Council Parks Department has responsibility for the management of the ramparts.

In addition, the walls and bars and surrounding land are operated by a variety of groups including:

- The Yorkshire Museum Trust (YMT) - Museum Gardens, including St Mary's Gatehouse and Tower and York Art Gallery
- York City Sightseeing - Postern Tower
- York Explore Library and Archive – St Leonard's/Mint Yard
- YORVIK/YAT – Museums at Monk Bar and Micklegate Bar

- Friends of York Walls – Fishergate Postern Tower
- The Red Tower (Red Tower Community Interest Company) – Red Tower (community asset transfer)

In order to progress from establishing why aspects of the site are significant to formulating principles to retain or enhance their significance and value, it is first necessary to identify the threats and vulnerabilities that affect the site. The following vulnerabilities have been identified as those which present the greatest threat at present and for the future; these in turn have informed the development of objectives, principles and recommendations.

5.3 Risks

5.3.1 Conservation of the Fabric, Maintenance, Repair and Enhancement

Natural erosion. All historic sites suffer from natural erosion caused by the weather, vegetation, and animals. Many of these factors can be solved through management and maintenance or physical protection of the site but some erosion is inevitable. Where natural stone is open to the elements it has a tendency to decay.

Loss of resource/natural erosion. Continuing erosion from development leading to loss of resource poses a threat to the survival of some of the buildings and structures, as well as the few fixtures and fittings left relating to the function of the walls

and structures (e.g. portcullis' and their mechanisms). They are of considerable importance in demonstrating the function and historical development of the site to visitors. Although managed, benign neglect may at times be desirable, this needs to be managed in order to prevent structures from becoming hazardous, unstable or structurally unsound.

Inadvertent damage. This study has shown that particular elements or sections of the walls, such as the Jewbury area, and much of the development of the complex structure of the City Walls as a whole is not yet fully understood. A preliminary list of research questions, demonstrating gaps in knowledge, can be found in [Appendix VIII](#). There is a danger that significant features may be inadvertently damaged through inappropriate maintenance or management strategies. In addition, the damage caused by traffic through the bars and the piecemeal removal of earth from the ramparts will have serious impacts on the significance of the monuments. Wear and tear of public access along the ramparts has been well managed, but has inevitable associated risks such as graffiti, increased erosion of stone, and alteration required to meet regulations and the expectations of visitors.

Cumulative loss of building fabric and architectural detail. Historic sites and structures frequently suffer damage caused by the incremental loss of small elements. This can be as destructive as demolishing an entire building, as the historic

merit of a building that still stands but has lost all evidence of its former use is severely reduced. This is particularly important for monuments such as this where the whole is made up from a vast number of elements and its significance is greatly increased by the survival of these as a group. This could affect the group value of the site, which is vital to the wall's overall significance.

Particular concern has arisen following structural interventions and water proofing which has removed historic fabric and expresses the unsympathetic modern interventions (the towers in **Section 3** represent this issue). Cumulative loss may also result from destruction through intrusive archaeological investigation. Another area of particular relevance for the monuments is the cumulative loss of material from the ramparts and fabric loss caused by vehicular impact damage at the bars or from structural movement causing significant cracks through historic details (such as at New Tower).

Insensitive repair and alteration.⁶⁵ All historic buildings and structures are prone to insensitive repair, particularly with regard to inappropriate repointing, paint and mortar mixes. It is also common for roofs to be repaired or replaced with inappropriate or non-traditional materials. This issue is particularly important where the conservation principles relating to the historic fabric are poorly disseminated and a wide range of parties are involved, especially with larger projects. Alterations such as

⁶⁵ Brereton, C. (1995)

the insertion of services or inappropriate additions will alter the value of the asset as well as possibly destroying or concealing archaeological and historical evidence. They could affect the aesthetic significance of the site through loss of character and thus all proposed alterations should be considered in the light of the impact upon the building/structure and character of the area, while all repair work must respect the historic integrity of the fabric. Alterations are usually necessary when a building changes use, particularly when adapting to enable access for all. Special consideration should be taken to ensure that the installation of essential visitor services (such as access, services and toilets) respects the historic character of the site and does not diminish its significance. Maintenance must be a priority before further intervention.

Variances in Conservation Philosophy/Approaches to

Repair. As best practice in techniques and use of materials has evolved, this has led to a difference in repair techniques and materials used across the walls, providing a both a visual difference and variances in their efficacy, some with harmful effects (e.g. use of cementitious mortar).

5.3.2 Development and Setting

Inappropriate reuse. In many cases adaptive reuse of historic buildings or sites is preferable to no use at all and subsequent dereliction and loss. However, it should be recognised that many uses will likely require alteration, including the installation

of services and be subject to building regulations. As part of the development of any proposals, the contents of this study should be taken into account to ensure that the significance and sensitivity of affected areas has been clearly understood and weighed in the balance when considering which options to progress. The aim should be to achieve a sustainable use whilst retaining the building's historical integrity, authenticity and setting.

Inappropriate development, reconstruction or restoration.

The complex nature of the monuments and the many changes and alterations that have taken place historically are such that unless care is taken it may become difficult for the public to differentiate between restored and 'original' fabric and so retain the authenticity of the experience. Many past alterations, such as those by the Victorians, are now of high **historic value** in their own right and could be vulnerable to inappropriate development. While development and enhancement of the monuments is also desirable, this must be appropriate and guided by a thorough understanding of significance and the principles and recommendations of this Plan.

Context and setting. The size and physical nature of the monuments dictates that they are often viewed from a distance and that views out from the monuments are integral to its historical purpose and current significance. In some instances the clutter of street signage and furniture, bulky and ineffective light fittings, unmanaged trees and planting, inappropriately

sited modern amenities and the low quality design of some of the more recent development has adversely affected the setting of the monuments [see Plate 5.1].

Future development within the setting of the walls has the potential to affect the significance of the site through direct damage to the structures or archaeology, or harm to the significance by affecting setting and/or views. The size, massing, orientation and location and materials all need to be carefully considered alongside key views to and from the walls and routes and connections to and through the walls.

Whilst 'sense of place' is an abstract concept, it is an extremely important one to consider for monuments such as this – their long history as a defining feature of York and as part of its fundamental character, should not be so obvious as to be overlooked. The visual attractiveness of the walls and the historic townscape within which they sit are fundamental to their significance.

The following is a list of the major developments known at the time of writing, which have the potential to affect the significance of the walls (largely in terms of setting and views). **Plate 5.2** shows these developments on a map.

- York Central
- Station Frontage
- Hungate (almost complete)
- Castle Precinct

- Minster Precinct (proposals include extensions to buildings and the creation of a sensory garden in the setting as well as ramped access onto the City Walls)
- Flood Defences
- St George's Multi-storey carpark
- Northern House, Rougier Street
- St George's Field (feasibility stage)
- Museum (feasibility stage)

5.3.3 Landscape and Environment

Lack of awareness of ecological importance. The significance of the natural environment relating to the walls is considerable but many visitors may not be aware of this. This is an opportunity for interpretive provision and nature trails. Lack of awareness amongst the many different groups involved with management and development and differing priorities may lead to removal of important elements or inadvertent disturbance. Whilst this has been addressed through the creation of the Bar Walls Manager, who provides strategic oversight of the maintenance, this remains a potential risk.

Visitor erosion. Large numbers of visitors accessing any form of archaeological remains or area of ecological significance will cause some level of erosion. This will be particularly pronounced for earthworks in the wetter shoulder months (March/April and September/October) or when large numbers of people are

Key

- Positive
- Modest
- Neutral
- Negative
- Detractive Railing
- S Street furniture



5.1 Contributions to immediate setting map

involved, such as at events. Erosion can occur as visitors create and follow desire lines, sit or climb on historic fabric and create hollows at interpretation panels, features and structures.

Inappropriate development. Although reuse and development is not incompatible with the significance of the site, inappropriate development in the setting has the potential to damage its significance and therefore reduce its value. In terms of ecological value, this includes the ramparts, trees and gardens within the setting of the walls which include the Registered Museum Gardens (Grade II) and the walls themselves as ecological habitats. Therefore, both Historic England and Natural England should be consulted prior to development as detailed in the Management section of this CMP.

Inappropriate landscaping or habitat recreation. The context and setting of the site varies considerably throughout the length of the monuments. It is important that the current character of the monuments and their setting is carefully assessed both ecologically and functionally and that a formal 'municipal' appearance does not become uniform around the walls. Areas designated for habitat improvement should be carefully assessed, as the type of ecology that is significant at this site is not always immediately obvious.⁶⁶ Historic precedent (e.g. the use of ramparts by local communities for grazing and other purposes)

⁶⁶ Any proposals should be developed in line with CYC's Pollinator Strategy (2020-25) and CYC's Policies on biodiversity

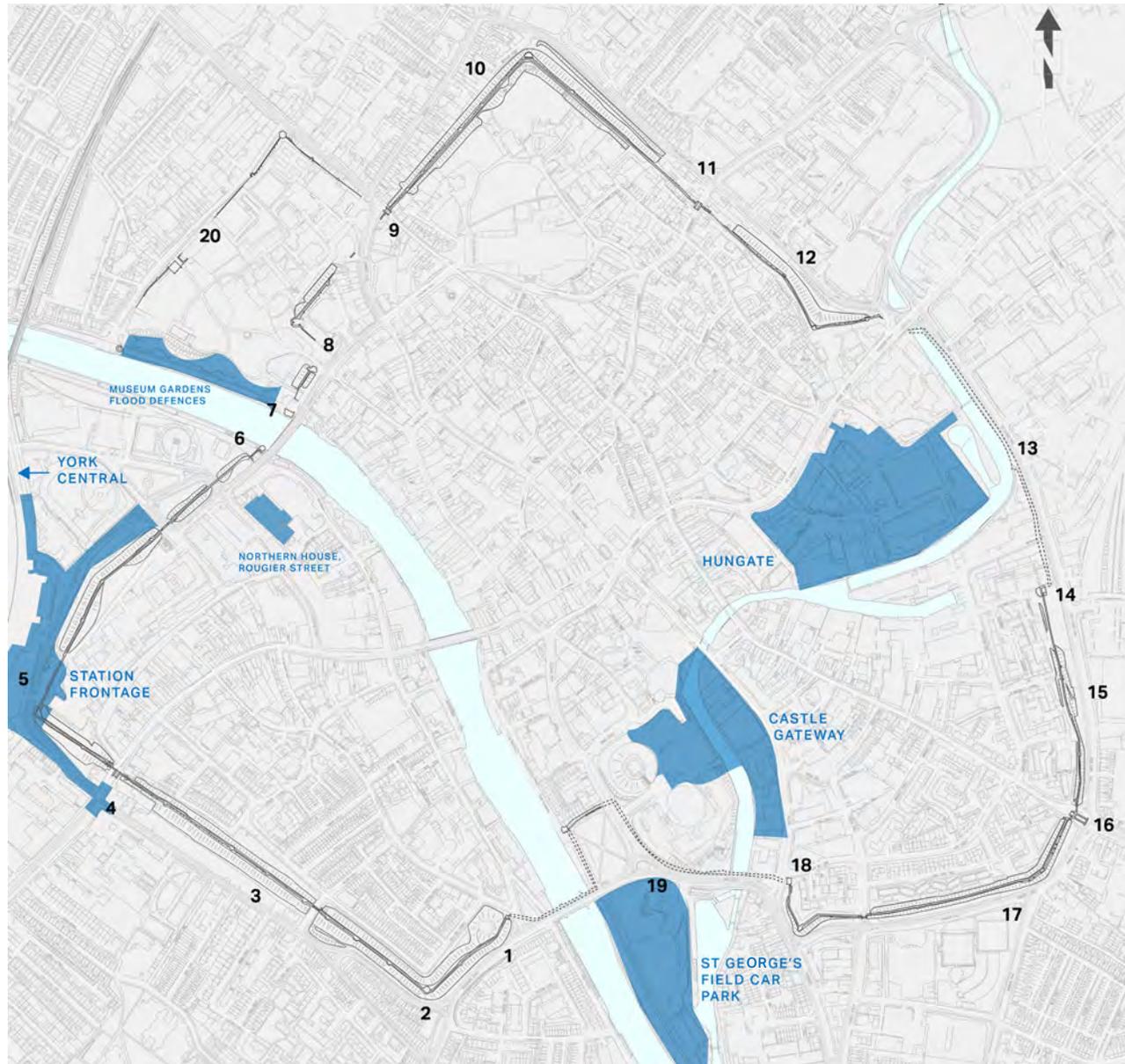
can be used to inspire opportunities for enhancing the diversity of the ramparts but equally lessons should be learnt from history (e.g. cutting back of ramparts for cattle pens) to avoid cumulative destruction of the resource. Whilst it may be appropriate to treat sections differently, any proposals need to be evidence based - on ecological and functional assessments of the area.

5.3.4 Archaeology

Loss of earlier deposits. The development and alteration of the monuments throughout their history has removed many of the contexts relating to the early workings of the site. Further work must be guided, preceded, and accompanied by professional archaeological evaluation, assessment and investigation, with widely published results. This is also a concern when considering the cumulative loss of material from the ramparts.

Inappropriate archaeological investigation. Excavation is an unrepeatable exercise. Well-intentioned archaeological excavations can cause irreversible damage to a site if it is not undertaken in the appropriate manner and following national and regional research agendas and guidelines. This applies to both sub-surface remains and standing structures.

Archaeological research programme. The current accumulation of knowledge about the walls has tended to be built on reactive work, resulting from various interventions in and around the walls. It is desirable that a programme of research



5.2 Map showing relevant major developments in central York (note York Central is to the NW of Section 5)

be developed in order to focus resources of time and finances to areas which have particular relevance or significance. A preliminary assessment of the priority research topics will be required (this has begun to take place). The National and International context of the City Walls should be recognised, with the opportunities for co-operative and comparative research and study exploited.

5.3.5 Access and Interpretation

Physical access. Provision for people with impaired mobility, with pushchairs, or sensory impairment is inadequate for most of the wall walk and bars. The nature of the structures means that full access in the future is unlikely to be possible. This is likely to affect the future development of the site as a heritage attraction and may result in some loss of business or limitations on income. The Equality Act (2010) requires service providers and employers to take reasonable steps to avoid a disabled person being disadvantaged, where a physical feature in a building or at the approach or exit puts a disabled person at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled. There are many elements of the City Walls that would be very difficult to make accessible, but reasonable attempts should be made regarding providing access for all or appropriate alternative access. This must also be considered within all future plans for development and interpretation.

Intellectual access⁶⁷ (also covered by the Equality Act, 2010). The nature of the walls, often seen as a tourist attraction alone rather than an amenity for residents, limits its accessibility and has the potential to act as a barrier to its use and sense of ownership. The support of the local community is vital for protecting and ensuring the future of the walls.

Intellectual access and interaction is at present limited in some areas, particularly the long stretches of wall without key features or areas without wall – such as **Sections 13 and 19.**

A Quality Experience. At present, the walls are not contributing fully to the overall York experience and the group value of the historic attractions and monuments in the city. The management groups involved must be careful to preserve the authenticity of the experience and to further promote its unique qualities, to become a destination of global reputation, distinctive yet complementary to the other attractions of York. Since the last CMP, a good deal of work has been carried out to provide an improved visitor experience and current plans to promote York as a tourist destination are underway as part of the 'Make It York' initiative, in partnership with CYC.⁶⁸ The walls are vulnerable to over commercialisation and branding and so a fine line must be

⁶⁷ Intellectual access is about providing the information people want regardless of any prior knowledge, educational attainment, physical or sensory impairment, mental health needs, learning difficulties and allowing people to learn at their own pace and set their own agenda.

⁶⁸ Make It York seeks to drive forward the city's new Cultural Strategy, which has ambitions for York to reach the top five in the UK league table for cultural engagement.

trodden to ensure that the development of this strategy is not detrimental to their visual appearance and the experience.

Visitor Facilities. The benches and litterbins provided along the walls are largely 'standard issue', in poor condition and detract from the setting of the walls. Public toilet provision is also limited and should be reviewed for key locations such as Museum Gardens and potentially improved facilities adjacent to Monk Bar. The playground adjacent to **Section 3** could be improved to provide playful interpretation and visually improve the setting of the walls.

Interpretation. Some level of interpretation is necessary and desirable at any site that attracts visitors. This is particularly true of complicated archaeological remains where function and use can be difficult to understand. The level and quality of interpretation available for York City Walls has been upgraded since the last CMP and is reasonably good for a site of this significance and potential interest. However, steps should be taken to make it more accessible and a regular review of information should be carried out to ensure the information is accurate, not duplicated and the graphics are up to date and align with the wider signage strategies for York.

Interpretation has many benefits in terms of visitor/site management, increasing access, developing new audiences, encouraging 'pride of place' and so on. However, it should also be acknowledged that interpretation does not mean 'information

board', and excessive or overly intrusive physical installations could detract from the character and harm the aesthetic value of the monuments.

Areas which would benefit particular improvement include **Section 8**, which contains a key interpretive physical display from the 1970s – which is poorly explained. This could be enhanced by improving access to the adjacent rampart to enable a view down onto the area, alongside interpretive information. Baile Hill and Bitchdaughter Tower would similarly benefit from signage, information and/or potentially interpretive artwork. St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls are similarly under-explained within the Museum Gardens and would benefit from information and interpretation regarding their defensive role for the Abbey (from the citizens of York) and the city as a whole. The confusing signage and gates at Bootham Bar discourage visitors. **Section 13** is probably the weakest in terms of attractiveness and interpretation and, whilst there is information provided regarding the role of the Foss, it would benefit from a different approach to enhance understanding.⁶⁹ Other areas across the walls would benefit from minor interpretation and additional information, with individual recommendations set out in the Gazetteer.

Physical Access and Health & Safety. The significance of the site is currently compromised due to the difficulties of physical

⁶⁹ With the input of the River Foss Society.

access to the site. This will also affect its ability to attract sufficient numbers of visitors to ensure the long-term future of the monuments. Health and safety along the walls is a constant issue, with tripping or falling from height and conflict between traffic and pedestrians at key crossing/access points around the walls. Today's compensation culture means that these issues cannot be ignored or people simply warned through signage.

5.3.6 Management

Lack of resources for maintenance and repair/economic constraints. The resources, financial and physical, needed to ensure regular maintenance and repair can be considerable. While a great amount of maintenance and repair is regularly undertaken, lack of adequate resources, dissemination of good conservation practice, time commitment and the lack of co-ordination, may result in the site becoming neglected in the future or inappropriate actions being taken. In addition, interpretation and signage has previously tended to be implemented without any follow-up recording, monitoring or explanation – for example, the explanation of the location of the brass studs along the wall walk is 'missing'. Succession planning is required to ensure historic building skills are maintained within CYC.

Loss of knowledge. This can be caused by the high turnover of CYC personnel or multiple contractors, which can lead to loss of in-house knowledge, records and variance in the quality of work/ approach to work carried across the walls.

Lack of recording. Work carried out previously has not always followed a consistent programme of recording and this is vital to enable those managing the walls to learn from previous decisions. This recording must be carried out by means of detailed photogrammetry, drawing, photographs, samples and descriptions of works to a set format and stored in a single, accessible depository. It is important that any structures not yet recorded are fully recorded as soon as possible and certainly before any alteration, and that the development within any areas of archaeological importance follow recommendations for investigations as detailed in Chartered Institute for Archaeologists (CIFA) and HE guidance and in the forthcoming Management section.

Statutory and Non-statutory protection. There is a wide range of statutory and non-statutory protection for the site, which is confusing in certain areas and despite the extensive review of the designations, the HE description of scheduled monument number **1004910** for the City Walls does not exist. This lack of information about the monument could be harmful to its significance, through inappropriate development and limiting understanding.

York City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls have a Generic Scheduled Monument Consent in place, in agreement with Historic England. This relates to minor works on the walls which fall below the size and scope of work undertaken on

restoration projects for which individual SMC applications are made. This is an outdated mechanism and a Heritage Partnership Agreement may prove a more effective tool for the future management of the walls.

CYC's *Local Plan* is currently out for consultation, the *Development Control Local Plan* produced in 2005 remains the extant adopted development control policy document.

Vision for the Future. The sheer number and mixture of bodies involved with the management, protection and development of the site has meant the development of a number of different visions for the future of the walls. Roles and responsibilities are perhaps not fully defined and understood. Decision making is drawn out and complicated. There is therefore a need to invest resources into strategic planning and co-ordination, understanding and policy making, with periodic review and revision.

Devolved and divided management at CYC. The responsibility and management of the walls is divided, which could lead to uninformed decisions and delays to repair works. The York Walls Liaison Group has sought to rectify the issue of multiple stakeholders and at CYC, a Bar Walls Manager has been appointed.

In addition, the walls, bars and surrounding land are operated by a variety of groups, which could lead to different approaches to ad-hoc repair and the introduction of inappropriate alterations such as services etc. as well as harmful development within their setting.

Raising awareness and creating 'pride of place'. To some residents, the walls are a valued heritage asset and piece of civic infrastructure for meeting, walking and events, however their potential to contribute to 'sense of place', identity, mental health and well-being is not fully realised – which puts their value and future at risk.⁷⁰

Anti-social behaviour. The site currently suffers from a variety of antisocial behaviour, which has resulted in health and safety issues, potential fire risks and damage to buildings and fixtures, and impacts on both residents and visitors. A range of mitigation strategies need to be considered during and following any development process, perhaps with a combination of physical measures and community initiatives.

5.3.7 Understanding and Research

Lack of understanding. It has been noted earlier in this study that the complex nature of the monuments and their development are still not fully understood. The relationships between phases of development, in particular, are often debated and in doubt. This may lead to uninformed decisions regarding the conservation, alteration and reuse of structures. The lack of a research agenda or knowledge regarding the value of the monuments in engineering terms may also lead to the unwitting destruction of valuable evidence.

⁷⁰ PLB Consulting (2004). Presumably an assertion based on the observation of activities including anti-social behaviour.

Lack of resources. There is considerable research potential relating to the monuments and to individual features. The lack of resources available to undertake this could undermine its evidential value as collections may decay or become dispersed over time and alterations to the fabric take place destroying former evidence. Piecemeal research is being undertaken but a co-ordinated and prioritised approach to an agreed research agenda would be more appropriate and effective.

Backlog publication. The significant programme of archaeological excavations and investigations have been carried out by YAT. While a large number of excavations and other research work have been undertaken in recent years the vast majority of this has yet to be fully published and has only been made available as brief summaries in 'Interim'.⁷¹ This restricts access to detailed information about recent work on the walls and the impact of new findings. Archaeological investigation which remains unpublished is of very limited value as it does not have peer review and it can be largely inaccessible, thus hindering developing understanding.

Lack of co-ordinated dimensioned survey drawings. This reduces the efficacy of planned repair and capital works and leads to piecemeal surveys being commissioned. CYC hold an incomplete set of photogrammetric surveys, which have

71 Bulletin of the York Archaeological Trust: Archaeology in York

been compiled in response to development proposals and interventions to the wall.

Cataloguing/inventory. Access to the many collections relating to the City Walls and the usefulness of the resource are both seriously affected by the lack of a comprehensive catalogue or inventory. While the book by YAT goes some way to rectify this it only covers the pictorial resources.⁷² Without a comprehensive knowledge of the extent and condition of the resource, appropriate policies and recommendations for its protection, storage and further research will be difficult to collate.

Loss of skilled craftspeople. There is a lack of succession when it comes to skilled jobs such as stonemasonry. Without this role, the walls are likely to suffer neglect and their long-term conservation put at risk and therefore the support for training programmes and courses is required to ensure historic building skills are maintained within the local community.

72 Wilson, B and Mee, F (2005)



6.0 Opportunities

6.1 Opportunities

6.1.1 Conservation of the Fabric, Maintenance, Repair and Enhancement

Establish a conservation philosophy/approaches to the repair and new work. This should be based on a thorough analysis of the development of the walls and full understanding of its significance. The causes and sources of decay mechanisms and the rate of decay varies across the walls. The approach to repair in each instance will need to be considered in its specific context, rather than using generic approaches or solutions. However, the significance and priorities for the walls as a whole should be used to develop a framework from which individual solutions can be implemented. It should be noted that an apparently minor intervention has the potential to impact the significance of the walls as a whole.

Improve the maintenance regime. The maintenance regime should be reviewed with CYC's Maintenance Team, Landscape Team, Stonemasons, Stakeholders, Monitoring Structural Engineers, Structural Engineer, Archaeologist, Highways Department and Architects. From this a three-year Maintenance and Management Schedule should be produced, covering all maintenance and management tasks in one document and with each task clearly assigned to an individual.

This document will allow the annual maintenance for the entire walls to be included in its financial projections and business plans to ensure that the walls can be maintained in perpetuity. The schedule should be reviewed every three years with lessons learnt from the past three years incorporated into the document so that it can be constantly improved upon.

Removal of detracting elements. Elements which visually compete with the walls, such as the modern handrails, street furniture, cooking extract fans and other alterations that negatively impact the experience or accelerate decay mechanisms should be reviewed and removed to improve the visitor experience, appearance and interpretation of the walls.

The decoration of the armorials on the bars and potentially the metalwork across the walls should be reviewed; historic paint analysis should be undertaken to inform any new decoration or colour schemes.

6.1.2 Development and Setting

Improvements to setting. This could be achieved through the sensitive redevelopment of buildings or sites which currently detract. Future development should avoid competing with walls and should not interrupt key views. Moving or re-landscaping surface carparks adjacent to the walls should also be considered (**Sections 3, 5, 8 and 12**), and moving or redesigning service areas adjacent to the walls and Bars (**Sections 4 and 20**). A review of street furniture adjacent to all of the bars and the Postern Tower should be carried out in order to reduce visual clutter.

The proposals for the Minster Precinct include a Sensory Garden, which could provide improvements to setting of the walls and interpretation, as well as the potential for a ramped access to the wall walk.

Artwork should be introduced to improve the appearance of Foss Island Road; this could be a community or University-linked project.

Enhancing/capturing views. This could be achieved in a number of ways and is also aligned with access improvements/ street furniture improvements/tree maintenance and interpretation. This could be achieved through the provision of benches and interpretation at key views or potentially enlarging the wall walk at particular pinch-points to enable 'pausing'

points from which to appreciate key views (**Sections 3 and 5**); and the potential make the roofs to Micklegate, Bootham and Monk Bars publicly accessible, with accompanying interpretation [**see Plate 6.1**].

The protection of important views and vistas should also be developed, based on those shown in the adjacent map and could form part of a views framework to align with those set out in York's Central Historic Core Conservation Area.

Tree maintenance. This should be carried out to better reveal the walls and bars and enhance key views. **Sections 1, 7, 10, 19 and 20** in particular should be reviewed, but also along the stretches of the walls which are largely obscured by street trees. As many trees within the conservation area are protected by tree preservation orders (TPOs), a thorough review and strategy for this would need to be developed. Those within Museum Gardens may be subject to more stringent control given their location with a Registered Park and Garden (Grade II).

Economic Opportunities. Introducing temporary or meanwhile uses which encourage and enhance understanding of the walls, reinforce their role for the local community and visitors and bring in much-needed revenue should be promoted. The towers, such as Tower 9 and the Water Tower, could be utilised for this purpose and coordinated with existing events/festivals.

Ambitions for the walls should be aligned with CYC's A

Cultural Strategy for York 2019-2025; using them as a venue or 'backdrop' for cultural events. This could include take-over or participative events such as the temporary illumination of the entire wall circuit as an event (seasonal or one-off) or its use as part of a performance.

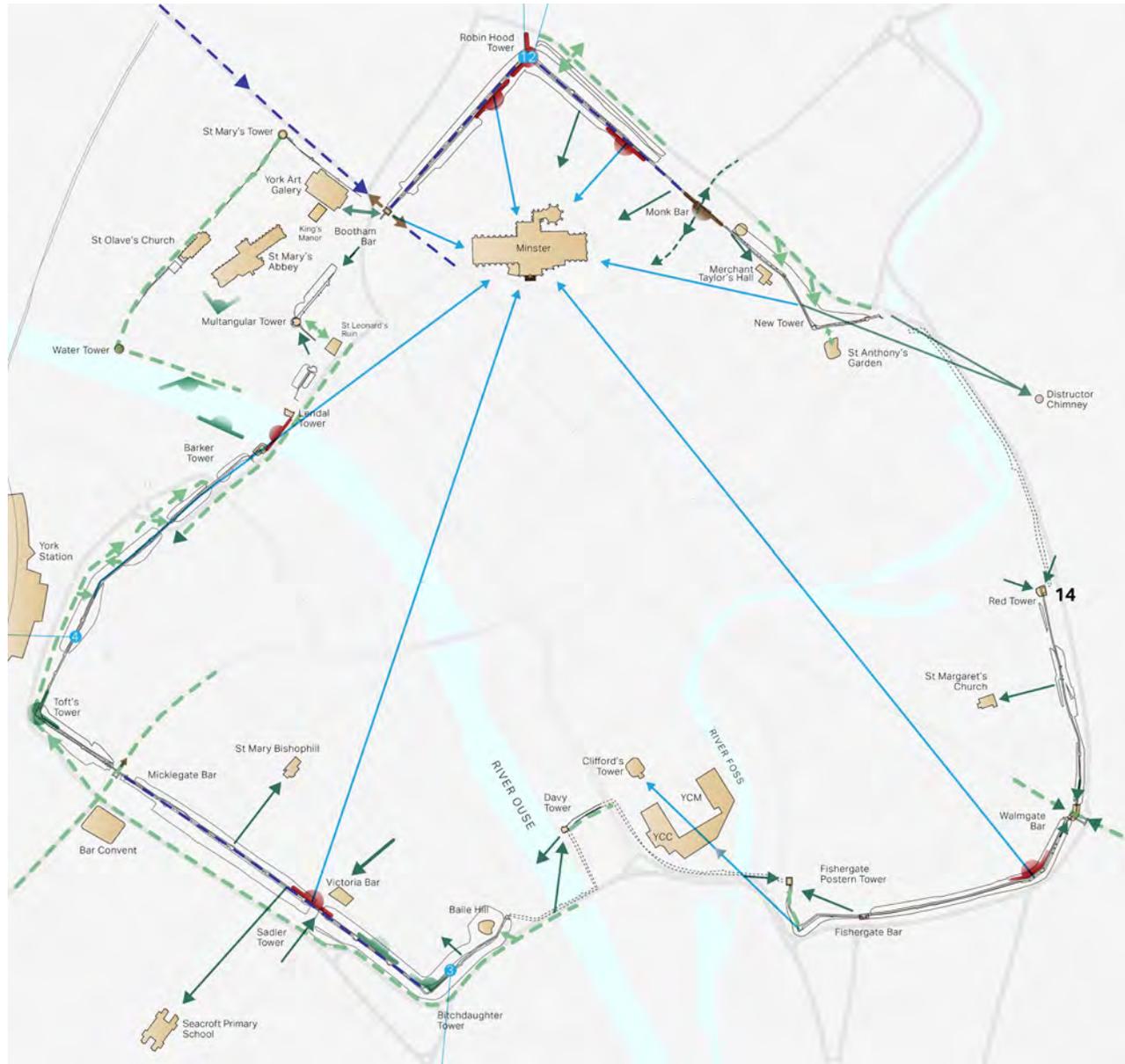
In addition, long-term opportunities should be sought, for example introducing 'in-depth' experience points within or near particular locations of interest e.g. bars, towers and/viewing points to enhance the visitor experience and to address issues of anti-social behaviour in underused areas.

Both local and regional strategic policies, such as culture and tourism, should capitalise on the unique character of the walls.

Road network improvements/traffic control. There is an inherent and long-standing issue with vehicular access to the bars, and this should be holistically reviewed to reduce/remove traffic and or improve road surfaces and in some instances to consider pedestrianisation. This would reduce the risk of impact damage, improve pedestrian safety and in turn reduce the necessity for street furniture.

Key areas for improvement include Micklegate and Monk Bar, the Postern Tower and Bootham Bar area, Walmgate as well as areas around Sections 18 and 19, the Castle and Skeldergate Bridge, which are dominated by the busy arterial road network.

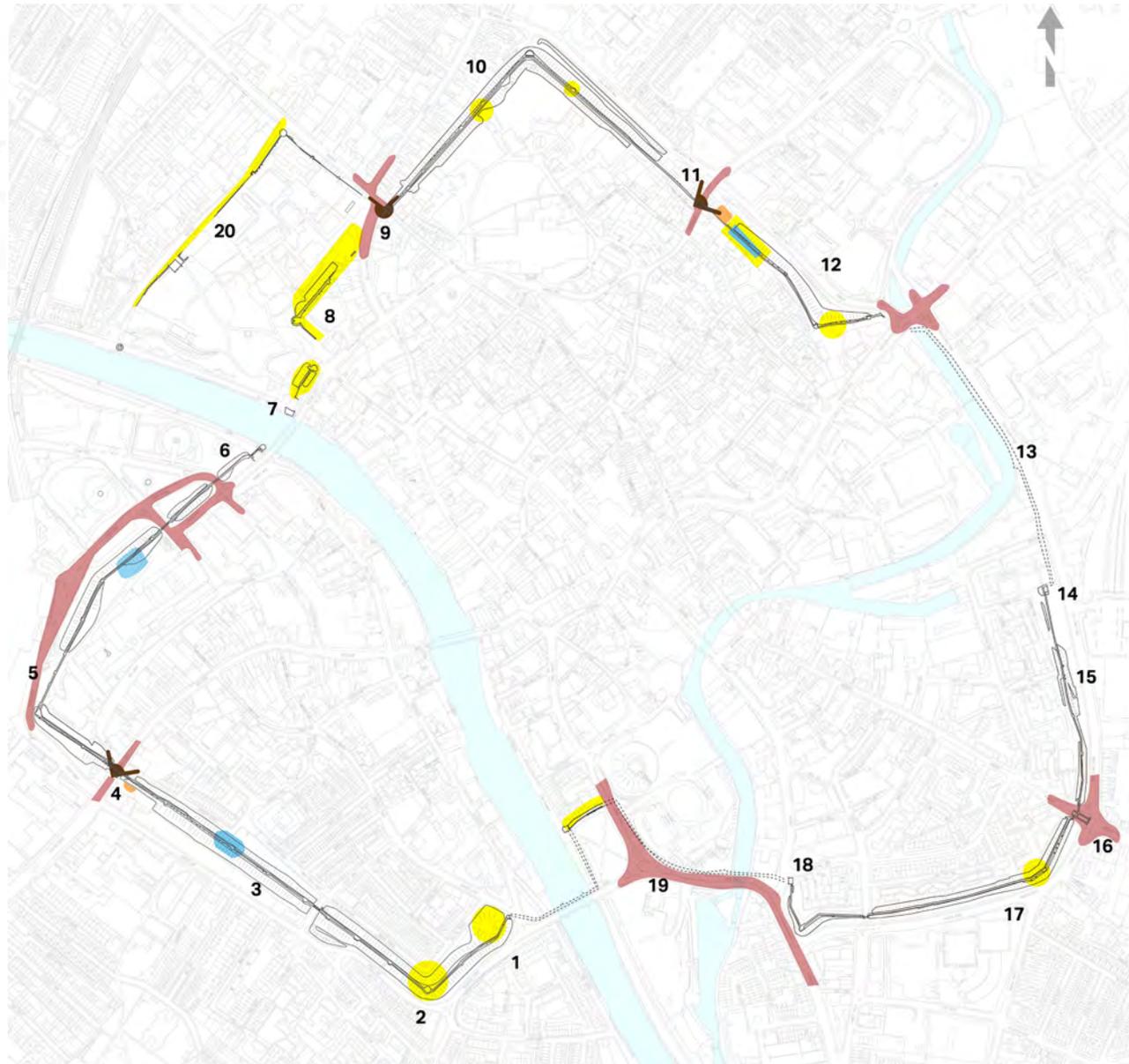
- Key**
-  Key Views
 -  Local Views
 -  Dynamic Key Views
 -  Dynamic Local Views
 -  Key Panorama
 -  Local Panorama
 -  Key Private Views
 -  Key Private Panorama
 -  Landmark
- 1** Long Range View to Howardian Hills
 - 2** Long Range View to North York Moors
 - 3** Views of Terry's Tower
 - 4** Views of Holgate Windmill and Water Tower (Severus Hill)



6.1 Views map

Key

- Improved access
- Traffic/highways improvement
- Area to be reviewed to improve appreciation of key views / features
- Potential location for cafe / New or improved WC facilities
- New rooftop viewpoints



6.2 Potential opportunities map

6.1.3 Landscape and Environment

Enhancement of ecological corridors. The ramparts cover at least six hectares of grassland or woodland, which is of high local importance as an area of accessible green space within the highly urbanised setting of York city centre.

They form a 'green corridor' for wildlife and a few of the towers are currently used to provide a habitat for bees, (particularly in **Section 1**). This could be expanded, particularly in **Sections 1-5, 10 and 15**. Where areas of rampart are inaccessible they could potentially form wild flower habitats⁷³ and additional unused towers could lend themselves to roosting for bats or the keeping of bees.⁷⁴

An expansion of the *Edible Gardens Trail* along the walls circuit should also be considered alongside a series of nature trails along the ramparts. Nature trails should engage with both tourists and residents and could utilise technology – for example – the 'Citizen Science App'.

The wall circuit is also a valuable resource of **Wellbeing** for both residents and visitors, which could be developed as part of activity-led initiatives by CYC, a commercial venture or

community group(s), which could include forms of exercise, mindfulness etc.

New planting to soften existing development. This could be introduced along Foss Island Road and to surface carparks in **Sections 3, 5, 8, 12 and 19**.

Sustainable Energy. Options to introduce sustainable energy such as utilising the ramparts to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties as part a low-carbon heat network should be considered. This would align with the Government's 2017 Clean Growth Strategy. It would also provide an archaeological opportunity to excavate within the ramparts, but could be costly.

Maintaining the Ramparts. Where erosion has taken place or they have been truncated by development, it may be appropriate to reform the ramparts in order to improve understanding and their setting. This could be reviewed in line with the previous opportunity, or as part of the redevelopment of sites adjacent to the ramparts.

73 These inaccessible areas may be more appropriate than those which are frequently-used, in order to encourage plant growth.

74 Any proposals should be developed in line with CYC's Pollinator Strategy (2020-25) and CYC's Policies on biodiversity

6.1.4 Archaeology

Areas of Potential Research/Investigation. These should be identified and investigations carried out following a formal Research Agenda (see Section 6.2.7).

Opportunities for Community Archaeology. There are many opportunities for non-intrusive and intrusive community archaeology projects under the guidance of qualified, experienced, professional archaeologists. Areas such as the undisturbed section of rampart in Section 8 between Lendal Tower and St Leonard's and at the Red Tower could provide appropriate locations for community archaeological investigations, led by CYC and YAT.

Collaborative projects. There is the opportunity to carry out geophysical survey across the ramparts (access and H&S depending). This would suit itself to a University collaboration but could include community involvement.

Publication of Archaeological Reports – 'Grey Literature'. In their current form, they hold little weight and are often inaccessible, which limits understanding. It is important that current and future archaeological programmes carry sufficient funding to enable this post excavation work to take place. This will also facilitate the Research Agenda discussed within Understanding and Research (Section 6.1.7).

6.1.5 Access and Interpretation

Signage, orientation and interpretation. A holistic review of signage and interpretation should be carried out to ensure information is correct, up to date and not duplicated. Outdated material or that in poor condition should be removed or replaced. Its visual appearance should be considered both in relation to the setting of the walls and other signage across the City. Its overall legibility and accessibility, taking into consideration visual and other impairments, is also key. Moving forward, triennial reviews of interpretation and signage relating to the walls should be carried out in tandem with wider city signage and contemporary visitor expectations/technologies. Better integration between the Visit York, FOYW and the CYC websites would be beneficial to provide a new digital layer to any future interpretation.

Reviewing and providing additional in-ground markers across the wall walk (as well as an explanation of the reason for their locations⁷⁵), naming the towers, or providing specific markers, alongside interpretive artwork in Sections 13 and 20 for example, could assist in understanding of the use of bodies of water in the City's defences. Clarity on the role and former position of St Mary's Precinct Walls should be provided within Museum Gardens/along Marygate. Orientation/signage at Bootham Bar requires a full review to avoid confusion and

⁷⁵ Potentially online.

the space at first floor could be put to better use – perhaps as a starting point for tours, or as an exemplar exhibition introducing the entire wall circuit. The gates could be replaced with an alternative pigeon deterrent, or gates incorporating artwork.

Improvements to physical access in Section 8 would improve both accessibility and enhance the understanding of the development of the City Walls between here and Bootham Bar and their relationship with St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls. In addition, the ambition for ramped access within the Minster Precinct would improve access, understanding and appreciation of the walls in this area.

Views. Those identified in Plate 6.1 should be enhanced with subtle interpretation, including in-ground markers or as part of an interpretation board, piece of artwork or information provided online. Locations for in-ground markers include Sections 1-3, 5, 13 and 15 in particular; potential locations for interpretation/artwork include Sections 2, 10 and 13.

Physical Access. There are sections and features that are or could be made physically accessible and opportunities should be explored to provide alternative access for those areas where it is not feasible to provide access. For example, providing sensitively designed ramps/landscaping at Baile Hill and Bitchdaughter Tower. Options to introduce raised access points/viewing platform/s may be appropriate for certain areas

of the wall walk and should be explored. Access, orientation and interpretation should be improved behind the Library/ Archive to improve understanding of this complex area and its former connection with Bootham Bar. The provision of access from the wall walk to St Anthony's Garden and the Minster Precinct would also be beneficial. Any proposals should be subject to a review of the physical impact on the monument, the particular character and setting of the area and archaeological implications.

For those with impaired vision, it is not clear whether an assessment of this issue has been carried out. If not, it is essential that this is carried out and actioned to reduced barriers to access as far as possible – the introduction of subtle braille marks on the parapets should be explored. Naming of the key features, bars and towers could be improved generally across the wall circuit this could be done with subtle, tactile signage. The possibility of introducing Audio Tours should be reviewed.

Community Involvement. Increasing community involvement with and use of the walls would raise awareness of their significance and foster a sense of 'pride of place'. This could be achieved by giving local communities responsibility for 'their sections of the walls'; local volunteers could maintain the areas by acting as local guides, litter picking, community watch, community gardening projects etc. and could hold events.

Engaging with the community as part of the development of future events relating to the walls or design proposals will enable local people to contribute to the outcome and help to ensure a successful project with public support - this is vital to the sustainability and long-term survival of the site.

Intellectual Access and 'Pride of Place'. Providing 'accessibility' goes far beyond physical barriers and improvements are also required to the legibility and interpretation of the site's significance, features and historic context to improve people's knowledge, and engagement with, the monuments in order for them to remain relevant for this and future generations. This could be achieved by developing an interpretation strategy with community involvement/visitor input to ensure a fully-inclusive scheme is developed; continuing and expanding upon the existing festivals,⁷⁶ using the walls as a backdrop; strengthening links to community and outreach groups, schools and higher education; encouraging community projects relating to art, heritage, gardening, wellbeing/exercise and the growing, preparing and sharing food.

Accessible Rampart Route. This would provide a 'linear park', entirely outside the existing walls, offering a new 24-hour, fully accessible route around the city. This could also align with the creation of a nature trail. A full survey, taking into consideration levels, ownership, cost etc. should be carried out. The

76 Including the York Walls Festival – begun in 2018

accompanying map identifies areas which may form part of this route **[Plate 6.3]**.

Virtual Access. In order to provide access to a wider audience, opportunities to develop an expanded version of Google Streetview™ (which already covers a good deal of the wall walk) to cover the interiors of the towers and bars could be explored with agreement with Google. Alternatively, this could be carried out by CYC in tandem with the FOYW (who have already begun this task) or Visit York,⁷⁷ but it may not achieve the same audience numbers.

The FOYW should seek funding for website improvement as it appears to be the most authoritative in terms of information but some pages are text heavy and lack graphic accessibility. It should be aligned with CYC's forthcoming website and Visit York's and could make use of the visual elements of this CMP as well providing access to the document in full.

Virtual representations of particular areas of the circuit would massively improve understanding and could be achieved by using QR codes or other digital technologies. Historic imagery could show lost features as well as the general appearance of an area at a certain point in time, or development through time utilising a series of images. This would be particularly

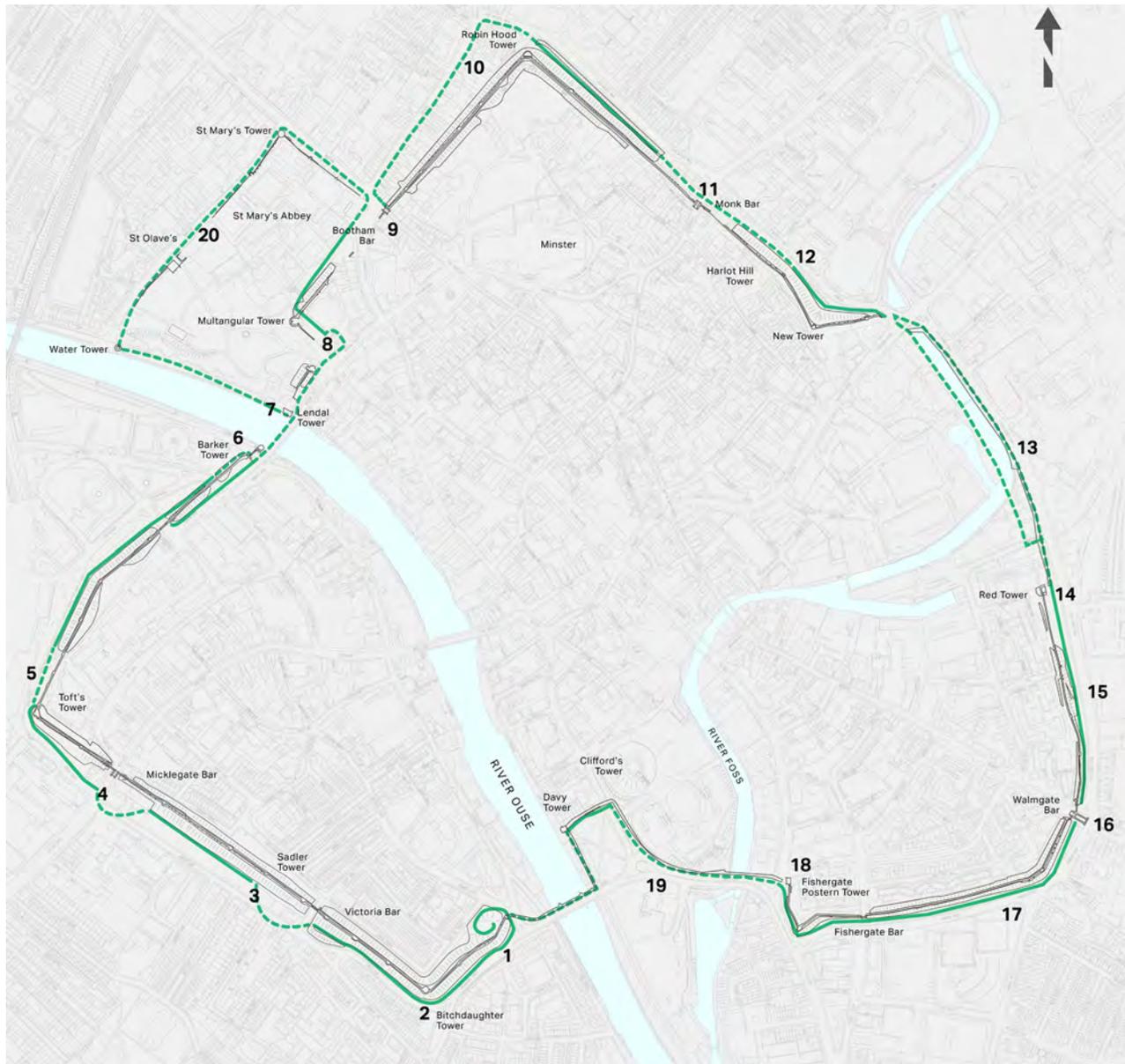
77 As proposed in the Interpretation and Access Plan (2004)

beneficial at Sections 13, 14, 17 and 18, but also at Section 1 and 6/7 where the bridges are a relatively new introduction.

Facilities. Whilst there are a number of museums, now of good quality, they are situated in the least physically accessible buildings and so options to provide virtual access alongside a review of activities and outreach that takes place outside the buildings themselves should be undertaken.

The opportunity should be taken to review the location and design of street furniture and how artwork or interpretation can be incorporated to enhance the visitor's experience of walking the walls. These features should be spread along the length of the walk but with a view to minimising townscape 'clutter', and should be designed to ensure minimal intrusion into historic fabric and archaeology.

Lighting. Light fittings and casings should be upgraded to improve their relationship with the setting of the walls and as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats - and residential amenity and the distinct character of each area



6.3 Suggested linear park or 'rampart walk'

6.1.6 Management

Development of a holistic management structure. The previous lack of cohesion in the management of the walls has led to certain unintended outcomes such as inappropriate repairs or development in their setting. There is also an ongoing issue where bars and towers are leased, in terms of meeting professional conservation standards. The York City Walls Liaison Group has been set up to co-ordinate all bodies or departments involved in the walls. A centralised management structure at CYC is now required to align with this group. Clear roles and responsibilities should be established as part of this exercise and agreed with all relevant stakeholders.

A **rolling list of opportunities** should be developed and ordered according to priority and in collaboration with partners and external stakeholders to inform and align with CYC's funding cycles. This could reinforce collaborative working between CYC and its key stakeholders, including FOYW and the Civic Trust, and also provide efficiencies by avoiding the duplication of effort.

Alignment of Management Policies and Recommendations. CMPs for St Mary's Abbey Precinct and Mint Yard have been produced (in 2005 and 2012 respectively) and their policies should be reviewed alongside those for the walls, to ensure there are no conflicts.

Updates to the National Heritage List for England. The scheduled monument description for the City Walls (/HE List Entry No 1004910) should be completed and others should be updated as necessary. Given pressures on HE, CYC could potentially carry this out with assistance from University of York / York St John students.

Build upon and strengthen relationships with HE/IHBC. This could open up more funding opportunities and facilitate knowledge sharing on new techniques, materials, training and sustainability initiatives, for example.

Consistency. Tenders for works should be awarded, for example, a three-year period, rather than on short-term or project-by-project basis. This will ensure that contractors develop an informed approach to the conservation of the walls. If organised on a short-term contract basis different contractors may produce different quality of work in adjacent sections, affecting the overall character of the walls and never proceeding beyond the 'learning curve'.

6.1.7 Understanding and Research

Record Keeping. This should be updated and regularly maintained. It will enable the retention of in-house knowledge to inform future works and understanding. All information should be centrally stored on CYC's system/HER, made available to their staff and shared with consultants as needed. Given the complex nature of the monuments, new personnel and contractors should be introduced to the HER naming system and the Chainage system as part of their induction / training.

Access to information. Access to measured drawings, specifications, file notes, condition and structural surveys, levels of statutory protection and processes should be provided for all individuals working on the walls (i.e. the stonemasons, engineers etc., consultants, architects), to ensure informed decisions relating to the walls are made and processes followed.

Measured Drawings/Photogrammetry. CYC hold an incomplete set of photogrammetric surveys. Those which are not yet scanned and saved to their centralised system should be and the list should be updated, and surveys completed. This type of detailed survey work has considerable value, firstly for the plotting of historical development through recording and analysis of stone types and bedding methods, surface features, mortar types etc.,; secondly in the planning and recording of repair works; and thirdly in monitoring and

plotting the progress of decay, surface encrustations, salts action etc. This information should be centrally stored on CYC's system/HER, made available to their staff and shared with consultants as needed.

The Historic Environment Record/GIS Mapping. This is currently under review and development by CYC. Given the nature of the record, it requires continual updates. CYC's publicly accessible GIS map currently shows a vast variety of information in one easy to navigate map – covering planning, nature conservation, areas of archaeological investigation and watching briefs etc. This system could be used as a basis to provide more user-friendly/publically accessible information such as historic images and maps and linking through to the HER profile/information sheets and/or listing descriptions. Its categories could also be reviewed so that elements such as the City Walls are not hidden within 'Miscellaneous'.

Cataloguing. Historic material relating to the walls is vast and the collections are spread across various institutions. A full review should be carried out and sources centralised/linked by CYC; this could be carried out for example in tandem with the University of York / York St John's, potentially as a funded thesis. A cataloguing exercise, still currently being carried out by York Explore, should be continued and made full accessible. This will facilitate the Research Agenda discussed below.

Development of a Research Agenda. The Yorkshire Archaeological Research Frameworks Forum developed a research framework in order to set priorities for future archaeological investigation in York, which was published in 2007: *Yorkshire Archaeological Research Framework: research agenda*. Research priorities relevant to the City Walls are in the process of being developed according to this framework by the city Archaeologist, in tandem with the Yorkshire Archaeological Research Frameworks Forum. A series of initial research questions compiled by John Oxley, Claire MacRae and Louisa Hood in 2020-21, is included in [Appendix VIII](#).

Learning, Skills and Community Involvement. Initiatives for community involvement include community archaeology projects, such as those previously carried out at St Leonard's/ Mint Yard should be pursued. FOYW have proposals for a heritage training/skills project, which seeks to involve people from all backgrounds and communities, with a potential partnership with the York homeless charity the 'Good Organisation'. Their links to schools are already well established and should be maintained and developed.

Higher Education research projects could also be continued/ developed in collaboration with CYC/YMT/YAT/ University of York / York St John/HE. Assistance with updates to the HER or even collating/drafting the scheduled monument description for the City Walls scheduling record could be appropriate projects.

Local skilled craftspeople. Following on from the outreach and development of skills FOYW are currently leading on, this could be extended by CYC to attract apprentices from the local community including local schools and colleges as well as through outreach projects. This would have the dual benefit retaining skilled craftsman within the city and providing succession for the stonemasons working on the City Walls whilst also offering training opportunities to the local community centred on this key asset.



1.0 Management Plan

1.1 Conservation Philosophy

1.1.1 Introduction

This CMP has provided an assessment of the significance of York City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Walls based upon an analysis of its development, the people responsible for its creation and its social, political, economic, and architectural context. As a result of this deep understanding of the site, a conservation philosophy for its future management has evolved, which is outlined here.

1.1.2 The Conservation Philosophy

It is difficult to define a Conservation Philosophy which encompasses the monuments in their entirety as the number of different circumstances that may arise will require a number of different approaches. Different types of structure will require different kinds of care - it is therefore useful to establish a set of key themes upon which decisions of how and when to adapt and alter or conserve the historic fabric should be based. These themes underpin the more detailed objectives and principles set out below in respect to the conservation and management of the monuments.

The conservation philosophy centres on four key themes:

- 1.1.2.1 Continued use of the site(s) in a manner sympathetic to their many and evolving historic uses whilst allowing sensitive adaption to accommodate modern requirements based on a full understanding of the impact of proposals on the significance of the monuments
- 1.1.2.2 Retention of the site/monuments as a piece of civic infrastructure and key attraction within the City of York, meeting 21st century visitor expectations and enhancing the economy whilst increasing engagement with the local community and improving social well-being
- 1.2.2.3 Repair and conservation of the built fabric to maintain and enhance the heritage significance (including the evidential, historical, aesthetic and community values) of the monuments
- 1.2.2.4 Sustainable use and improved physical access and interpretation to ensure the site is truly accessible to all as far as its constraints will allow

1.2 Principles

1.2.1 Introduction

The Risks and Opportunities sections in the Appraisal outlined the issues and vulnerabilities affecting the significance of the City Walls and St Mary's Abbey Walls alongside opportunities to enhance this significance. The following section will provide guidance on resolving these issues to inform future decision-making. The principles do not propose solutions to specific problems, but suggest procedures that can be applied to help make decisions that sustain and enhance the significance of the assets. The principles are designed to promote conservation and enhancement of the special qualities of the site and are intended to provide the framework within which this can be taken forward for the benefit of the site, the local community, residents and the wider public. The principles are supplemented by recommendations on how the heritage values of the Walls could be further enhanced, however it must be noted that these all must be subject to a detailed assessment of their acceptability according to their impact on significance.

Managing heritage assets is a matter of balancing often conflicting demands and pressures, enabling necessary or desirable change to take place but in a way that sustains and enhances what is significant. For an asset of the highest significance, heritage legislation requires that great weight must

be given to its conservation, so this should always be a high priority in decision-making.

The following objectives, principles and recommendations therefore include opportunities for both long-term and short-term change under the following headings:

- A. Conservation of the Fabric, Maintenance, Repair and Enhancement
- B. Development and Setting
- C. Landscape and Environment
- D. Archaeology
- E. Access and Interpretation
- F. Management
- G. Understanding and Research

A. Conservation of the Fabric, Maintenance, Repair and Enhancement

Objectives

- To ensure that any work follows a conservation led-approach, based on a full understanding of the impact of proposals on the significance and historic character of the site
- To enhance and sustain the sense of place and its values
- To provide a framework within which conservation decisions can be made
- To provide a suitable environment for volunteers, staff and visitors to ensure personal and public safety
- To provide a centralised, managed system for maintenance and management to improve decision making, create cost efficiencies and ensure sustainability through the preservation of 'embodied energy'

Principles

- A.1** A framework will be developed which recognises that the causes, sources and rates of decay varies across the Walls and includes a series of individual solutions in response, including but not limited to:
- i) natural decay
 - ii) erosion
 - iii) waterproofing
 - iv) structural interventions
 - v) accidental and intentional damage (cars / vandalism)
 - vi) material specifications including mortar mixes
 - v) guidance on the use of salvaged materials and provenance¹
- A.2** A rolling ten-year Maintenance and Management Schedule should be produced in consultation with the City of York Council's (CYC) Maintenance Team, Landscape Team, Stonemasons, Stakeholders, Monitoring Structural Engineers, CARE Accredited (Conservation) Engineer, Archaeologist, Highways Department and Architects which clearly assigns each task to an individual.

¹ This could then form the basis of the Heritage Partnership Agreement to be made with HE (see F.5)

A.3 Appropriate craftspeople and professionals should be used for all work. Training will be provided to maintenance staff to ensure their competence in using and working with historic materials and to ensure that there is a reservoir of appropriately skilled individuals.

A.4 All fixtures and fittings relating to the historic function of the Walls and structures (e.g. portcullis' and their mechanisms) will be subject of a special provision for repair and maintenance.

A.5 The schedule must include the annual maintenance for the entire Walls in its financial projections and business plans to ensure that the Walls can be maintained in perpetuity.

A.6 The schedule should be reviewed in line with CYC funding cycles (currently three years) with lessons learnt from the past period incorporated into the document so that it can be constantly improved upon.

A.7 Monthly inspections and identification of works required will continue to be undertaken by the CYC City Wall maintenance team of all the historic buildings and structures that make up the Walls considering:

- i) structural defects
- ii) health & safety
- iii) conservation issues

iv) routine maintenance such as the clearing of gutters, painting of metalwork and woodwork

v) removal of detrimental vegetation

The maintenance team will be briefed and made aware of the key issues from this Conservation Management Plan and the separate Conservation Engineering monitoring proposals, together with repair proposals for specific sections.

A.8 As a principle, significant locations of cracking, bulging, spreading, settlement or rotation of masonry will be monitored carefully over at least a year to establish if these are 'historical' defects, cyclical effects or progressive movement. Where defects are highlighted as being a structural problem, if feasible the cause of the movement should be remedied before considering whether to re-build sections.

A.9 Following the 2020/21 Structural Inspection to the Walls, a long-term structural strategy should be adopted, to inform the frequency, type and review period of monitoring to specific identified areas, and to agree whether this should be carried out by the City Walls team or an independent Conservation Engineer.

A.10 Monitoring techniques should take account of the likely period required. Long-term monitoring studs may require durable robust fixing techniques to historic fabric, of a form to be agreed with CYC and Historic England (HE).

A.11 A strategy for the removal of elements which visually compete with the Walls or which accelerate decay will be implemented. Works undertaken to the Walls should provide for the removal of detracting elements including hard cement mortar where it can be removed without damage to the monuments and in accordance with the principles in this section.

A.12 No new trees will be planted in close proximity to the Walls and a strategy for the selective felling / pruning and planting maintenance will be developed as part of the overall Maintenance and Management Schedule, taking into account those with a protected status (TPO, in a Conservation Area or Registered Park and Garden) and where the loss of their amenity value would be justified against the preservation of the historic fabric and significance.

A.13 Changes to the form of and removal of material from the earth ramparts should be carefully managed.

Recommendations

A.14 The paint scheme for metalwork across the Walls and the decorative scheme of armorials will be reviewed and historic paint analysis undertaken prior to the implementation of any new colour schemes.

A.15 A rolling list of opportunities should be developed and ordered according to priority and in collaboration with partners and external stakeholders to inform and align with CYC's funding cycles.



B. Development and Setting

Objectives

- To ensure the values attached to the site(s) are sustained and enhanced
- To sustain, enhance and record the built heritage in line with current international and national conservation and spatial planning guidelines
- To ensure the appropriate use of buildings and areas and introduce new uses which will enhance public enjoyment and ensure the conservation of the site(s) and their associated values in the long-term
- To better reveal the significance of the monuments including through improvements to their setting and enhancing views
- To facilitate the understanding of the historic environment of the site

Principles

- B.1** There will be a strong presumption in favour of retaining and conserving in-situ all buildings, historic structures and parts thereof where they are of significance or value and contribute positively to the character of the site.
- B.2** All proposals for alteration and intervention will be underpinned by an assessment of the significance of the

affected area and must achieve a sustainable use whilst retaining and better revealing the Wall's significance.

B.3 The design of new interventions into buildings, historic structures and parts thereof must achieve the following objectives:

- i) respect the existing fabric of the structure
- ii) avoid alteration or damage to the existing fabric
- iii) carefully consider the interface between a new element and the existing fabric to avoid damage both in terms of fixings and potential for future decay
- iv) be clearly identifiable both physically, by dating, and by documenting the construction and alteration process
- v) be of high design quality and utilise good quality and long lasting materials

B.4 New uses for buildings and structures will be supported where they sustain or enhance the significance of the site, require the minimal alteration to fabric necessary and ensure the sustainable future of the building or structure. Preference will be given for uses which achieve one or more of the following:

- i) enhance the public enjoyment and understanding of the site
- ii) provide demonstrable economic and social benefits to the site and local community

- iii) enhance the cultural or natural significance of the feature or site
- B.5** Following the introduction of new uses, future occupiers will be briefed on the CMP and its principles and will be contractually obliged to adopt it in full.
- B.6** Special consideration should be taken to ensure that the installation of essential visitor services (such as access, services and toilets) respects the historic character of the site and does not diminish its significance.
- B.7** All associated repair works must be derived from the adopted conservation framework and respect the historic integrity of the fabric. Restoration should only be undertaken where a feature is incomplete through damage or modern alteration and only where there is sufficient documentary evidence to accurately support the reproduction of an earlier state. Reconstruction will only be considered in order to stabilise a feature, or if there is a clear case that understanding, interpretation and safety will be enhanced.
- B.8** Priority will be given to proposals which provide for the sensitive redevelopment of buildings or sites which currently detract from the setting of the Walls; surface carparks located adjacent to the monuments should be moved or relandscaped and service areas moved or redesigned.

- B.9** All development proposals in the setting of the Walls must take into account the findings of this CMP to ensure that the significance, values and sensitivity of affected areas is sustained and enhanced; this includes but is not limited to:
 - i) scale, form and massing
 - ii) materials and detailed design
 - iii) orientation and location
 - iv) key views to and from the Walls
 - v) routes and connections to and through the Walls
 - vi) contribution to sense of place and identity
 - vii) use and associated requirements
- B.10** Options to enhance views will be considered and aligned with access improvements / street furniture improvements / interpretation and the strategy for the selective felling / pruning and planting maintenance within the Maintenance and Management Schedule.
- B.11** Vehicular access through the Bars and around the Walls will be holistically reviewed to reduce / remove traffic and improve road surfaces, with a focus on options for pedestrianisation and removal or rationalisation of street furniture and signage. Proposals which seek to minimise the physical impact and pollution damage from traffic will be supported.

B.12 Ambitions for the Walls should be aligned with CYC's *A Cultural Strategy for York 2019-2025*; using them as a venue or 'backdrop' for cultural events.

B.13 The unique character of the Walls should be central to local and regional strategic culture and tourism policies.

B.14 During any site works and development, information and interpretation will be provided to explain what is happening and to increase understanding.

Recommendations

B.15 Temporary or meanwhile uses should be introduced to encourage and enhance understanding of the Walls, reinforce their role for the local community and visitors and bring in much-needed revenue.

B.16 In order to enhance views the following should be undertaken:

- i) a review of street furniture and signage in order to reduce visual clutter
- ii) options to introduce artwork to improve the appearance of Foss Island Road should be considered and the potential for this to be a community or University-linked project
- iii) planting should be utilised as a means of softening the visual and environmental impact of surface level carparks, detracting development and Foss Island Road

- iv) options to provide benches and interpretation and the potential to enlarge the wall-walk at key viewpoints should be further considered in terms of the impact on significance of any developed proposals and the public benefits they bring
- v) prioritisation of schemes which seek to provide public access to the roofs at Micklegate, Bootham and Monk Bars with accompanying interpretation
- vi) development of a views framework specifically for the Walls and aligned with those identified in the *York Central Historic Core Conservation Area Appraisal*.



C. Landscape and Environment

Objectives

- To ensure the protection and enhancement of the natural environment, context and setting of the monuments
- To manage the landscape in a way that enhances the natural ecological significance of the Walls and environs
- To document and understand the natural environment of the Walls and their surroundings
- To encourage awareness of and engagement with the environment of the Walls and their surroundings
- To increase the use of the natural environment of the Walls as a key amenity for visitors and local communities alike and as a means of uplifting health and wellbeing

Principles

C.1 Future works and projects will be considered against their impact on the natural environment as well built structures and archaeology.

- i) where an understanding of the environmental value and natural history of the site is unknown, a Habitat Management Plan will be commissioned which will include the identification of enhancement opportunities such as reforming the ramparts and mitigation methods to combat visitor erosion

- ii) sites of environmental significance will require Environmental Impact Assessments to be produced in relation to any future use, development or changes in management
- iii) proposals to open up views and create new visual links will be informed by the strategy for the selective felling / pruning and planting maintenance within the Maintenance and Management Schedule
- iv) in areas where bats are identified as being present or encouraged, an ecological consultant will be commissioned to undertake further surveys in advance of any works or reuse
- v) all employees, suppliers, contractors and tenants will meet nationally agreed standards of environmental awareness and performance

C.2 Proposals to enhance the environmental aspects and biodiversity of the ramparts and Towers will be developed by a suitably qualified ecological consultant in line with CYC's Pollinator Strategy (2020-25) and CYC's policies on biodiversity (see C.5 below).

C.3 Areas designated for habitat improvement should be carefully assessed by a suitably qualified ecological consultant to ensure the introduction of ecology which is suited to the location and which will successfully enhance diversity.

C.4 Proposals to introduce new planting along Foss Island Road and to soften the visual impact of the detracting modern development, the road and surface car parks, will be supported and implemented.

C.5 Proposals to use the ramparts as a sustainable energy source in line with the Government's 2017 *Clean Growth Strategy* will be supported where it can be demonstrated that the significance of the natural environment as well the fabric and setting of the built structures and archaeology will be sustained or enhanced.

Recommendations

C.6 The value of the Wall circuit as a wellbeing resource for residents and visitors should be encouraged through activity-led initiatives by CYC, commercial ventures or community groups including, but not limited to, the following:

- i) implementation of a 'green corridor' including the ramparts and Towers
- ii) provision of wild flower habitats
- iii) use of Towers for roosting bats or keeping bees
- iii) expansion of the Edible Gardens Trail / creation and publication of nature trails



iv) provision of interpretation relating to the ecological importance of the Walls

C.7 A separate assessment that is focused on the ecology of the City Walls should be undertaken to provide a publicly accessible document and a springboard for the promotion of future projects

D. Archaeology

Objectives

- To ensure the survival and integrity of the historic fabric and below-ground archaeological resource and its evidential value
- To conserve, enhance, increase understanding and record heritage assets and below-ground archaeological resource in line with international, national and local conservation, archaeological and planning guidelines
- To facilitate understanding of the historic environment
- To ensure the survival of in-situ archaeological deposits

Principles

- D.1** There will be a presumption in favour of the preservation of in-situ historic fabric which contributes to the character and understanding of the Walls as well as significant archaeological features and deposits.
- D.2** All works to the monuments and within their setting will be based on a sound understanding of the significance of the heritage assets above and below ground.
- D.3** The archaeological investigation of sub-surface remains and standing structures will only be allowed where deemed necessary, justifiable and appropriate and where such work will contribute to a better understanding of the

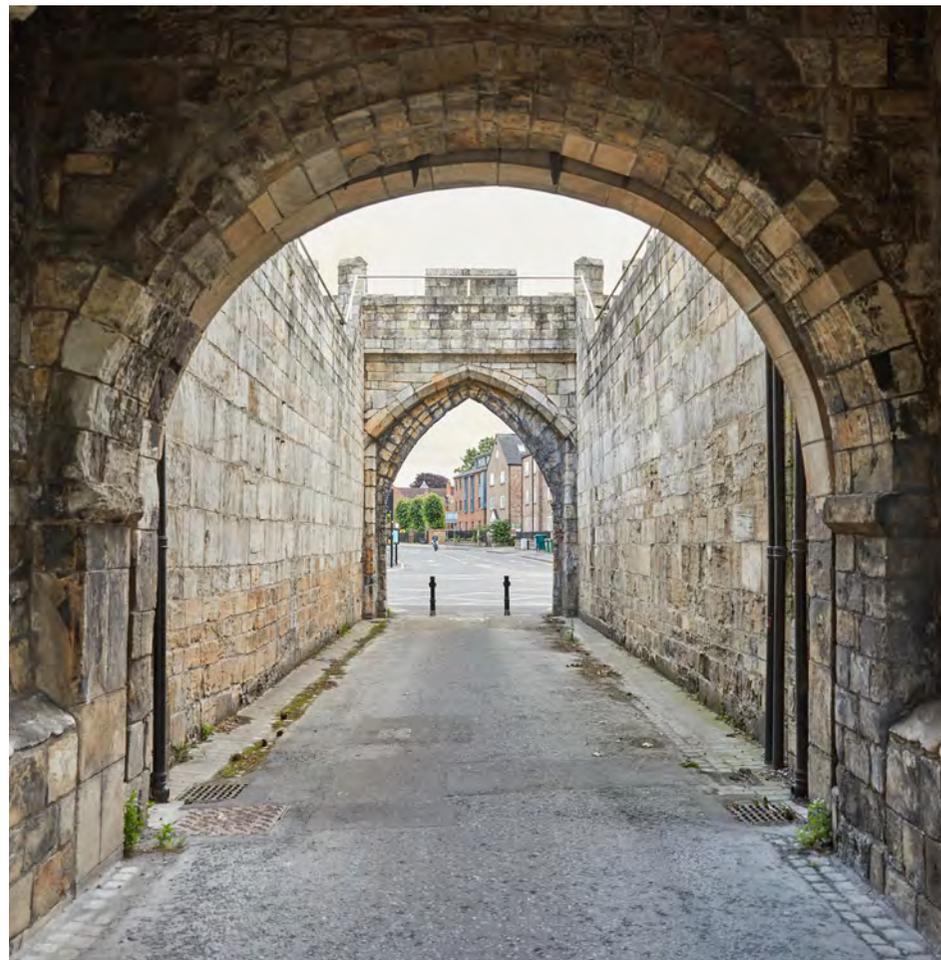


monuments or the City. All works must be undertaken in the appropriate manner and following national, regional and local research agendas and guidelines.

- D.4** No archaeological work will be undertaken without agreed and approved provision for research, recording, analysis, public engagement, publication and archiving. Interpretation must be provided on site where appropriate for information and to increase understanding.
- D.5** Any intrusion to the historic fabric will pay particular attention to the conservation of archaeological evidence relating to the original and/or historical use to retain the character of the site and to prevent harm through the cumulative loss of features.

Recommendations

- D.6** Areas of potential research should be identified and investigations carried out following a formal Research Agenda (see Section G below).
- D.7** Opportunities for non-intrusive and intrusive community archaeology projects should be pursued under the guidance of qualified, experienced, professional archaeologists led by CYC.
- D.8** Where possible a geophysical survey should be undertaken across the ramparts in collaboration with York University including a programme of community engagement.



E. Access and Interpretation

Objectives

- To develop and enhance physical, sensory and intellectual access opportunities in line with local and national policies
- To enable greater understanding of the significance of the Walls and associated structures by visitors and the local community
- To create an inclusive identity centred on the Walls
- To improve the information provision, orientation and welcome to the site
- To better exploit the unique qualities of the Walls to ensure a quality experience for all and present the asset as a destination of global reputation, distinctive yet complementary to the other attractions of York without over-commercialisation or branding
- To encourage inclusive access to information

Principles

- E.1** Ensure compliance, as far as possible, with the Equality Act 2010 and establish a forward-looking access strategy that looks to improve both physical and intellectual access to the site where this can be achieved without causing undue harm to significance.
- E.2** Where it is not possible to make areas accessible, alternative access will be provided through interpretation including digital or virtual technologies, activities and outreach.
- E.3** A range of mitigation strategies will be developed to include physical measures and community initiatives which address issues of health and safety, anti-social behaviour and potential fire risks and damage to structures and fixtures in accordance with the principles relating to alteration. These will be evidence based on the extent of risk that each present.
- E.4** Facilitate the use of sustainable forms of transport by providing information regarding its benefits, secure storage, links to the public transport system to encourage volunteers, visitors, property occupiers and potential members of staff to use sustainable forms of transport for access to the site.

E.5 A holistic review of signage and interpretation will be carried out to retain and enhance visitor satisfaction, perception and understanding of place, assess the provision for the visually impaired and the sense of arrival, welcome and means of navigation. This will form the basis of future reviews, aligned with CYC funding cycles, and carried out in tandem with wider city signage and contemporary visitor expectations / technologies.

E.6 Outdated material or that in poor condition will be removed or replaced.

E.7 Interpretive provision will be holistic, through inclusion of the development history, natural history, social and cultural histories of the site and extend beyond the formal site boundary to provide insight into the wider context of the Walls. Accepting that some interpretive provision will be virtual, the visual appearance, location and content of all new signage and interpretation will be considered against the following criteria:

- i) impact on the significance and understanding of the monuments
- ii) extent of physical intervention required to historic fabric and archaeology and cluttering impact
- iii) impact on the setting of the Walls
- iv) relationship with other signage across the City
- v) overall legibility and accessibility
- vi) visitor expectation and modern technologies

E.8 Additional interpretation, markers and artwork will be provided to enhance understanding in under-provided sections of the Walls including identified views, subject to the criteria within E.3.

E.9 The online presence of the Walls will be reviewed to improve the visual appeal and accessibility to information through the CYC website, Historic Environment Record (HER), Google *Streetview*TM, the Visit York website and Friends of York Walls (FOYW) website as well as the integration between this platforms.

E.10 A CMP 'lite' will be published and made available to engage the local community, residents and visitors with the conservation management process.

E.11 The location and design of street furniture will be reviewed and all opportunities for removal, rationalisation and the introduction of improved designs taken.

E.12 A strategy for lighting the monuments will be developed, underpinned by a review of the existing provision, to enhance the architectural illumination and improve the visual impact of fixtures and fittings whilst being mindful of the ecological impact, residential amenity and the distinct character of each area. Redundant light fittings will be removed.

Recommendations

E.13 Consideration should be given for 'in-depth' experience points within or near particular locations of interest e.g. Bars, Towers and viewing points to enhance the visitor experience and to address issues of anti-social behaviour in underused areas.

Any proposals would be subject to a review of the physical impact on the monument, the particular character and setting of the area, archaeological implications and the other principles within this Management Plan.

E.14 Options to improve access to the Walls within or near particular locations of interest should be explored, such as:

- i) creation of a principal entry point to the Walls at Bootham Bar with space for an exhibition, meeting point for tours or to introduce the interpretation across the whole circuit
- ii) provision of sensitively designed ramps / landscaping at Baile Hill and Bitchdaughter Tower
- iii) provision of access from the wall walk to St Anthony's Garden
- iv) installation of ramped access from the wall walk to link to the Minster Precinct and proposals including the Sensory Garden.

E.15 New signage and interpretation should be subject to testing with the local community and visitors before full implementation.

E.16 Initiatives should be developed with community involvement / visitor input to ensure access is fully-inclusive and that diverse local identities are all considered - with a focus on outreach to the local community and education providers and the encouragement of community projects. This could form the basis of an Inclusive Growth Strategy.

E.17 A scheme for local residents to act as guides for visitors should be developed to foster a sense of ownership within the community.

E.18 Options for a 'linear park' adjacent to the Walls, should be developed to offer a new 24-hour, fully accessible route around the city.



F. Management

Objectives

- To enable the sustainable use, management and development of the site
- To maintain and enhance the partnership management of the Walls
- To encourage and maintain community involvement, support and interest for the Walls

Principles

- F.1** Any works of repair or alteration must comply with all relevant statutory and legal requirements relating to scheduled monuments, listed buildings and archaeology, as well as a wide range of other statutory obligations including compliance with building regulations, protection of ecology, and any other requirements of the local planning authority associated with development through the planning process.
- F.2** As part of the development of any proposals for the monuments, early engagement and discussion with the decision-making authorities will be taken (CYC, HE, Natural England).

F.3 The scheduled monument description for the City Walls (UID 1004910) will be completed and others will be updated as necessary.

F.4 Development within any areas of archaeological importance will follow recommendations for investigations as detailed in Chartered Institute for Archaeologists (CIFA) and HE guidance.

F.5 A Heritage Partnership Agreement will be made with HE to replace the existing Generic Scheduled Monument Consent.

F.6 A holistic management structure and agreed strategic vision will be developed and adopted which identifies clear roles and responsibilities between all partners and external stakeholders to ensure the appropriate management, use, development and resources for the site. This will be coordinated by the Bar Walls Manager and subject to review in line with CYC funding cycles (currently every three years) with clear succession plans in place. Where parts of the Walls, associated buildings and ramparts, are not in Council ownership, CYC will seek to ensure that they are included as partners in this process.

F.7 The position of Bar Walls Manager will be maintained in perpetuity, held by an appropriately qualified and experienced person tasked with:

- i) managing the site
 - ii) conserving and enhancing the significance of the monuments
 - i) undertaking and co-ordinating projects directly relating to the site
 - ii) increasing community involvement and consultation
 - iii) ensuring that all persons involved with the site are briefed accordingly on the Maintenance and Management Schedule and CMP
 - iv) implementing the strategic vision
 - v) ensuring that the Walls are adequately provided for financially and that projects are appropriately prioritised
 - vi) further promoting the unique qualities of the Walls, to become a destination of global reputation, distinctive yet complementary to the other attractions of York.
- F.8** Processes will be introduced to ensure that in-house knowledge is retained and recorded and passed on to future personnel and contractors.
- F.9** Works carried out must follow a consistent programme of recording, carried out by means of detailed photogrammetry, drawing, photographs, samples and descriptions of works to a set format and stored in a single, accessible depository.
- F.10** Structures which are not yet recorded will be fully recorded as soon as possible and before any alteration.

F.11 There will be a presumption against the disposal or sale of any land parcels or structures related to the Walls.

Recommendations

F.12 Tenders for works should be awarded, for example over the three year funding cycle, rather than on short-term or project-by-project basis to ensure that contractors develop an informed approach to the conservation of the Walls.

F.12 Relationships with HE and the Institute of Historic Building Conservation (IHBC) and other heritage bodies should be strengthened to facilitate knowledge-sharing on new techniques, materials, training, heritage asset management and sustainability initiatives.

F.13 A programme of community involvement should be developed to further strengthen links with the community to ensure that the value of the site and the benefits from the use and potential development of the site are recognised, supported and enjoyed by local people, engendering a sense of ownership and pride.

F.14 Partners involved with site management should strive for the inclusion of all stakeholder and community voices in the use, management and conservation of the site.

G. Understanding and Research

Objectives

- The ensure the proper care, storage, documentation and display of all artefacts and archives
- To increase public access, understanding and appreciation of the collections, archives, artefacts and research associated with the site and its wider context
- To enable a full understanding of all aspects of the Walls and their significance
- To encourage and maintain community involvement, support and interest for the Walls
- To foster / expand relationships with local education providers and develop local skills

Principles

- G.1** Record keeping will be updated and regularly maintained; all information will be centrally stored on CYC's system / HER.
- G.2** New personnel and contractors will be introduced to the HER naming system and the chainage system as part of their induction / training.
- G.3** Access to measured drawings, specifications, file notes, condition and structural surveys, levels of statutory

protection and processes will be provided for all individuals working on the Walls (i.e. the stonemasons, engineers etc., consultants, architects), to ensure informed decisions relating to the Walls are made and processes followed.

- G.4** The photogrammetric surveys will be completed and saved to CYC's system / HER, made available to their staff and shared with consultants as needed.
- G.5** CYC's publically accessible GIS system will be used as a basis to provide more user-friendly and publically accessible information, including image and maps and linking to the HER database and the Walls will be better categorised.
- G.6** A full review of the historic material relating to the Walls will be undertaken and a comprehensive catalogue or inventory of primary sources will be produced and made publicly accessible in order to increase public awareness, provide educational opportunities and encourage further research. Any relevant findings will also be incorporated into the CMP review and update at the end of the current three year funding cycle.
- G.7** Archaeological research priorities relevant to the Walls will be developed according to the *Yorkshire Archaeological Research Framework: research agenda, 2007* in association with HE, CYC's Archaeologist,

York Archaeological Trust (YAT) and other relevant archaeological organisations and individuals.

- G.8** A further research agenda will be produced which notes other academic contexts where the employment of the Walls as a resource would broaden the understanding of its heritage values, including but not limited to topics relating to history, heritage and conservation management and art and architectural history.

Recommendations

- G.9** Current and future archaeological programmes need to carry sufficient funding to enable the publication of the reports and where possible previous investigations should be peer reviewed and published.
- G.10** A method of assessing the communal value of the Walls should be developed and undertaken to better understand the role that the heritage of the Walls plays in terms of wellbeing, sense of identity, belonging and place to the wider community with a focus local residents but inclusive of visitors.
- G.11** Initiatives to increase community involvement should be encouraged through engagement projects and increased access to information utilising new technologies.

- G.12** FOYW proposals for a heritage training / skills project and their well-established links to schools should be used as basis to expand engagement with education providers.

- G.13** Higher Education research projects should be continued / developed in collaboration with CYC / YAT / The University of York / York St John University / HE / York Museums Trust (YMT).

- G.14** CYC should commit to attracting apprentice stonemasons from the local community including local schools and colleges as well as through outreach projects.

- G.15** A programme of training for local volunteers to develop and learn appropriate skills in order that they can assist with the management, maintenance and use of the monuments will be created.

1.3 Implementation and Review

1.3.1 Consultation

The development of this Conservation Management Plan has included consultation with a number of interested individuals and parties coordinated by the Bar Walls Manager. To ensure the support of all stakeholders and interested parties they were sent a draft digital copy of the Appraisal, followed by a workshop and a request for comments. Following the completion of the Management Plan this was again sent to interested parties as a digital draft, a workshop held and comments requested. Where appropriate the comments have been incorporated into the final CMP – where they have been discounted, a note has been made and the party advised. Please see Section 1.5 of the Appraisal for further details on the consultation process.

1.3.2 Adoption and Implementation

A critical element of the conservation management process is ensuring a cycle of review and update so that new issues and vulnerabilities can be identified; changes to visitor and community expectations managed; updates in management and process responded to and changes in policy and guidance reviewed. It is our recommendation that this should be undertaken in line with CYC funding cycles (currently every three years) and aligning with the Maintenance and Management Schedule; provision should

also be made for a review to be undertaken if required in response to a serious threat to the significance of the monuments.

The adoption of a CMP by all interested parties is essential for its success. It is recommended that the principles in this document should be adopted by CYC and all other identified partners / stakeholders and be used to direct and guide appropriate development proposals for the site. Critical to this is ease of access – the document should be made available digitally through CYC’s website, the HER and all other relevant sources and its interactive format will allow topic areas to be easily found. It is also our recommendation that the document is adopted as a Supplementary Planning Document to give it weight in the planning process. Ensuring all people involved in the management of the site, whether paid staff, partners or volunteers are aware of the CMP and follow its principles is essential to ensure that decisions taken in the future will be underpinned by an understanding of the site and its significance.

Gazetteer

Contents

Introduction	245
Condition Survey	250
Visual Survey	404

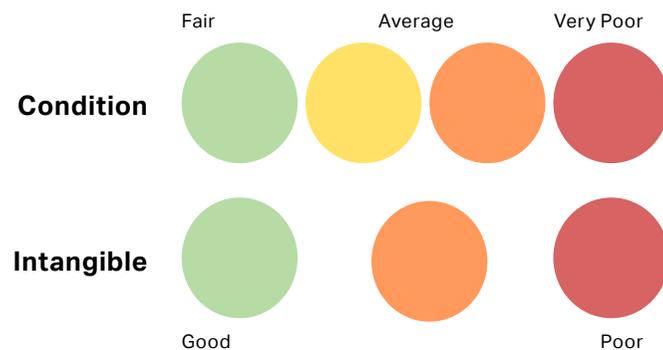
Introduction

This survey was carried out in October 2020, over the course of 5 days. It is worth noting that the Wall walk was open under COVID-19 restrictions, limiting it to a one-way system. The individuals surveying the Walls reviewed both the inner and outer ramparts and walked the Wall walk.

Site Survey Abbreviations

As with the main document, this Gazetteer splits the Walls into 20 sections, as shown on **page 248**. The abbreviations used for this survey have been developed from the codes established within the 2004 CMP. In addition, the codes are now also colour-coded with a 'traffic-light' system for clarity and to enable CYC to identify areas for enhancement and to prioritise works to the Walls.

The **Condition Survey** uses four categories ranging from green to red - Fair to Very Poor. This section concludes with a map which visually presents the condition of the Walls. N.B. Within this survey, 'External Masonry' refers to the outer face of the City / Precinct Wall and 'Internal Masonry' refers to the inner face of the Walls.



These were considered as part of this survey and do not represent a 'go-to' list of appropriate developments, rather a list of areas for potential improvements and concepts to achieve them. As with any development or proposal, they would require testing for example in terms of their affect on archaeology, historic fabric, setting, ecology and health and safety.

The **Visual Survey**, looking at the intangible state of the Walls, has three categories, similarly ranging from green to red - Good to Poor. The visual survey concludes with a series of maps which demonstrate views, contributions to the immediate setting of the Walls, listed buildings within their setting and a series of opportunities or recommendations.

Condition Survey Categories for each Element

Masonry

- M1 Masonry sound with no significant decay
- M2 Some decay, minor repairs required
- M3 Distinct evidence of accelerated decay requiring repairs
- M4 Very significant decay with urgent or immediate repairs required

Mortar Pointing

- P1 Mortar pointing in fair condition
- P2 Mortar pointing with some decay

P3 Mortar pointing with distinct evidence of accelerated decay requiring repairs

P4 Mortar pointing severely decayed with urgent or immediate repairs required

Flagstones (walkway)

F1 Flags sound with no significant decay

F2 Some decay minor repairs required

F3 Distinct signs of accelerated decay requiring repairs

F4 Very significant decay, urgent or immediate repairs required

Railings

RA1 Fair Condition

RA2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

RA3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

RA4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Ramparts

R1 Ramparts in good condition, well maintained with full public access

R2 Ramparts in fairly good condition, some public access

R3 Ramparts showing signs of wear and tear, obvious truncation or in private use with no public access

Roof

RO1 Fair Condition

RO2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

RO3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

RO4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Doors (metal gates)

D1 Fair Condition

D2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

D3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

D4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Windows (includes arrow slits and embrasures)

W1 Fair Condition

W2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

W3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

W4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Ceilings

C1 Fair Condition

C2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

C3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

C4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Internal Walls

I1 Fair Condition

I2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

I3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

I4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Internal Floors

FL1 Fair Condition

FL2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

FL3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

FL4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Features

FE1 Fair Condition

FE2 Minor decay with minor repairs required

FE3 Distinct decay with significant repairs required

FE4 Very significant decay, urgent or emergency repairs required

Visual Survey

Signage, Orientation, Interpretation and Lighting

S1 Signage, orientation, interpretation in good condition, appropriate to setting, intellectually accessible or enhances the Monument. Lighting enhances the Monument.

S2 Signage, orientation, interpretation in fair condition or provided by secondary means (website, guided tour stopping point), appropriate to setting, mostly intellectually accessible or does not particularly detract or enhance monument. Lighting present but fittings and / or effect could be improved.

S3 Signage, orientation, interpretation in poor condition, inappropriate to setting, intellectually inaccessible, significantly detracts from significance of monument, no interpretive provision known of. Poor / no lighting or light fittings detract.

Significant View / Feature

SV1 Significant view providing a considerable contribution to the setting. Features of considerable interest. Opportunity for

fixed interpretation of nearby feature or enhancement of resting / viewing prospects

SV2 Attractive view providing a positive contribution to the setting. Features of moderate interest. Possible opportunity for secondary interpretation or enhancement of resting / viewing prospects

SV3 View of minor interest and contribution to the setting. Features of little interest without extensive interpretation, except perhaps by specialists. Little opportunity for interpretation or viewing prospects

SV4 View harmful to setting of the Monument. Visually intrusive and/or inappropriate development in the setting. Opportunities for improvements.

Physical Access

A1 Physical access good. Slopes rather than steps, flat surfaces, access from ground level, wide walkways, railings

A2 Some physical access issues. A few steps, occasional access from ground level, reasonably wide walkways, railings in places

A3 Physical access poor. Only for people with full mobility, many steps, no access from ground level except via another section of Walls / Bars, narrow walkways, no railings

Visitor Facilities

VF1 Major visitor facilities provided, such as a museum, toilets, facilities which enhance the Monument

VF2 Some visitor facilities provided, such as seating, litter bins, orientation, signage

VF3 No visitor facilities or facilities provided are intrusive to the setting of the Monument or are damaging to its fabric



Map of Walls showing sections



Condition Survey

Section 1, Chainage No. 0–150

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	Crack next to tower 1. Exposed foundation stones. Few areas of salt movement and small open joints. Damp area after 50m chainage marker and before 75m marker. Significant movement crack on both sides of corner next to Bitchdaughter tower. 1 or 2 individually failed stones.
Internal Masonry	M2	Rusting cramps to insides of crenels. Few cracks through sills to be monitored. Small nib wall for missing railings moving away from wall. Top course of stone moving out in areas. Some vertical cracks through stones. Internal movement cracks next to Bitchdaughter tower corresponding to external cracks but also along joint of wall to tower.
External Mortar	P3	Generally cementitious mortar with a pebble dash effect finish not causing decay but is brittle. Damp area with organic growth along mortar joints just after 50m chainage and before 75m marker. Open joints along movement cracks on either side of corner next to Bitchdaughter tower. Open joints to 2 nd buttress.
Internal Mortar	P3	Cementitious mortar failing and cracking generally. Open joints at low level. Vertical cracks. Cracks along edges of cement mortar where movement has taken place.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few open joints. Buried metal where railings cut off with historic cracks to surrounding stone. Fractured sections of edge stones temporarily repaired with flag stones. Cement repairs to joints. Few cracked stone flags. Few concrete replacements for stones. Wide joint along wall edge. Wide joint along edge detail.
External Ramparts (earth)	R2	Top is low where movement is taking place. generally steep with trees at east end. Trees along road. rotting stump under first corner could cause issues in future?
Railings	RA1	Signs of rust. Locked gate. Cut off sections in edge detail of walkway.



Damp area at 50m chainage



Edge stones moving outwards



External Crack next to Bitchdaughter Tower



Internal crack next to Bitchdaughter Tower



Poor repairs to edge stones of walkway

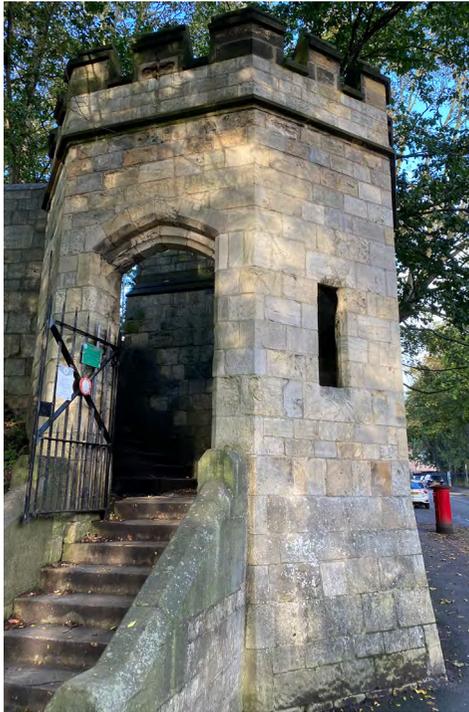


Structural movement to buttress 25m chainage

Section 1, Tower 1

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Ivy growth to north side. Blocked arrow slit to north side. Trees in close proximity to crenulations. 3no. heavily weathered stones. Cut off railings to entrance steps causing cracking to the surrounding stone from rust jacking. Low level wall to north side has 1 movement crack along joints. Crenelated stones appear to be Victorian sandstone.
Internal Masonry	M2	Eroded stones to reveals of windows (assumed from wind erosion ¹). Vegetation growing at high level. 3 rusting fixings on north side. Steps to access walk way in good condition.
External Mortar	P2	Low level mortar missing at base above tarmac pavement. Low level wall to north side has open joints and 1 large movement crack and one fractured quoin from rusting cramp.
Internal Mortar	P1	Few areas of cementitious repair but no obvious accelerated decay. Generally flush and sound.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Entrance steps weathered but fair. Landing is pooling water and could drain water better.
External Ramparts (earth)	R1	Height against stone wall should be monitored. Perhaps has lowered to reveal rough foundation stones?
Internal Ramparts (earth)	R1	Height against stone wall should be monitored. Increased in height from earth motte migrating down hill.
Railings	RA2	Missing iron railings to entrance steps on one side. Modern tube hand rail. Rusting painted railings on north side of steps.
Doors	D1	Black painted metal gate.
Windows	W2	Open openings. See Internal masonry notes above.

¹ Air movement is concentrated through these openings picking up particles that slowly weather the surface (of the perhaps softer stone chosen to be carved for the windows). As the stone surface becomes concave from this process, it creates wind vortexes that increase the rate of erosion. This is the same process as found in deserts.



General view



North side vegetation growth and stone weathering



Rust jacking to removed railings



Weathered reveals

Section 1, Tower 2

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	Major movement cracks all around.
Internal Masonry	M4	Large movement cracks
External Mortar	P4	Open joints along movement cracks. Brittle cementitious mortar (pebble dash).
Internal Mortar	P4	Large movement cracks
Flagstone (walkway)	F4	Large cracks opening up and mortar falling in.
Railings		No railings
Doors		No internal room
Railings	RA2	Missing iron railings to entrance steps on one side. Modern tube hand rail. Rusting painted railings on north side of steps.
Doors	D1	Black painted metal gate.
Windows	W2	Open openings. See Internal masonry notes above.

Section 1, Tower 2



South east elevation major crack



South east major crack under crenel



South elevation cracking



South west side with historic movement

Section 1, Baile Hill

Element	Rating	Comments
Internal Ramparts (earth)	R2	Circular mound (motte). Mature sycamore trees cover the slope holding the ground together. Rotten timbers believed to be for retaining. Low retaining stone walls at pavement side. Earth from mound is beginning to go over the top of the wall. Flat grass covered top to mound with clearing within the trees. Mud paths give access to the top. No direct access (locked gate and rotten timber steps) to or from the wall walkway although well used as a short cut by locals.
Railings	RA1	1.8m grey painted railings with sharp finials separate the motte from the wall walkway.
Features		Has an archaeology survey been carried out?

Section 1, Baile Hill



Earth migration over perimeter wall



General view

Section 2, Tower 3: Bitchdaughter Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Fair condition. Few fractured stones. Movement cracks to joints with wall on either side
Internal Masonry	M2	Weathered in controlled way. Cracked sill stones.
External Mortar	P3	Cementitious mortar and movement cracks to joints with neighbouring walls.
Internal Mortar	P1	Cementitious but in good condition.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few failed joints.
Railings		No railings.
Doors	D4	Rotten thick planked timber door. Metal cage door over. Both doors broken with ply door over for security.
Windows		No windows
Ceiling	C3	Very wet stone barrel vaulted ceiling.
Internal Walls	I2	Wet stone walls assumed to be causing accelerated decay mechanisms.
Internal Floors	FL3	Earth floor with debris.
Features	FE1	Stone fire place in north west corner. No accelerated decay mechanisms.

Section 2, Tower 3: Bitchdaughter Tower



Cracking to east junction with wall



Entrance with cracked lintel



General external view



General walkway platform



Rotting timber door



Saturated internal room

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	20 th century foundations/ under pinning at Micklegate Bar end. Bulging generally along wall, few historic brick repairs. Bulging and structural movement specifically to buttress just south of tree closest to wall near tower 10.
Internal Masonry	M2	Vertical movement cracks every 100m or so causing areas of open joints. Large areas of brick construction with stone foundations assumed to be Victorian interventions to infill between areas of stone landings and steps. Movement cracks between different constructions forming. Few spalling and fractured stones. Cornice to edge of walkway has a number of spalling stones. Cracked new edge stone to Dewsbury Terrace north end. Areas where the top two courses of stones under the edge of the walkway are moving outwards causing the brittle mortar joints to fail.
External Mortar	P2	Generally brittle cementitious mortar with large aggregate. Few areas of open joints. Failed cementitious mortar to buttress that has structural movement near Tower 10.
Internal Mortar	P2	Few areas of open joints along above walkway level to the parapet wall. Generally brittle cementitious mortar. Crack generally under walkway edge stones with brittle cementitious mortar. Vegetation growth within open and failed joints. Areas where the top two courses of stones under the edge of the walkway are moving outwards causing the brittle mortar joints to fail.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Crack along junction between flag stones and parapet wall. Few cracks between flag stones and edge stones. Few open or failing perpend joints.
Internal Ramparts (earth)	R3	Collapsed section of rampart between tower 7 and 8.
Railings		No railings generally. See Victoria Bar notes where there are railings.

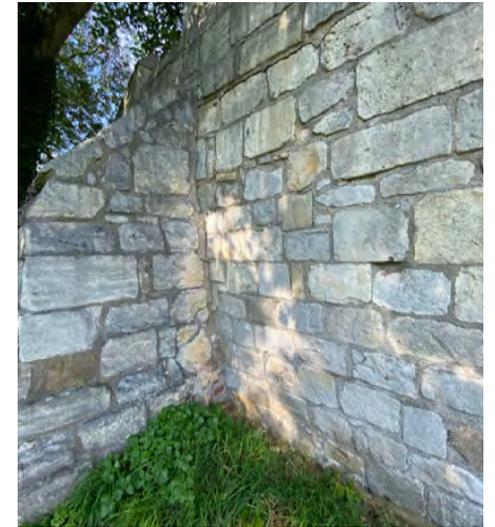
Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650



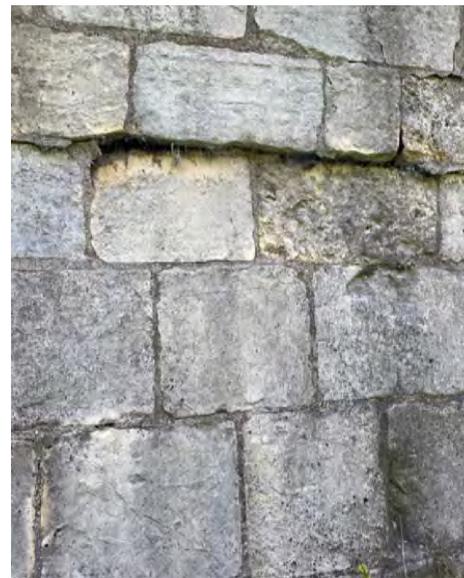
Intermittent brick infill between stone structures



Mortar joint below edges stones moving outwards



Structural movement to buttress on 560 chainage



Top course of stones below walkway are moving outwards



Vertical cracks through infill structure

Section 3, Tower 4

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair Condition.
Internal Masonry	M2	Cracks to sills of crenels.
External Mortar	P2	Open joints to south elevation.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open mortar joints around door and surrounding stone. Brittle cement mortar is failing.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few open joints.
Railings		No railings
Doors	D2	Rusting painted square section metal gate. Locked. Small opening with new lintel stone.
Ceiling	C2	Exposed modern concrete slab. Condition good but historically detracts and impacts the significance.
Internal Walls	I1	Stone in fair condition. Areas appear to be recently rebuilt. Some salt movement.
Internal Floors	FL1	Earth and stone floor is dry.
Features	FE2	Blocked openings assumed to be from concrete slab installation.

Section 3, Tower 4



External elevation



Interior with concrete ceiling



Small locked entrance



Walkway

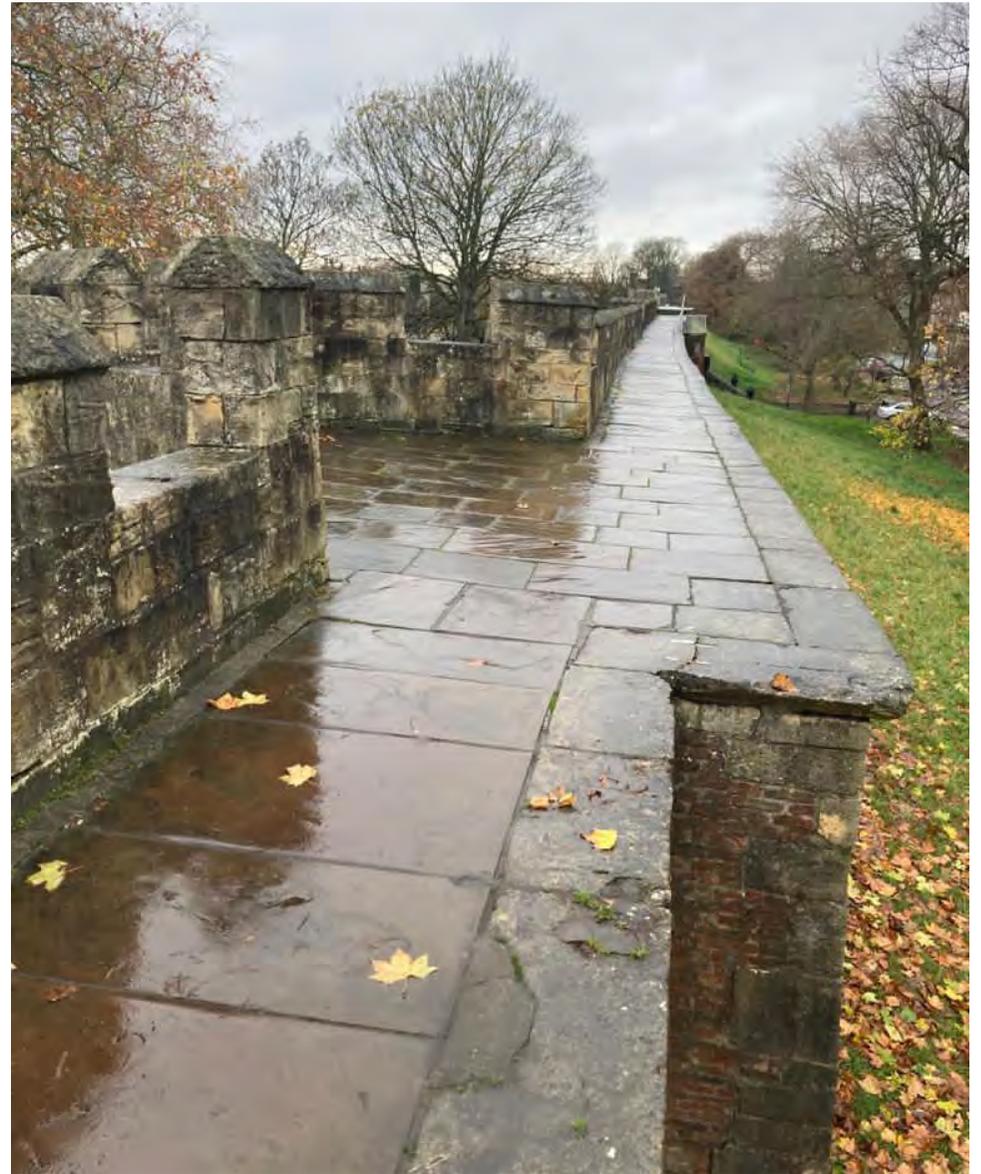
Section 3, Tower 5

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Movement crack to north elevation.
Internal Masonry	M2	Large movement crack is fracturing stones below walkway.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Brittle cementitious mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Fair condition. Brittle cementitious mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	As Section 3 notes
Railings		No railings
Interior		No internal room, infilled

Section 3, Tower 5



External view with cracks to north eastern face



Walkway with movement cracks below

Section 3, Tower 6

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
Internal Masonry	M2	Few cracked corners to stones.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Brittle cementitious mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cement mortar. Movement cracks along mortar joints.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	As Section 3 notes.
Railings		No railings.
Interior.		No interior.

Section 3, Tower 6



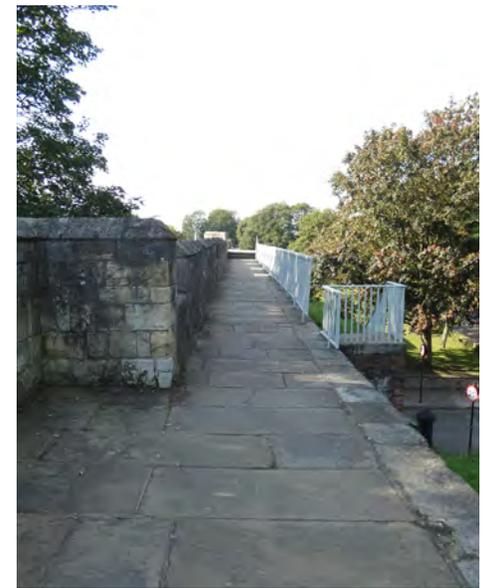
External elevation 1



Proximity of trees and Victoria Bar



Walkway and crenels



Walkway level

Section 3, Victoria Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair condition. See condition of arches below.
Internal Masonry	M2	Brick structure for steps on south side. Edges of multiple steps have cracked from metal railings expanding. Vegetation and moss growth over arches below walkway caused by water ingress and saturated masonry. See condition of arches below.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. See condition of arches below.
Internal Mortar	P2	Salt movement under brick steps. Cement mortar repairs at low level in arches. See condition of arches below.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	As Section 3 notes
Railings	RA3	Internal Railings: Modern railings with square top along walkway. Spikes to stone copings at low level of staircase give an aggressive atmosphere to the Bar and causing damage to stones. Historic railings at low level with spikes. Modern round handrail to internal face. External Railings: metal railings to northern side have almost lost all their paint finish and are rusting with 2 missing and 2 broken spindles.
Door	RO2	Metal gate's black paint finish has failed and is rusting.
Features	FE3	Arches: salt movement at high level from water ingress. Few fracturing stones. Algae growth at low level. Cracks through southern arch. Cracks to exterior of northern pier which has 5 cracked stones.

Section 3, Victoria Bar



Cracks along stone arches



Fractured stones to archway piers



Missing railings



Mix of structures and railings



Rust jacking



Saturated structure and organic growth

Section 3, Tower 7: Sadler Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Fair condition. Few individually eroding stones. Two spalling stones to arrow slits.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition. Salt movement staining.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Cement pebble dash mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Brittle cement mortar with cracks and vegetation.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Recently replaced edge stones in cement mortar have moved out by 2cm. Wide cracking joints. Few broken corners to flags.
Railings		No railings
Doors	D2	Rusting metal gate. Locked. Netting to inside face for bees.
Windows	W1	Vertical iron bars. Otherwise open.
Ceiling	C2	Stone barrel vaulted ceiling. Salts showing water ingress.
Internal Walls	I1	Exposed stone in good condition.
Internal Floors	FL1	Gravel finish. Dry. Bee hive.
Features	FE1	Corner fireplace. Assume erosion within chimney due to evidence of stone dust pile on floor.

Section 3, Tower 7: Sadler Tower



Eastern steps and railings



Entrance door with metal cage door



External elevation



Fireplace



Steel lintel to embrasure



Walkway

Section 3, Tower 8

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
Internal Masonry	M2	Eroding and fractured sills to crenels.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Cement pebble dash.
Internal Mortar	P2	Fair condition. Open joints at base and walkway.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Fair condition.
Railings		No railings
Doors	D2	Rusting metal gate. Locked. Small low opening. New stone lintel.
Windows		None.
Ceiling	C2	Modern exposed concrete slab.
Internal Walls	I2	Damp stones with salt movement. Small thin room.
Internal Floors	FL3	Full of debris. New stone steps in place.
Features		None.

Section 3, Tower 8



Concrete ceiling



Front elevation



External elevation



Rusting metal cage door, small internal area with no embrasures



Small locked entrance



Walkway level

Section 3, Tower 9

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair condition. Rounded tower with two crenels and 3 arrow slits. Northern arrow slit built across at low level.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition. SS metal bars to crenels due to low sills.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cementitious mortar. Movement to edge stones of walkway failing to top mortar joint under the walkway.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Steps up from general walkway to access landing of tower. Cracking joints to flagstones. Fractures and repairs to edge stones. Crack along joint to edge stones.
Railings		No railings
Doors	D2	Rusting metal cage door. Locked. New stone lintel over.
Windows	W2	Stone embrasures to arrow slits and pointed gothic arches internally. See Features below for more details. One blocked with Perspex. Other open. Northern reveal looks like a crack but appears to have been built across at some point.
Ceiling	C2	Exposed modern concrete slab.
Internal Walls	I2	Exposed stone with gothic detailing to window reveals. Sulphuric crust staining. Damaged and eroding stones to embrasures.
Internal Floors	FL1	Concrete floor covered in debris. Dry.
Features	FE3	Gothic arch details to heads of embrasures have been lost to concrete slab installation (assumed).

Section 3, Tower 9



Concrete ceiling



Eastern approach



Entrance door



External view



Metal bars to crenels



Walkway platform

Section 3, Tower 10

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Fair condition. No distinct projection.
Internal Masonry	M2	Cracks to sills of crenels.
External Mortar	P1	Cement mortar. Fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open joints at low level. Cement mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Cracks along joint to external edge stones. Few open joints. Cement mortar.
Railings		No railings
Interior		No interior

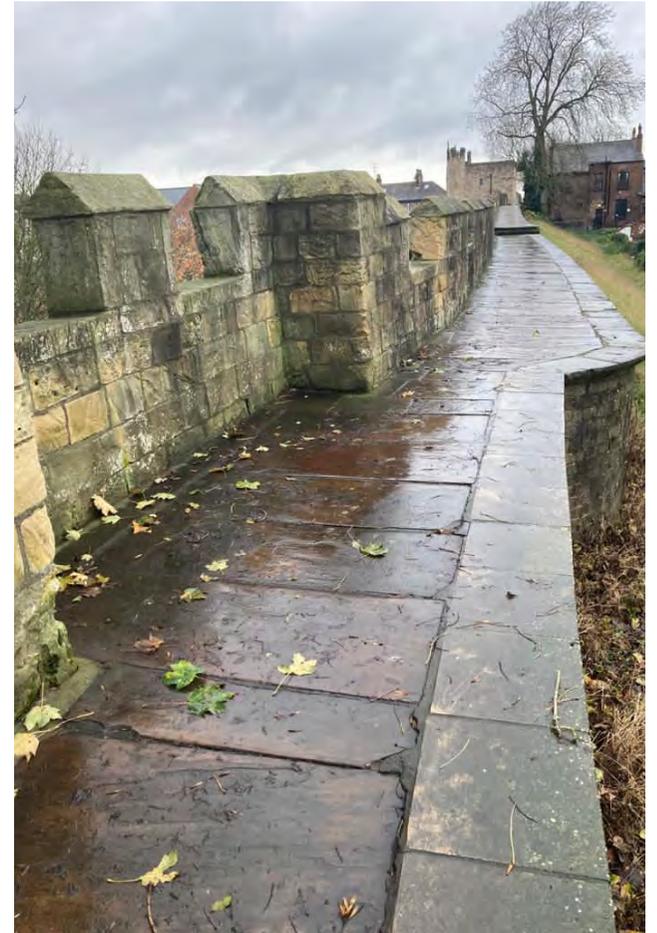
Section 3, Tower 10



External view



Pinch point to walkway



Walkway

Section 3, Tower 11

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	2 number spalling arrow slits to round tower at bottom end of car park. Crack to south of tower through mortar joints.
Internal Masonry	M2	Cracks to sills of crenels. Fair condition.
External Mortar	P1	Cementitious mortar. Fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cementitious pebble dash mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Joints have failed with small vegetation growth retaining water. Large crack along edge stone joint.
Railings		No railings.
Doors	D2	Rusting metal gate. Locked. Lintel southern face has spalled and fallen away.
Windows	W1	Open arrow slits. Northern embrasure has been built across.
Ceiling	C2	Exposed modern concrete slab.
Internal Walls	I1	Exposed stone. Areas of masonry missing.
Internal Floors	FL1	Rough concrete with debris and 1 step.
Features	FE3	Gothic arches to embrasures are missing the tops of the arches, assumed to be removed during installation of concrete walkway construction above.

Section 3, Tower 11



Concrete ceiling



Crenels



External entrance with fractured lintel



External view



Missing masonry details to embrasures



Walkway steps to platform

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	South Elevation: vegetation growth on top of retaining wall (opportunity area). South West Elevation: recently repaired. Metal stitches at high level. Plastic monitoring devices to surface. Open joints at ground level. Weathering stones as expected. North West Elevation: large movement crack, open voids, open joints and failed cement pointing to wall beyond arches and including the first buttress causing internal cracking and movement. Cracks to stones on pier between northern arches.
Internal Masonry	M2	Ground Level: Algae growth at low level. Eroding stones to base of arches. Sulphuric crust to sheltered stone from car traffic. Salt movement caused by water movement to exposed soffits of the northern two arches on north side. Crack to soffit of north central arch. Crack to soffit of northern most arch. Central high level section has been cleaned during recent works. Stones to northern step's cheek wall are fracturing. Wall next to Gibbons bar on south side of road is damp with algae growth with open joints, cement mortar and salt movement caused by failed asphalt flat roof above with blocked down pipe. Walkway level: north side semi circular wall has significant movement cracks with fractured stones that have recently been repaired. Stone flanching below parapet wall on north side. 2 sets of steps in fair condition. Crack over northern arches at walkway level from crenulation down to northern entrance to tower at walkway level. south side stone flanching under parapet has fractured allowing mature vegetation growth in joints and cracks.
External Mortar	P2	Open joints to north side beyond arches causing internal movement cracks. Low level joints open at road level.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few open joints. Generally fair condition. Potentially new RWP to south walkway level to be considered to control the movement of water.
Railings	RA2	Round section handrail to inner walls. Painted Victorian railings rusting and causing stones to fracture beneath.
Roof	RO2	2 lead gutters on either side of pitched Westmorland slate roof on timber fibreboard sarking sheet boards. Metal fitch plates to timber trusses beneath. New Douglas fir purlins to west side. New SS horizontal rod braces at either end. Vent through roof at south east corner. Plastic vents in slates. Timber access ladders, one broken and slipped.

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Doors	D2	Timber plank and metal stud doors. External timber door is panelled on south west side. Metal gates in fair condition. Gate to Gibbons flat roof in poor condition with missing sections and lock.
Windows	W2	Perspex glass is 'milking'. Perspex held in place by failed mastic and rusting nails. Some Perspex are very loose. Rusting vertical bars to exterior. Glass leaded lights to east elevation. Timber doors to west elevation has PIR insulation to interior.
Ceiling	C1	Exposed timber beams and boards.
Internal Walls	I3	Exposed stone. Mortar and stone in fair condition generally. West elevation has movement cracks from west gable going down around window reveals to arches below. Exposed cables running up wall. Crack to south west window reveal corner and north west corner. North west window has movement crack to second floor. High level cracks continue down to first floor.
Internal Floors	FL1	Modern oak floor or seagrass carpet. Modern stair to west elevation.
Features	FE1	External stone coats of arms have recently been redecorated. Fake fire place to second floor. Corner niches to first and third floors within turrets. Section of portcullis to first floor.

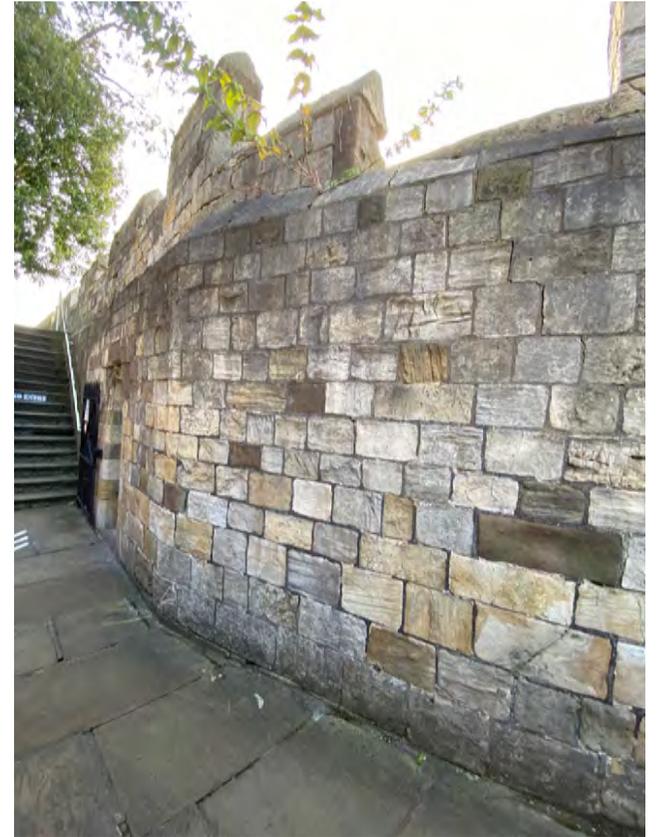
Section 4, Micklegate Bar



Crack along pedestrian archway



Crack to wall north of Bar



Cracks to wall south of Bar

Section 4, Micklegate Bar



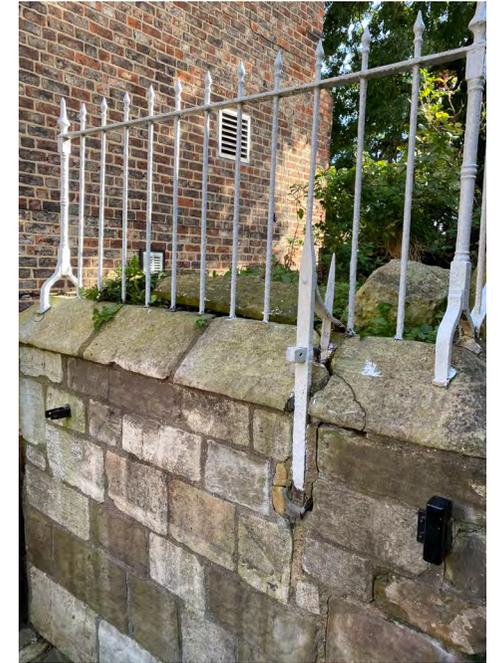
Cracks within turrets



Failed asphalt roof next to eastern stair



Internal cracking around windows with cloudy Perspex



Rust jacking from railings

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	Open joints to first buttress from Micklegate bar showing signs of movement. Most to all buttresses on wall between Tofts Tower (Tower 13) and Micklegate Bar have large movement cracks running through them vertically. The buttresses at the Tofts Tower end are leaning out dramatically. There are also a number of vertical cracks in the wall in this area. 1 number eroded sill to crenel south of Tower 12. Stones to railway arch are eroding and losing their sectional depth caused by water tracking down through the structure or down the wall faces. 1 number eroding stone over railway arch. Corroding metal fixings at low level at base of railway arch. Stone doorway reveal and pointed arch between railway arches is heavily eroded. Rusting fixings at high level above doorway. Western road arch (built 1874 chainage 1120-1150) has 7no. stones that have lost all or some of their faces caused by a concentration of water to the eastern top corner causing metal cramps to corrode and expand. Stones eroding around movement crack east of western road arch (Built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Historic movement crack west of western road arch (Built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Buttress on 1000m chainage has evidence of movement with slipped footing stone. Movement crack east of buttress between Tower 15 and 16. Small buttress east of Tower 15 has significant movement cracks. Movement crack east of old Victorian signal box.
Internal Masonry	M3	Walkway Level: Low sills to crenels. Fractures to stone sills. Rusting fixings in sills. Few heavily weathering stones. From Barker Tower end: Open joints to parapet between 1100 to 1200 chainage or just south of Tower 17. East side of east road arch (built in 1876 chainage 1200-1250) has area of damp in middle of wall from unknown source. Spalling surface of stone to road arches. West side of east road arch's (built in 1876 chainage 1200-1250) west corner under repair with plastic sheeting covering missing stones. Top course under walkway moving out. Weathered quoins to stair next to western road arch (Built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Salt movement and weathering to reveals of arches caused by water movement from open flags above. Crack through edge stone at start of railings next to Tower 17. Leaking water from wall to west of Tower 17, assumed to be caused by concentration of water from concrete walkway infill. From Micklegate Bar end: Crack next to Micklegate Bar from walkway to rampart (at top of stair). Another crack 10m on from stair. Low level crack another 10m on. 2 number weathered stones under walkway another 5m on. Areas of open joints over railway arches. Pedestrian door between two railway arches has a heavily eroded stone reveal. Staining from water running down face of stone caused by lack of stone drip on the edge stones of the walkway. Two eroding stones over western railway arch under walkway over key stone to arch.

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Element	Rating	Comments
External Mortar	P3	Buttress on chainage 1300 has open and cementitious mortar joints. Open mortar joints to east of eastern road arch. open joints over eastern road arch (built in 1876 chainage 1200-1250). Area of failing mortar joints caused by a concentration of water at 1200m chainage between buttresses. Section of severely leaning buttresses on 1200m chainage but appears to be in a stable condition. Open movement crack just east of western road arch. high level open joints above the same area. open joints over western road arch and to west of western road arch (built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Open joints to historic movement crack to west of western road arch (built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Large area of open joints at chainage 1300m between Tower 17 and western road arch (built 1874 chainage 1120-1150). Corner between Towers 16 and 15 has weak area of stone with historic movement crack. In same area continuous perpend joints from crenel sills concentrate water to wash out mortar joints. Buttress on 1000m chainage has evidence of movement with open joints. Open joints under exposed perpend joints to crenel sills. Open joints at base of wall at rampart level east of Tower 14. Most to all buttresses from Tofts Tower to Micklegate Bar have significant movement cracks causing open joints.
Internal Mortar	P3	cementitious mortar. few areas of open joints at base of parapet level. open joints at rampart level. joint under walkway edge stone has failed or is open. top course of stone under walkway from tower 12 to Tofts tower has been repaired but areas are beginning to fail.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Failing joint along junction between flag stones and parapet wall. Cracking joint to edge stones of walkway. Pinch point to width of walkway between Tower 12 and 13. Pinch points at Tower 14. Numerous replacement edge stones in different details and types of stone.
Internal Ramparts (earth)		Grave stone or sign post near tower 16.
Railings	RA2	Recently redecorated Victorian style railings from Micklegate to Tofts Tower. Modern square edged railings from Tofts Tower (Tower 13) to railway arch. Modern railing's paint is failing allowing metal to rust. Railings over road arches showing signs of rust with paint failing. Few missing finials.

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300



Dramatic leaning of wall east of Tofts Tower



Heavily weathered stones to Victorian pedestrian arch between railway arches



Spalling stone from rust jacking from concentrated water



Structural movement to buttress between Tower 15 and 16



Structural movement to buttress next to Tofts Tower



Structural movement to buttresses between Micklegate Bar and Tofts Tower

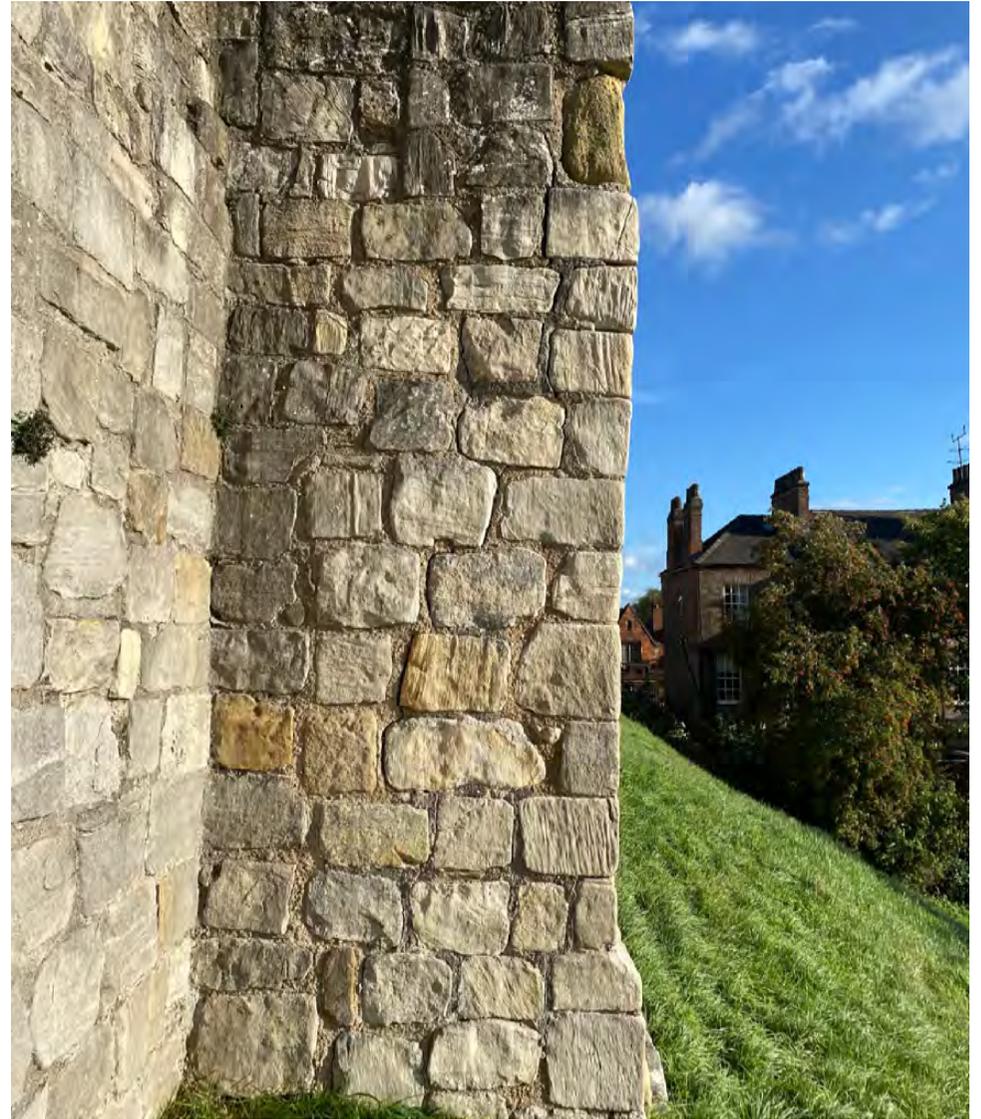
Section 5, Tower 12

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Movement crack to north west and south east sides of tower running vertically top to bottom.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
External Mortar	P3	Large movement crack to north west side along mortar joints.
Internal Mortar	P2	Fair condition. Large movement crack to northern side at parapet level. Failing mortar to vertical joint below walkway.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Fair condition with good fall.
Railings	RA1	In good condition. Victorian style railings.
Interior		No interior

Section 5, Tower 12



Eastern elevation

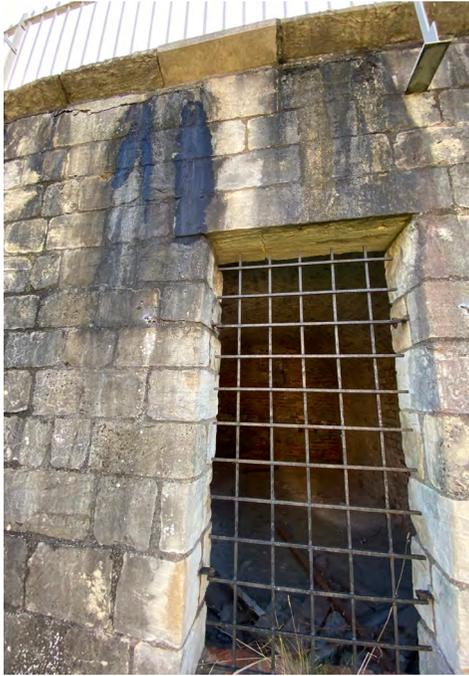


Western elevation vertical crack

Section 5, Tofts Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Movement cracks to wall north east of tower.
Internal Masonry	M2	Movement crack to northern side and south side of tower projection. Historic metal fixings within crenels from Tofts Tower to railway arch.
External Mortar	P3	Movement cracks to wall north east of tower. Movement cracks to junction between tower and walls on both sides of tower. Failing mortar to section of wall south of tower.
Internal Mortar	P3	Movement joints have opened with brittle cementitious mortar. Few open joints where brittle mortar has fallen away. Failed cement mortar below walkway down to rampart level, signs of historic movement. Top course below walkway has failed. Weep hole of concentrated water from walkway above over door.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Large open area of flagstones. Failing joints with moss growth allowing water to be retained within structure below.
Railings	RA1	Victorian style railings in good condition.
Doors	D2	Rusting metal gate, in square section metal. Locked.
Windows		no windows or embrasures
Ceiling	C2	Eroding brick barrel vaulted arch. Suffering from water ingress from open flagstones above. Lime wash falling away.
Internal Walls	I2	Brick walls of varying ages. Suffering from water ingress, algae growth and salt movement.
Internal Floors	FL2	Brick floor, covered in debris.
Features		One blocked opening at far end.

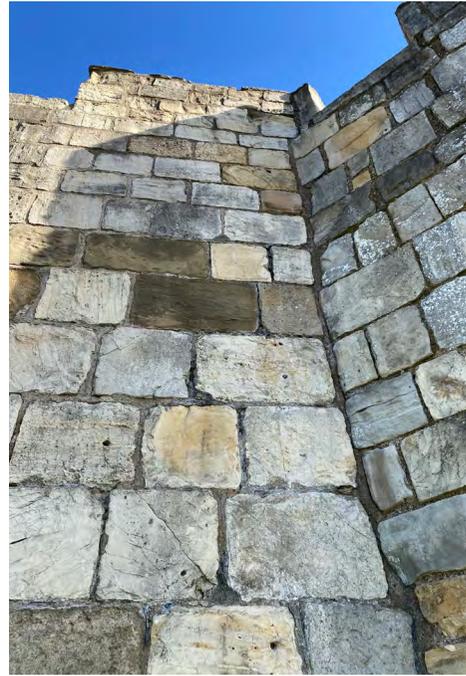
Section 5, Tofts Tower



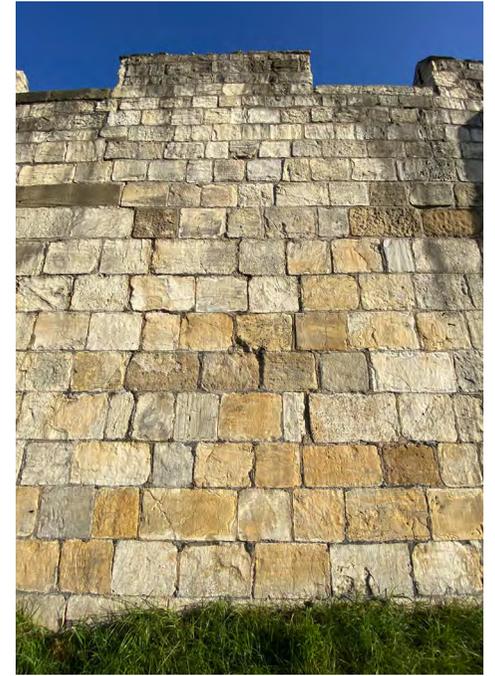
Entrance door with weeping water above



Interior



South eastern elevation vertical crack



Vertical crack to south west elevation

Section 5, Tower 14

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Few holes in stone. Generally fair condition
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
External Mortar	P1	Cementitious mortar in fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Fair condition. Open joints to north east side on walkway level.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few cracks to joints. Rusting removed historic railings in edge stones.
Railings	RA3	Modern railings rusting.
Interior		No interior

Section 5, Tower 14



North west elevation open joints at low level

Section 5, Tower 15

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Buttress to north eastern side of Tower. Significant movement crack to south west side. See comments under windows below.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
External Mortar	P2	Failing brittle cement mortar. areas of open joints and vegetation growth.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cementitious mortar. Open joints at corners and base of parapet.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Few cracks to joints.
Railings		No railings
Windows	W2	Arrow slits blocked by bricks internally holding up stone flags above. Cavities filled with debris. Large stone missing from western arrow slit.

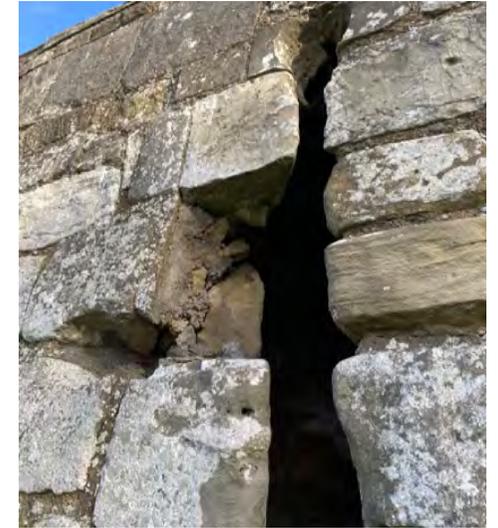
Section 5, Tower 15



Brick structure to interior



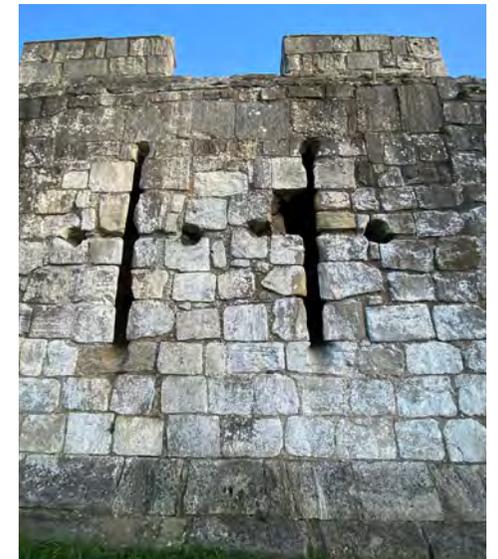
Buttress to north west side



Missing stones to arrow slits



Significant movement crack to south west elevation

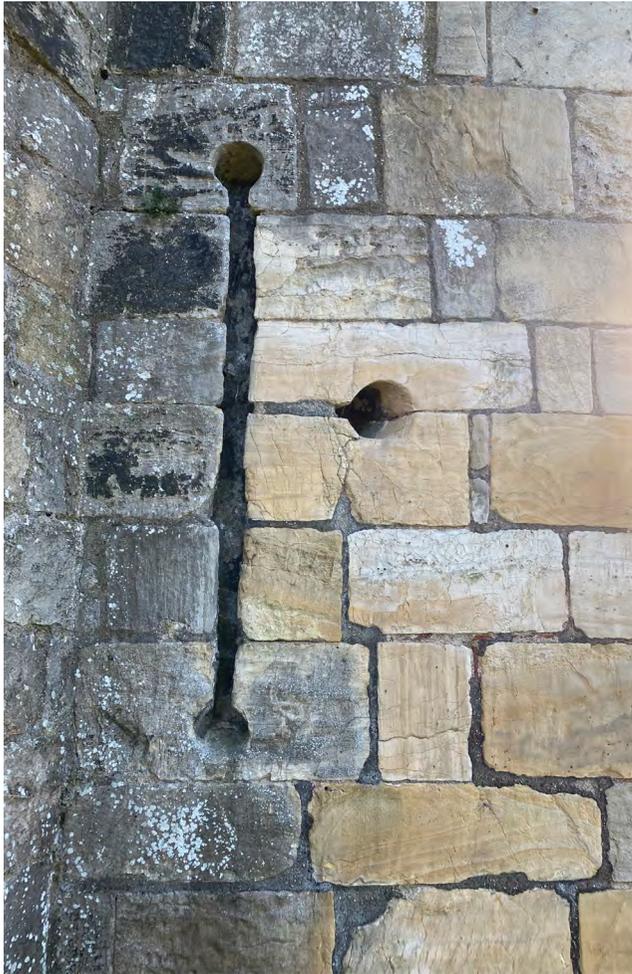


West elevation

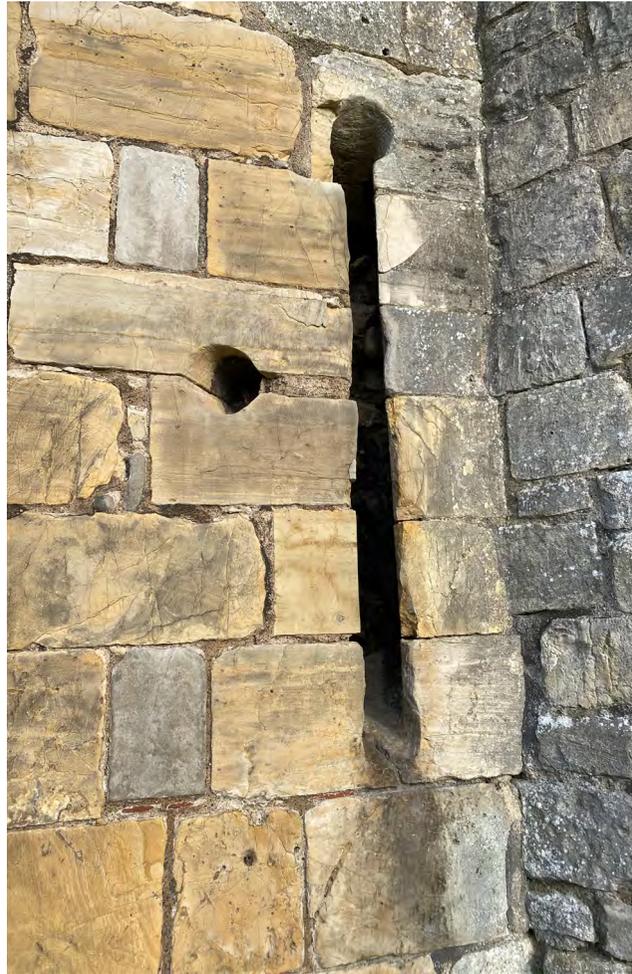
Section 5, Tower 16

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	See comments under windows below. Few fractured stones generally.
Internal Masonry	M2	Few cracks through stones. Failed cementitious mortar joints around doorway below walkway.
External Mortar	P2	Dark cement repairs to areas.
Internal Mortar	P2	Failing mortar to south side. Movement crack to west side. Cement mortar used for repairs.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Cracks to mortar joints. Cracks to stone flags.
Railings		No railings.
Doors	D1	Metal gate to door way rusting with vegetation.
Windows	W2	Open arrow slits, well weathered. Sections of arrow slits are blocked with brick and mortar. Sections of stone missing from profile of arrow slits.
Ceiling	C2	Brick vault with surface salts from water ingress.
Internal Walls	I2	Brick rebuilding. Sulphuric crust to stone walls with cement mortar.
Internal Floors	FL2	Earth floor with debris.
Features		One blocked opening at far end.

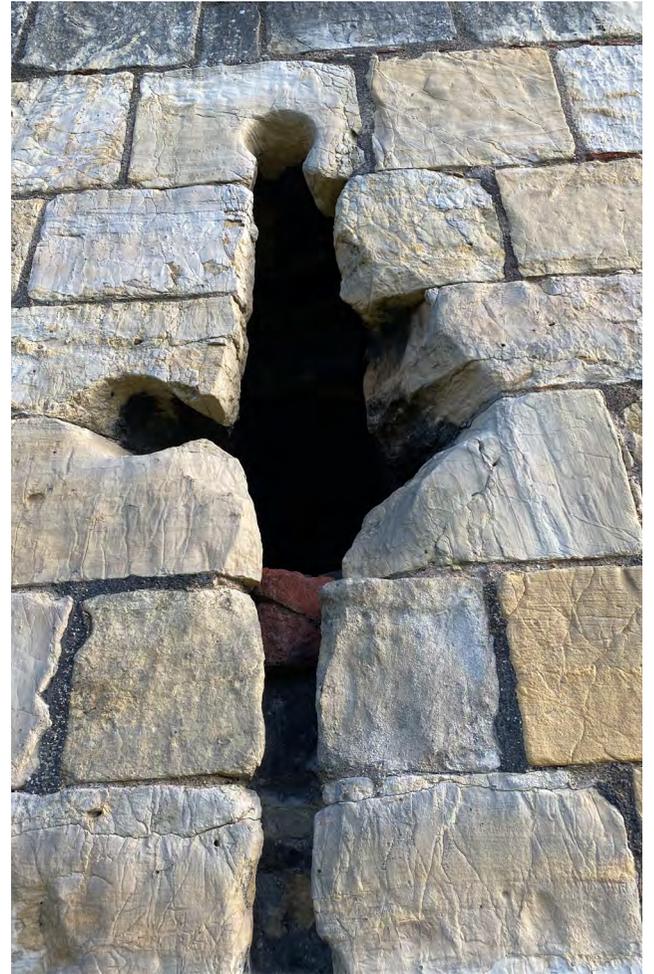
Section 5, Tower 16



North arrow slit



South arrow slit

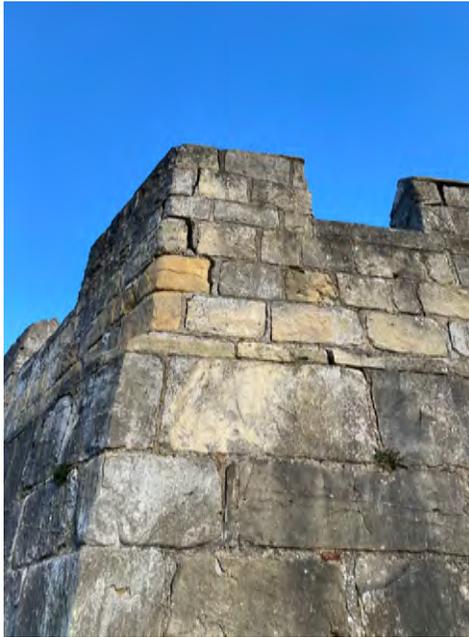


West arrow slit

Section 5, Tower 17

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	Significant movement cracks to either side of tower with cracked stones. Major crack to western corner of parapet, 20-50mm crack.
Internal Masonry	M3	Movement crack to either side of projections. Fractures through stones. Movement crack to east side of tower.
External Mortar	P4	Movement cracks either side of tower with large areas of open joints at high and low level. Recent repointing at low level on either side of tower. Open joints under copings on west side.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open perpend joints to copings. Open joints along movement cracks.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Cracks to joints. Cracks through flags. Failing joint along edge stones. Two loose flags to east side.
Railings		No railings
Interior		No interior

Section 5, Tower 17



Crack to corner of tower



Open joints to southern wall connection



Open joints to wall north of tower



Structural cracks to south west elevation

Section 6, Barker Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Two eroded stones to base of both piers to road arch. Algae growth in same location caused by tarmac holding water in stone. Soffit of arch has surface salts.
Internal Masonry	M2	Salt movement at eastern end of arches from water saturation at high level. Fractured stones at base of arch piers. Low level metal fixings at base of stairs. The tower sits within the flooding river with low level stones permanently in a cycle of water saturation.
External Mortar	P2	Open joints at base of piers to road arches.
Internal Mortar	P2	Areas of shallow brittle cement mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Steps down to the water show scares from metal cramps that are now missing and are no longer in line which suggest that the steps have moved. Large crack through landing flags. Stone steps up to tower entrance have fractured from rusting railing spindles.
Railings	RA2	Rusting circular handrail to wall stairs. Rusting handrail to tower external stair.
Roof	RO2	Clay tiles, covered with moss growth. Timber barge boards beginning to rot. Number of cracked and slipped tiles.
Doors	D1	Lower timber door in fair condition. First floor the same and in good condition.
Windows	W2	First Floor: Fixed and Yorkshire sash windows. Ground floor openings have metal mesh grilles within gothic arch reveals.
Ceiling	C1	New exposed oak structure at ground level. First floor exposed timber roof structure, painted white plaster between rafters.
Internal Walls	I1	Exposed stone walls in good condition. Ground floor low level shows signs of algae growth but generally dry.
Internal Floors	FL1	Stone flag floor at ground floor. New oak boards under stone flags at first floor.
Services	S3	No running water. Water currently collected from another site and carried into the tower. Floods once or twice a year.
Features	FE1	Fireplace at ground floor. No running water! Floods once or twice a year.

Section 6, Barker Tower



Fractured stones to steps from rust jacking to railings



Ground floor fireplace and windows



Moss growth and missing tiles to roof



Movement to steps to river with missing cramps



Roof over road arch



Water saturation to stones of road arch

Section 7, Lendal Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
Not Surveyed for Condition		

Section 7, Chainage no. 1350 -1400

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Stone wall between Gate House and Terrace Houses: Eroding copings. Shelf to stone parapet wall collecting water and enabling vegetation growth. Merlons at top of slope in poor condition (half section historically lost) with eroding stone and vegetation growth. Thick vegetation growth over wall up slope, wall covered in ivy.
Internal Masonry	M3	Stone wall between Gate House and Terrace Houses: mature vegetation growth over entrance to Star Inn (gated brick tunnel). Vegetation growth out of walkway construction. Broken sections of chamfered string courses. Masonry at gate house end: movement cracks to buttresses. Stones moving to tops of buttresses from mature vegetation. Mature vegetation growth at walkway level and below. Few stones being heaved and fractured by vegetation jacking.
External Mortar	P2	Failed cement mortar. Open joints and vegetation growth. Low level open joints.
Internal Mortar	P4	Open and washed out joints at low level. Failing cement mortar to horizontal shelves, tops of buttresses and walkway allowing vegetation to take hold and cause further movement to surrounding stones. Gate house end: failed cementitious mortar to buttresses and stone walls. open joints at base of buttresses with movement cracks going up buttresses. Open joints to wall allowing vegetation growth. Vegetation causing stones to move on upward facing surfaces. Joint below walkway has failed (cement mortar).
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	No access, gate locked. Branches and debris on steps. Edge stone to walkway does not have a drip detail.
Railings	RA2	Railings rusting.

Section 7, Chainage no. 1350 -1400

Element	Rating	Comments
Doors	D1	Timber gates to Star Inn.
Features	FE2	Brick lined arch to Star Inn. Salt movement. Cement render coming away. Platform over arch covered in ivy with railings. Unknown extent or construction - should be cleared and investigated.

Section 7, Chainage no. 1350 -1400



External wall with horizontal ledge



Fractured stones allowing vegetation growth



General open joints and vegetation growth



Missing section of merlon



Vegetation jacking



Vegetation to walkway

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	From St Leonards: South east end stones are in a fair condition. Roman brick string course heavily eroded. Heavy salt crust to surface from water moving through the structure. Vegetation and algae growth at high level. North of Multangular tower: vegetation at high level. Heavily eroded coping stones at high level. Movement cracks to bases of buttresses. Movement crack to north of northern buttress. Soil has eroded from under concrete plinth at base of wall. Kings Manor side: exposed rubble core to end of wall showing construction in cross section. Vegetation growth at low level and small areas at high level. Few fractured stones. Salt movement to surface. Most beautiful stretch of wall in terms of patina is to be found here but has no encouraged public access.
Internal Masonry	M3	From St Leonards: Exposed rubble core is very fragile with the wall being made up of small stones within a thick mortar mix and exposed top. Small stones easily fall away from the wall showing evidence of an active state of decay and collapse. Extensive vegetation growth to top. Gravel boarder at base of wall. Metal bars within window openings have a hard cementitious sill and apron. Other window and door openings are filled in with masonry suffering from salt movement. Section of wall north of Multiangular Tower: has a number of scars with exposed rubble cores. Section north of multiangular tower is full height with parapet. 1960s cobbling detracts from the authenticity of the wall. inner sections of rubble walls have moss and vegetation growth. Exhibition square Roman wall: extensive moss and vegetation growth. evidence of active collapse and cementitious mortar.
External Mortar	P3	From St Leonards: brittle 1960s cementitious mortar. North of multiangular tower: open joints at high level allowing vegetation growth. Hard cement mortar failing at base. Hard cement mortar next to railing fence causing stones to erode faster. Kings Manor area: salt movement to surface causing mortar surface to fail as indented. Significant area of open joints next to sycamore tree. Mortar from sycamore tree to metal railings is very dark and failing at surface from water movement as it should. A few areas of cement mortar now left projecting out from surrounding weathered stones.
Internal Mortar	P3	South of Multangular Tower: is a low exposed rubble wall with a mix of soft lime mortar with areas of harder cementitious mortar in state of active erosion. Section north of multiangular tower has failing 1960s mortar. Hard cement around modern cobbles. Low inner rubble walls has failed cement mortar with open cavities trapping water and washing out lime mortar internally. General vegetation growth to this section.

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Element	Rating	Comments
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	1960s flag stone walkways with cobbles detract from the authenticity of the place. Access to Anglian Tower could be improved with seating and removing slopped paving slabs to be more inviting.
Railings	RA2	Circular section handrails detract from the authenticity.

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600



Dark cement mortar north of Multiangular tower



Erosion from under concrete footings



Exposed rubble wall actively falling away and eroding south of multiangular tower



Open joints to merlon opposite Kings Manor



Structural movement to buttresses



Vegetation growth and failing cementitious mortar to exposed Roman walls

Section 8, Multangular Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Heavily weathered brick string course. Moss growth to rubble plinth. Eroding stones to arrow slits. Stone water spout at high level appears to be heavily eroded. Vegetation growth at high level. Exposed rubble flaunching on north side holding moisture and plant growth.
Internal Masonry	M2	Below brick course stone is in good condition. Brick course has a number of heavily eroded bricks. Above the brick string course there is movement adjacent to exposed areas of rubble core. Open core above gothic arches and arrow slits is allowing vegetation growth.
External Mortar	P2	Generally sound, failing cementitious repairs to north side and junction with wall. Open joints at low level on north side.
Internal Mortar	P2	Minor areas of eroding mortar below the brick string course. Fragile mortar to exposed rubble areas allowing vegetation growth. Movement cracks to north junction with wall allowing vegetation growth. Flaunching and top course of stones under flaunching has failed cement mortar providing open joints. Upper section of flaunching is also failing allowing vegetation growth.
Flagstone (walkway)		No walkway.
Railings		No railings.
Doors	D2	Rusting metal gate. Not open.
Windows	W2	Eroding stones to open arrow slits.

Section 8, Multangular Tower



Failing cementitious mortar to north junction



Open joints at low level externally



South internal corner with open core masonry



Vegetation growth from flanching level



Vegetation growth



Vegetation jacking and areas of masonry falling away

Section 8, St Leonard's

Element	Rating	Comments
Masonry	M3	North West Elevation: 2 number down pipes. Over flowing down pipes saturating surrounding stones with vegetation growth. Movement crack at high level above undercroft door with fractured surrounding stones. Scares to ashlar walls expose rubble core to weather. North gable: eroding stones to window arch reveals, eroding stones to jambs of windows. Moss and vegetation growth. Scares from demolished walls. Vegetation growth within horizontal surfaces. East elevation: asphalt visible. Movement cracks below northern most first floor window. Movement crack showing signs of gable rotating northwards. Street elevation: crack to southern blind window. Vegetation growth. New bus stop. South elevation: open joints to foundations under piers. Vegetation growth at high level. Eroding stones to piers. Roof level internally: Crack in masonry between two south facing side windows. Heavily eroded stones to north east window arches. areas of brittle cement mortar are failing. missing stone tracery to window reveals exposing rubble core.
Mortar	P3	Some open joints where brittle cementitious mortar has fallen away. Open joints at low level. East elevation: open joints below northern first floor window with vegetation growth. Cementitious mortar generally. Open joints to south of southern most first floor window.
Railings		No railings.
Roof	RO2	Thick asphalt coving to falls with gutters. Tearing at edges on road side (south east). Edges of asphalt at junctions to masonry have failed letting water into masonry. Missing or damaged lead flashings enabling vegetation growth in cracks along junction. Debris collecting water and encouraging vegetation growth.
Doors	D2	Door to Undercroft: Internal: Victorian internal oak panelled lobby with leaded lights and Victorian panelled door. External: Thick oak external door with burrs with gridded internal bracing. Rusting metal strap hinges and missing handle. Splitting sections of external timber. Rotting sections of timber at base. Heavily eroded stones to arch and jamb. Undercroft: Metal gate locked to grass area to east.
Windows	W2	To Undercroft: Leaded lights. Spalling stones to reveals with areas of salt movement. Open joints to arches. Scares to stone reveals assumed from historic joinery. Perspex over exterior. Services run through timber frames, not in use.

Section 8, St Leonard's

Element	Rating	Comments
Ceiling	C3	Undercroft: Stone vaulted ribbed ceiling. Water ingress and salt movement causing friable stones, especially at northern gable end. Few fractured stones. Open joints. Delaminating stones from water ingress.
Internal Walls	I3	Undercroft: Significant movement cracks to north east corner. Exposed ashlar stone walls. Salt movement. Scares from assumed removed joinery. Fine incised lettering to a number of stones. Generally friable surface to stones. Rusting fixings. No low level access to inspect any low level areas of the walls due to library storage.
Internal Floors	FL1	Undercroft: stone herringbone pattern to floor appears to be in good condition with carpet over, assume to be Victorian to match lobby door rather than older. Large volume of stored Library items covering most areas of room preventing full inspection.
North West External Undercroft:	U3	Ceiling: Vaulted ribbed stone ceiling with stone piers. Loss of section (fracture, eroded and heavily friable) to a number of stones to the vaulted ribs. Floor: gravel floor and ashlar walls. Signs of water ingress and salt movement to perimeter of ceiling. unknown orange surface is trapping water and causing accelerated decay to stones behind (assume paint finish). Stone Columns: 3 rusting metal tie rod with fractured stones around fixings. Number of fracturing mouldings leading to loss of detail. Movement crack in south east corner to blind arch. Metal gate locked to grass area to east.
South East External Undercroft (next to road):	U3	

Section 8, St Leonard's



Fractured stone to column capitals



Friable stone behind surface crust



Missing lead and failing junction between asphalt and walls



Storage covering walls and floor



Structural movement to gable junction with wall

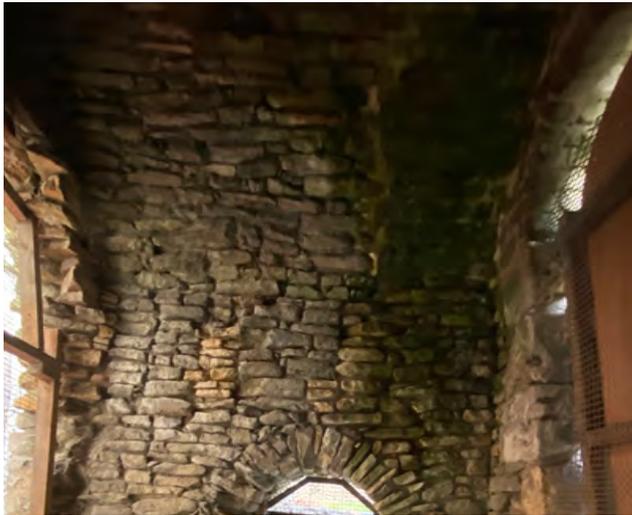


Water ingress to ceiling of Crypt

Section 8, Anglian Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
Masonry	M3	Stones are fracturing at high level. Exposed Victorian brick arch now eroding with extensive vegetation growth. Horizontal delamination of stones. Extensive vegetation growth at high level.
Mortar	P3	Failing cement mortar at high level providing open joints to trap water. Recessed mortar joints leaving stones exposed and allowing vegetation growth. Cementitious mortar all over.
Paved Area	F2	Fair condition. Designed drainage is required to protect surrounding stone walls.
Railings	RA2	One round section handrail that detracts. Access could be improved.
Roof	RO3	Exposed rubble stone and Victorian brick barrel vault to historic passageway. Bricks are in very poor condition.
Doors	D3	Metal mesh and ply to be replaced.
Windows	W3	Metal mesh and ply to be replaced.
Ceiling	C3	Thin Victorian brick barrel vaulted ceiling. Extensive water ingress causing damage. Number of cracks across ceiling.
Internal Walls	I2	Thin small exposed stones with close continuous perpend joints. Relatively dry. Areas of exposed rubble. Recessed mortar joints as exterior.
Internal Floors	FL4	Stone flags and steps. Sharps (used needles) on site.

Section 8, Anglian Tower



Debris and sharps to floor and wire and timber barriers to entrances



Mix of Roman and Anglian construction with areas of open rubble core



Ply over 1839 tunnel opening



Recessed mortar joints



Structural movement cracks to brick barrel vault



Vegetation and failing mortar and spalling brick to barrel vault

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	South west elevation has vertical crack. Movement crack to south side of northern buttress. West Elevation: Vertical crack to front of southern buttress. Repairs to stone and brick walls north of the tower. Salts from saturation over northern arch.
Internal Masonry	M3	Crack to external doorway at top of external stairs on south side. Salt movement to underside of arch over the carriage way. Rain water pipe appears to have leaked causing surrounding stone to deteriorate. Extensive sulphuric crust to inside of arch. Accelerated erosion under first floor cantilevered stone landing to stones and archway below. Salt movement in the same area. Movement cracks to southern buttress with algae growth at base. Crack to northern wall over northern arch - being monitored. Saturated stone on north side of tower at low level causing salt movement and accelerated erosion of stones. Heavy surface salts to soffit of northern arch. Accelerated erosion next to down pipe. crack to northern side of soffit of northern arch. Movement cracks above north steps.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Few open joints and failure due to saturation.
Internal Mortar	P1	Fair condition. Open joints at low level or where there is saturated stone. Cementitious repair under cantilevered south entrance platform.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Fair condition. Note underside of cantilevered landing within Internal Masonry notes above.
Railings	RA2	Rusting railings.
Roof	RO4	Old thin lead with multiple cracks and failed repairs. Lead very thin spread over ridge in one single sheet (basic measurement is 4m which is too long even for Code 8 lead. Pointing coming out of top of perimeter lead flashing. Rusting metal vent to rain water pipe open letting water in. Timber access doors have completely rotted letting water in. Pigeon netting is only thing covering the access opening and preventing rain getting in. 2 rotten joist ends to large timber beams. One has a 40mm bearing left. 300mm of bearing has completely rotted into pulp to north western bearing of primary timber tie beam. Leak over electrical distribution board rotting timber purlin below and coursing electrical hazard. Access should be improved to allow maintenance and public view of minster from roof.
Doors	D2	Metal gates. Kept closed to keep pigeons out (this puts people off and is confusing for public who think the tower is closed).
Windows	W2	Perspex over arrow slits. Birds nesting in gaps next to Perspex building up causing visible debris. Metal grilles to first floor slits.

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Ceiling	C3	Areas of rot to timber ceiling at first floor. Below flag stones is a steel beam and concrete floor. From ground level the rusting steel beams can be seen. Steel beams go through the portcullis.
Internal Walls	I2	Movement crack to south wall next to recess.
Internal Floors	FL1	Stone flags at first floor. Timber boards at second floor with areas of persistent water damage from leaking roof.
Features	FE1	Portcullis.

Section 9, Bootham Bar



Leaking thin lead roof



Multiple areas of water ingress from roof onto timber structure below



No covering to access hatch to roof which is allowing water in



North west primary timber beam rotten within masonry pocket



Rusting steel and concrete structure to carriageway



Structural movement cracks running up tower

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	<p>From Robin Hood Tower: Vegetation growth to top of buttress at Robin Hood Tower end. Movement crack south of most northern buttress. Weathered amortizement to northern buttresses. Few eroded or fractured stones. Vegetation growth to buttress two with movement crack at low level. Movement crack between buttress 3 and 4 (from RH Tower). From Tower 26: buttress 1 eroding stones with surface salts at low level accelerated by heavy vegetation. Salt movement at junctions to buttresses to wall at low level. South of Tower 25: few movement cracks along mortar joints. Victorian rebuild section. Spalling sills to merlons. Movement crack to 4th buttress south from Tower 25. New cement mortar. Ivy growth at chainage 1825. Damage to stone from 2no. Construction of brick garden wall just south of Tower 24 (chainage 1800). Few open joints and ivy growth. North of Tower 23 there is a bulge at high level to expose masonry from under copings with significant cracks. South of Tower 23 there are metal and masonry weep holes. Areas of surface salts to wall. Section of wall rebuilt by Victorians between Tower 23 and 22. Weep joints to either side of this area with salt movement. Rusting metal weep holes (more than 5). South of Tower 22: movement crack to south of Tower 22 at low level. Recently repaired buttress. Movement crack at junction above brick retaining wall at Bootham bar with fractured stones. In filled crenel in same area. From Robin Hood to Monk Bar: missing stones to amortizement of second buttress from Tower 28. Area of bulging under sycamore tree east of Tower 28. Ivy cut but not killed causing damage to stones. Areas of wall are leaning northwards between Roman Gateway and Monk Bar. no access next to monk bar.</p>

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Internal Masonry	M4	Start from steps within deanery gardens (no access to private land of pub): rusting fixings from historic railings fixed to sides now rusting and expanding. Top two causes under walkway have moved outwards. Noted that ashlar stones are shallow and small and perhaps do not have spanning or bridging stones that go back deeper into the rubble core to act as anchors? Structure also being pushed out by moisture and loss of connection with parapet wall. Junction between Victorian arched walkway construction and parapet wall is significantly separating and letting water through causing salt movement to reveals of arches. Some arches have significant movement cracks. Saturation within stones arches due to lack of drip detail and water migrating through structure. Stones to top course and been intermittently removed to allow for inspection with temporary wooden props revealing rubble core within with ash based dark grey mortar which is very weak and brittle. Significant movement cracks to some piers. Section north beyond gate in better condition. Arches as progress to Robin Hood Tower still have heavy salts and water ingress. Section east of Robin Hood Tower: rusting metal fixings. Greys Court: brick wall in good condition. Walkway Level from Bootham Bar: 1 cracked sill. Open joints to copings in places. Robin Hood Tower to Monk Bar walkway level: few fractured sills with missing sections of stone at Robin Hood Tower end. Areas of wall are leaning northwards at between Roman Gateway and Monk Bar. Structural cracks to brick building abutting walkway at Monk Bar end.
External Mortar	P3	From Robin Hood Tower to Bootham Bar: Open joints. Brittle cementitious mortar. Open joints to movement cracks with vegetation growth. Open joints under crenel north of buttress 4. Generally failed cementitious mortar forming cracks to edges of joints enabling water ingress and vegetation growth. Open joints at high level north of brick wall next to Tower 26. From tower 26: 60s cementitious mortar. Few areas of open joints. Cracked mortar to 4 th buttress south of Tower 25. South of Tower 23: there is surface salts caused by saturation of mortar causing failure to surface of mortar generally. South of Tower 22: repaired buttress. Cementitious mortar with surface salts from saturation. Failing cementitious mortar to movement cracks next to Bootham Bar with recent repairs. From Robin Hood to Monk Bar: failed mortar at 2 nd buttress from Robin Hood Tower. Open joints to amortizement of buttress 3. Open joints to base of buttress 4. General cementitious mortar. Open joints between buttress 4 and 5 (failed cement mortar). Open joints to amortizement of buttress 5. Open joints east of buttress 5. Vegetation growth to buttress 9. Similar condition through to Tower 28. From Tower 28 to monk bar: extensive open joints to east of Tower 28. Open joints to 3 rd buttress and under adjacent sill. General open joints and failed cement mortar.

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Mortar cont.	P3	Open joints under sycamore tree with ivy growth causing vegetation jacking. Open joints to surrounding area. Open joints to buttress just east of sycamore tree. Mortar in very poor condition with open joints and vegetation growth. Open joints to most buttresses with recent repairs at low level.
Internal Mortar	P4	From Bootham Bar to Robin Hood Tower: Tight 5-6mm joints of Victorian arched walkway construction are now failing, Top 3-4 courses require replacement. Brittle lengths of cementitious mortar are now failing away. Top two mortar joints under walkway have moved outwards. open joints to arches. Section east of Robin Hood Tower: few open joints. Failing joint under walkway edge stones. Greys Court: mortar joints to bricks failing, open joints. Rest of wall recently repaired. Poor cement mortar to stone east of brick section. Mortar joint under stone edge detail has failed and holding vegetation. Walkway Level Robin Hood Tower to Monk Bar: few open joints at sill level to crenels. Cementitious mortar. Open low level joints at chainage 2025. Poor condition of mortar under sycamore trees with failed cement mortar and large open joints. Open joints extent to Greys Court entrance steps.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	From Bootham Bar to Robin Hood Tower: pub extract changes atmosphere. Noise from AC units changes atmosphere. Narrow section next to Lamb and Lion. North of tower 23: wide joint between walkway and parapet wall, has been filled in and failed again due to structural movement. Large crack letting water into construction below. Wide and failing joint between edge stones and pavers. Wide of joint corresponds with location of bowing railings and significant movement cracks to masonry below rotating away from parapet wall. New edge stones do not match existing profiles allowing water to enter structure bellow. No drip detail to edge stones allowing water to run down face of stone. Few fractured edge stones near rusting historic metal railing fixings. Collapsed set of steps next to private garden. From Robin Hood Tower to Monk Bar: square profile to edge stones. Vegetation growing out of joint between walkway and parapet wall. Fat failed cement joint with parapet wall at chainage 2025. Walkway is generally in a poor condition at the same chainage with large open joints on inner edge and against parapet. Failed large mortar joint extends along most of length to Monk Bar. Area of paving sandwiched between brick building and parapet wall at Monk Bar end has areas of failed large mortar joints with water draining into parapet wall - no controlled drainage strategy in this confined location.

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Railings	RA2	rusting modern railings. continuous with no movement joints. show signs of bowing and now in tension from walkway construction movement. tower walls and arches are rotating outwards, the continuous railing is now pulling entire length outwards as well. Bootham Bar: broken fixing into chimney. Robin Hood Tower to Monk Bar: square section, galvanised and painted - areas of rust and failing paint finish. Railing fixed into brick building near Monk Bar is insecure and rusting.
Notes		Stored historic iron railings within arches between Bootham Bar and Robin Hood Tower. Ice House not surveyed

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar



Bending railings with no movement joints



Joint failure between Victorian and Medieval structure



Missing masonry from buttress east of Robin Hood Tower



Saturation to interior of internal arches



Vegetation jacking



Walkway and top three courses of brick are moving outwards

Section 10, Tower 22

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Significant vertical movement cracks on 2 northern faces. Few spalling stones. Significant ivy growth. Spreading foundations. Brick retaining wall to southern side.
Internal Masonry	M2	No access to lower level. parapet has graffiti and ivy growth
External Mortar	P4	Significant vertical movement cracks along mortar joints. Cementitious mortar. Modern patches of dark cement mortar to chainage 1700 at low level. Open mortar joints below arrow slit. Open joints at low level.
Internal Mortar	P1	No access to low level. Above parapet in fair condition.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Open joints allowing mortar into structure below. No controlled drainage because of inner parapet wall. Chutes through historic wall.
Railings		Stone wall instead of railings. creates pinch point.
Interior		No interior

Section 10, Tower 22



Brick structure to south west



Low level vegetation growth



Spreading at corner foundations



Vegetation growth and open joints to west elevation



Vertical cracks to north elevation



Walkway level with open joints and modern graffiti

Section 10, Tower 23

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Few fractured stones. Significant surface salts from saturation. Masonry fill within core of tower. Brick garden wall to south. Rusting metal weep hole pipe. Masonry weep hole adjacent on wall to south of tower.
Internal Masonry	M1	Modern graffiti noted.
External Mortar	P4	Generally mortar has failed. Ivy growth. Open joints. Saturated mortar joints with surface salt movement has caused the mortar to fail.
Internal Mortar	P1	Cement mortar. Joints to copings loose.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Loose flags with open joints.
Railings		No railings. Masonry internal wall along private garden. Pinch point at steps.
Windows	W3	Tree growing out of arrow slit. Masonry fill of tower visible.
Interior		Interior, infilled with masonry.

Section 10, Tower 23



Parapet masonry



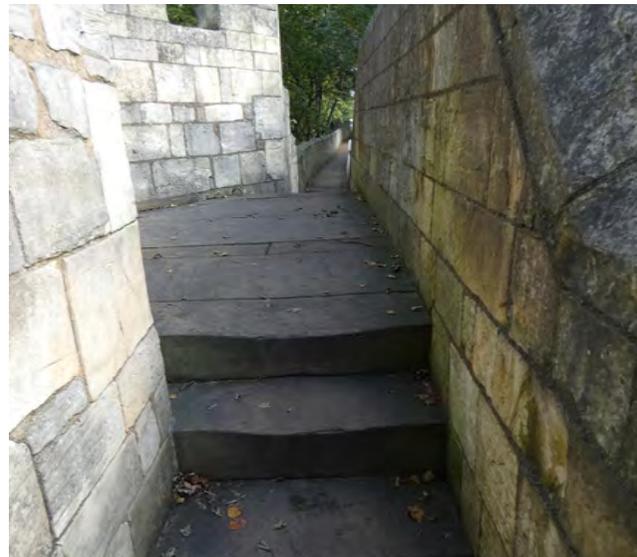
Salt movement and failing mortar from saturation



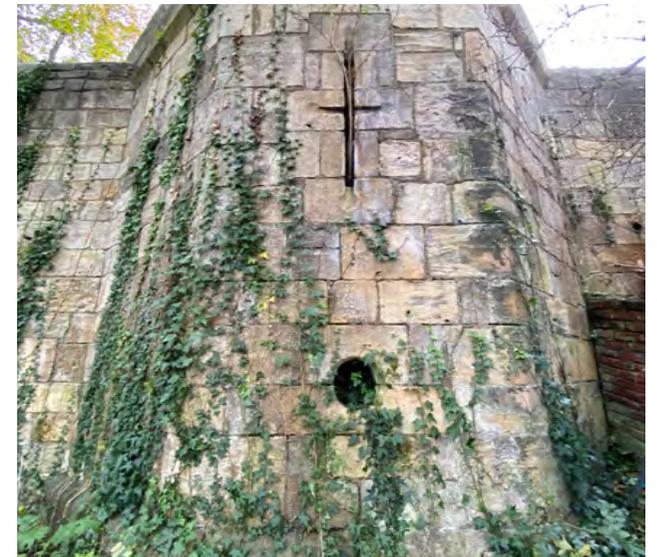
Vegetation growth from arrow slit



Vertical movement cracks



Walkway steps

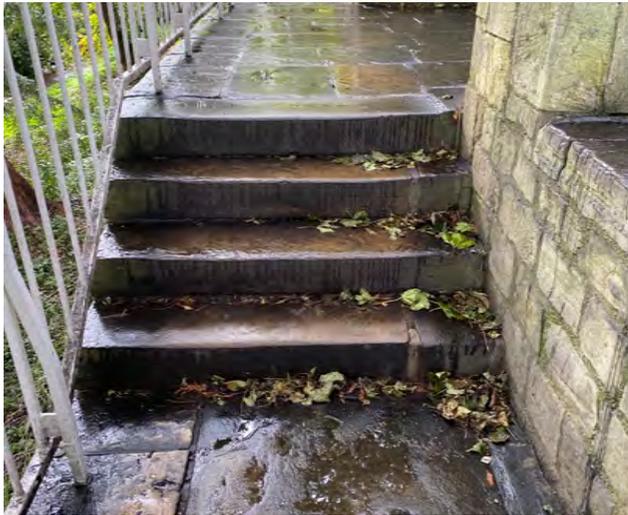


West elevation

Section 10, Tower 24

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	Significant movement cracks to junction of tower with wall. Significant movement at low level - spreading foundation stones. Significant movement cracks to both corners of tower (caused by water ingress, settlement of internal masonry fill and small quoins). Spreading to foundations. 50-60mm movement cracks. Victorian rebuild of crenulations. Ivy growth.
Internal Masonry	M4	Arch: 80mm wide movement crack between brick and stone construction. Second crack now appearing within stone barrel vault. More signs of Victorian construction rotating away from historic parapet wall. Significant crack to inside bowed face of external wall within arch, 60mm wide crack. Significant movement cracks to Victorian stone especially under steps. Wall generally rotating outwards. Masonry good at high level. Crack through sill of crenel on north side - part of larger movement crack.
External Mortar	P4	Saturated 60s cementitious mortar. Failing and crumbling away from water ingress. Open 50-60mm joints to movement cracks.
Internal Mortar	P3	Same issues as wider Section 10.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few open joints. Water pools at joint with edge stone forcing water into construction. Wide joints to steps on either side showing signs of historic movement.
Railings	RA3	Rusting modern railings.
Windows	W1	Infilled core behind arrow slits.
Interior		No interior. Infilled in masonry.

Section 10, Tower 24



Movement cracks and separation at steps



Movement cracks to wall junction north of tower



Saturated masonry at low level with failing mortar



Separation of masonry around the quoins of tower



Vertical cracks to southern elevation



Walkway level

Section 10, Tower 25

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Few fractured stones. Arrow slit stones not in original locations. 2 significant vertical movement cracks running up structure. Fractured stones surrounding cracks.
Internal Masonry	M3	Fracturing stone caused by structural movement and hard cement pointing. Top section of structure moving outwards.
External Mortar	P3	Open cracks to edges of mortar joints to stepped foundations and low level masonry.
Internal Mortar	P3	Hard cement pointing failing and falling away.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Open perpend joints. Edge stones moved outwards. Wide bow shaped joint between flags and edge stone.
Railings	RA1	Fair condition.
Doors	D4	Victorian timber door lying on ground.
Windows		Arrow slit stones not in original locations.
Ceiling	C3	surface salts to brick barrel vault. open joints and water moving through causing mortar to fail.
Internal Walls	I4	Significant movement cracks 40-60mm at junction between parapet wall and Victorian walkway construction.
Internal Floors	FL1	Earth.

Section 10, Tower 25



Alteration to arrow slits



Entrance door, structural movement, fractured stones and failing mortar



Masonry infill to interior of tower



South elevation



Vertical cracks to southern external elevation



Walkway level

Section 10, Tower 26

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Ivy growth. Sycamore over sailing parapet.
Internal Masonry	M3	Movement cracks around door. External wall separating from brick vault structure. Causing extensive internal water ingress. Movement crack to south junction with wall.
External Mortar	P2	Hard cementitious mortar. Few cracks to edges of mortar joints.
Internal Mortar	P3	As rest of section. open joints at parapet level.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Large cracks to edge stones. Open joints to steps and flags.
Railings	RA2	Rust and working movement joint.
Doors	D2	Modern ply timber door. Paint failing and timber rotting.
Windows		Masonry behind arrow slits.
Ceiling	C2	Brick barrel vault. Cement mortar failing. White paint.
Internal Walls	I4	Significant movement cracks at junction between Victorian construction and tower construction. Extensive water damage to external wall.
Internal Floors	FL1	Earth floor

Section 10, Tower 26



Blocked up arrow slit



Brick rear garden wall abutting City Wall



Entrance door



Structural movement to internal walls



Walkway level



Western elevation with vegetation growth

Section 10, Tower 27, Robin Hood Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Good condition. Historic fractured stones and movement cracks assumed to have been repaired.
Internal Masonry	M2	Significant water staining and organic growth, concentrated from water proofing to walkway above. Vegetation growth from open mortar joints. Parapet level recently repaired.
External Mortar	P2	General loss of surface to mortar with a few open joints. Cementitious mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Loss of surface to mortar. Open joints.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Open perpend joints. Few open joints.
Railings	RA1	Modern, square section.
Doors	D1	Metal cage gate.
Windows	W1	Open arrow slits.
Ceiling	C2	White painted modern construction (assume steel and concrete) in pastiche of timber construction with edge ovolo details.
Internal Walls	I2	Exposed stone outer walls. Engineering brick piers in cement mortar. Brick spine wall in historic brick and cementitious mortar. Concrete lintel over door. External stone wall saturated.
Internal Floors	FL1	Concrete laid to falls to concentrate water out of door.
Features	FE2	Poor unsympathetic design with no use and unusable because of floor height and angles etc.

Section 10, Tower 27, Robin Hood Tower



Eastern view



Entrance door



Modern internal structure



Small and short internal spaces with sloping floors



Walkway



Water falling over surface on internal wall

Section 10, Tower 28

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	St George cross coat of arms and small turrets to either side. Number of eroded and fractured stones showing patina of age.
Internal Masonry	M1	Unknown condition, covered in vegetation with no access.
External Mortar	P3	Lost and failing cementitious mortar.
Internal Mortar	P1	Walkway Level: Cementitious mortar. Areas beginning to start failing. Below Walkway Level: No access
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	A few areas of open joints. One fractured edge stone to south east corner. Open joints to sides of steps.
Railings	RA2	Square section galvanised railings with rust and chipped paint.
Doors	D1	Metal gate. No close up access to review condition.
Windows	W1	Eroded stones around arrow slits. Some built across openings.
Ceiling		No access
Internal Walls		No access
Internal Floors		No access

Section 10, Tower 28



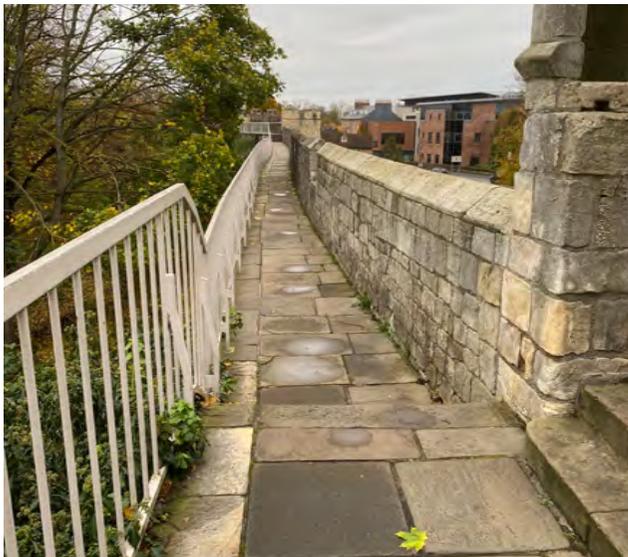
Entrance inaccessible



Fracture stone remains from historic railings



Open joints east of tower



Open joints to walkway



Walkway steps, enlarging joints against parapet wall



Walkway, few open joints

Section 10, Tower 29

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry		As wider Section 10.
Internal Masonry	M4	Greys Court brick steps: bricks weathering. Top landing stone of stair has rotated separating it from brick wall beneath.
External Mortar		As wider Section 10
Internal Mortar	P1	Fair condition. See Section 10 notes
Flagstone (walkway)	F4	Top landing stone of Grey Court steps is rotating. Currently held in place by cramp. Steps within Deanery garden have collapsed and are overgrown. Large open joints between steps on walkway and parapet wall.
Railings	RA2	Square section railings, rusting. Older railings to steps now rusting with a failed paint finish.

Section 10, Tower 29



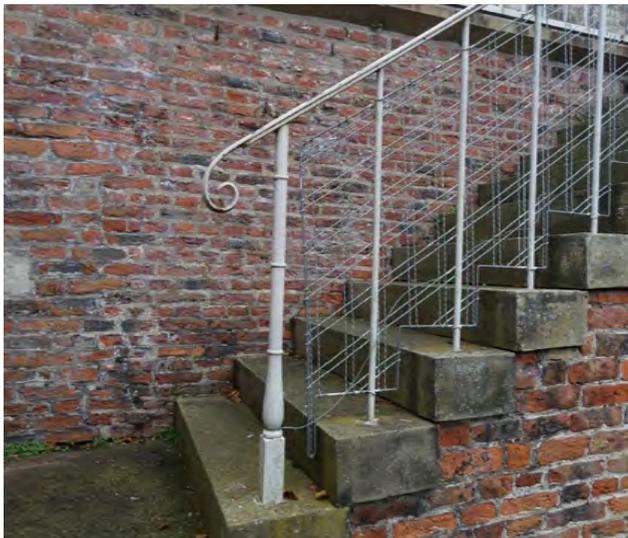
Broken steps into Treasurer's House Gardens



Fractured rotating top stone landing slab with cramp and cracks



Open joints and raised stone landing slab away from supporting brickwork beneath



Railings to steps



Top landing slab rotating



Wide joints to steps

Section 11 Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Vertical movement crack to junction of north west turret with west wall. Stones eroding to elevation under high level walkway on north elevation within reveal. Eroding stones to arrow slits. East elevation: movement crack to base of eastern turret.
Internal Masonry	M3	South elevation: 2 large movement cracks to either side running up the building from arch level. Assume side walls rotating outwards. Carriage way under tower: rib vaulted ceiling. Sulphuric crust, fractures, friable stones, rusting fixings. Portcullis in position. Open perpend joints to sill stones over arch. Rusting and convoluted down pipes. Large crack to west side of main arch to carriage way. Eroding stones and salt movement to Victorian arches. Large crack to western side of eastern road arch.
External Mortar	P2	Movement crack to inside of west buttress to north elevation (within reveal). Cementitious mortar failing to higher levels.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open joints at high level to east face. South elevation: cementitious pointing to 2 large vertical cracks on either side of tower.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Fair condition.
Railings	RA2	Fair condition. Areas of rust requiring redecoration.
Roof	RO4	Rusting metal joints pockets to north wall. Leaking lead roof, rotting timber structure beneath. Hollow roll lead roof. Inadequate joint depths allowing water in. Active leaking inside. Lead feels very thin over timber boards beneath. Cracks at roll ends. Water pooling in gutter near chimney - falls are not working. Mortar joints over lead have failed.
Doors	D2	Timber doors. Door to roof rotten. External doors timber doors still in place to removed barbican.
Windows	W2	Leaded light. Few broken panes.
Ceiling	C2	Stone ribbed vaults. Rusting cramp to rib.
Internal Walls	I3	Movement cracks to east wall and south east and west corners at first floor, eroding stone at west end behind portcullis from hard cement mortar. Movement crack to north and south elevations at second floor and around stair door on east wall. Movement cracks within north east turret and north west turret. Movement cracks to south wall at third floor level. Movement crack to southern and northern windows to east elevation at third floor level. Movement cracks to west elevation. Heavy vegetation to external high level walkway at third floor level.

Section 11 Monk Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Internal Floors	FL1	Stone flag floors.
Features	FE2	Fire place. Portcullis. Coat of arms are eroding and loosing paint finish.

Section 11 Monk Bar



Crack to arch over carriageway on south side



Cracks to east wall of top floor



Internal cracking to walls



Leaking lead roof



Rusting metal joist pockets



Vegetation growth to high level external gallery to north

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	From Monk Bar to Tower 34: underpinning with concrete foundation to west of ice house. Significant structural movement with vertical movement crack running along mortar joints to 2 nd buttress next to ice house, same buttress also has fractured stone. Concrete foundation bedding has also fallen away revealing the underside of the foundation. Buttress 3 has signs of structural movement at low level next to ice house. Crack to junction with 2 ^{no.} buttress at chainage 2300. Significant vertical movement crack 15m west of Tower 31 below crenel. 10m stretch west of Tower 31 has multiple (min 3 number) diagonal movement cracks across the bowing area of wall. Fractured stone to arrow slit halfway between Tower 31 and 32. Significant movement crack 2.5m east of Tower 32 with 4 fractured stones. Movement crack east of 2 nd buttress east of Tower 32. Horizontal and vertical crack to 4 th buttress (large) east of Tower 32. 2 fractured stones between Tower 33 and 34.
Internal Masonry	M3	Fractured stones at base of arch piers. 1960s cobble repairs to base of arches. Open perpend joints to arches. Salt movement within arches. Roman walls at low level covered in vegetation and cement mortar. Poor condition east of excavated roman tower. Arches have all moved and settled at some extreme angles. Repairs have taken place. Tower 32: movement cracks between Victorian arched structure and medieval masonry wall. Piers to arches have moved and settled at extreme angles. Tower 32 to 34: open joints to arches. Concentrated water ingress and weep points through arches. Surface salts. 1 number voussoirs out of position. Areas of friable stones under arches. Arches become twice as deep. Movement joint between arch and parapet wall, areas have been repaired/repointed where movement has taken place before. Significant movement cracks to bases of piers. Within Ware Solicitors area: salt movement and erosion of stones from water ingress. Few fractured stones. Between Tower 33 and 34 movement to top two courses of stone below walkway. open joints to base of 3 piers.
External Mortar	P3	From Monk Bar to Tower 34: Cementitious mortar allowing water in at sides of joints. Open joints to copings next to Monk Bar. Open joints to Buttress 1 (from Monk Bar). Dark cement mortar in area next to ice house with areas of failed and open joints. Open joints at low level with salt movement east of Ice House. Failing mortar at chainage 2300. Areas of failed mortar at chainage 2320 around heavily leaning buttresses. Open joints at low level in same area. Crack 15m west of Tower 31 below crenel. Failed mortar to buttress 10m west of Tower 31. 10m stretch of bowing wall east of Tower 31 has multiple diagonal movement cracks causing brittle mortar joints to fail and fall away.

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Element	Rating	Comments
External Mortar cont.	P3	Area 10m east of Tower 31 has large areas of failed mortar from excessive moisture movement. Open joints to buttress between Tower 31 and 32. Failing area of mortar at low level 7m east of Tower 32 and open joints at high level. Open joints to 2 nd buttress east of Tower 32. General poor condition of mortar 20 to 25m west of Tower 33 with open and saturated joints. Vegetation growth to buttress west of Tower 33. Open joints causing structural movement of stones to low wall east of Tower 34.
Internal Mortar	P3	Monk Bar end: failing cement mortar. Open joints to arches. Tower 32: failing cement mortar resulting in open joints. Historic movement to piers to the arches. Open joints to movement cracks within arches. Water migrating through Victorian arched structure to cause salt movement and algae growth. From tower 32 to 34: open joints from water ingress. Open joints above arches. Mortar failing from water movement as it should. Ware Solicitors Area: patches of open joints all over. Moisture weeping out of mortar joints encouraging algae growth in these areas.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Ware Solicitors Area: 4 fractured edge stones with one large section fallen away - new stone spalled. 2 large sections on ground. From Tower 34 to Monk Bar: Open joints to steps of Tower 34. Typical failed edge point and joints with parapet wall, few open joints. Few open joints and loose flags between Roman Tower and Tower 31. Thick edge joint along parapet wall allowing water into the below masonry.
Railings	RA2	Rusting railings, fixings buried into masonry.
Roof	RO4	Rusting metal joints pockets to north wall. Leaking lead roof, rotting timber structure beneath. Hollow roll lead roof. Inadequate joint depths allowing water in. Active leaking inside. Lead feels very thin over timber boards beneath. Cracks at roll ends. Water pooling in gutter near chimney - falls are not working. Mortar joints over lead have failed.
Doors	D2	Timber doors. Door to roof rotten. External doors timber doors still in place to removed barbican.
Windows	W2	Leaded light. Few broken panes.
Ceiling	C2	Stone ribbed vaults. Rusting cramp to rib.

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550



Cementitious mortar



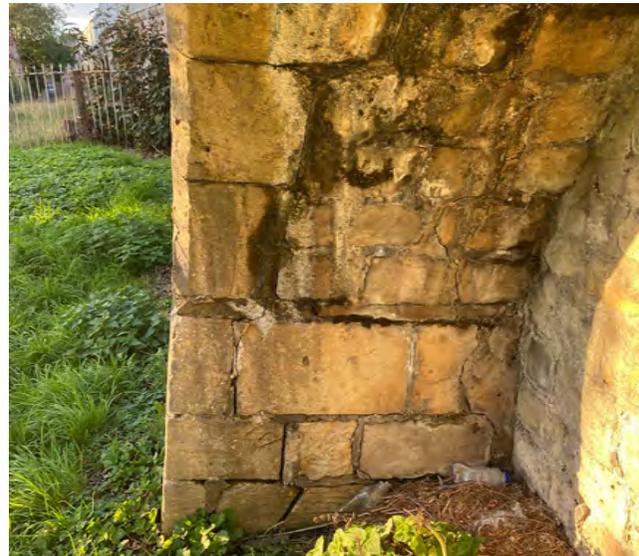
Concrete foundations to wall near Monk Bar



Saturated structure below arches



Structural movement to buttresses



Structural movement to Victorian arches



Sulphuric crust to interior of arch

Section 12, Ice House

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Brick with open joints and vegetation growth. Number of movement cracks across the domed structure. Vegetation at junction with entrance barrel vault. Part of entrance structure missing. Number of spalling bricks from freeze thaw.
Internal Masonry	M3	Surface salts showing signs of water ingress.
External Mortar	P3	Failed cement mortar joint to south edge of dome next to wall causing potential structural issues as well as increased water ingress.
Internal Mortar	P3	Cementitious mortar and open joints. cement mortar brittle and allowing water in.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Walkway to pub garden
Railings		No handrails.
Doors	D1	Rusting metal gate. locked. paint finish is failed and peeling.
Internal Walls	I1	Salt movement from water ingress. assume poor condition. no access to inspect closely.
Internal Floors	FL1	Debris to floor. ladder stored internally.

Section 12, Ice House



Entrance door



Failing mortar joints to uncovered exterior



Water ingress and salk movement to interior

Section 12, Tower 30

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry		As rest of Section 12
Internal Masonry	M2	Exposed rubble stone on ground. Opposite ice house. Section of wall leaning northwards (outwards).
External Mortar		As rest of Section 12
Internal Mortar	P2	Failing cement mortar. vegetation growth.
Flagstone (walkway)		As rest of Section 12
Railings		As rest of Section 12
Doors	D1	Rusting metal gate. locked. paint finish is failed and peeling.
Internal Walls	I1	Salt movement from water ingress. assume poor condition. no access to inspect closely.
Internal Floors	FL1	Debris to floor. ladder stored internally.

Section 12, Ice House



Roman corner tower



Roman intermediate tower

Section 12, Harlot Hill Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	West side has vertical movement cracks next to junction with wall. There appears to be general radial expansion of the stones as they move outwards (to the north) causing numerous cracks to emerge across the entire face. 4 significant vertical movement cracks in total at even intervals around the circular exterior wall. Structure is structural unsound.
Internal Masonry	M4	Top 3 courses of stone below walkway are loose and moving. Fractured stone caused by hard cement mortar. Walls are rotated northwards to an extreme angle. Significant movement crack to eastern side of tower below walkway. Arch to west of tower has moved, eroded and fractured from cement, iron and structural movement. Rusting railing fixing causing rust jacking. Walkway level: movement crack to eastern junction with wall. Open joints to western turret.
External Mortar	P4	High level open joints. Mortar has generally failed to all areas. Significant structural movement has caused mortar joints to fail with large areas of open joints.
Internal Mortar	P3	Open mortar joints. failing cement mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F3	Failed joint to perimeter wall. Open joints to flagstones. Open joints to steps. Open joints to edge stones with open perpendicular joints. Short narrow steps.
Railings	RA2	Painted galvanised railings with arrow head finials. Heavy rusting to historic railings.
Doors	D3	5 plank timber door. Rotting at base. Rusting ironmongery. Strap hinges internally with flat head screws.
Windows	W4	Open arrow slits. Stone lintel fractured and fallen away to central window. Leaving rubble stone above unsupported.
Ceiling	C4	Saturated brick vaults on 2 mid century concrete beams with stone flags to outsides of concrete beams. Eastern beam is moving out and off bedding to south east corner. Stalactites formed from concrete beams from salt movement. Entire roof structure saturated and dripping. Extensive salt movement from water ingress.
Internal Walls	I4	Major movement cracks between Victorian internal wall and tower structure. External wall rotating out at base. Vertical movement cracks to both side walls of tower where wall meets tower. Tower moving north.
Internal Floors	FL3	Mud floor with debris.
Features		Potentially usable space. Good floor to ceiling height

Section 12, Harlot Hill Tower



Concrete beam coming out of bedding position



Diagonal cracking to wall on the west side of tower



Internal wall below walkway is at an extreme angle



Missing stone lintel from northern arrow slit



Structural movement cracks to north east side of tower



Structural movement to north west side of tower

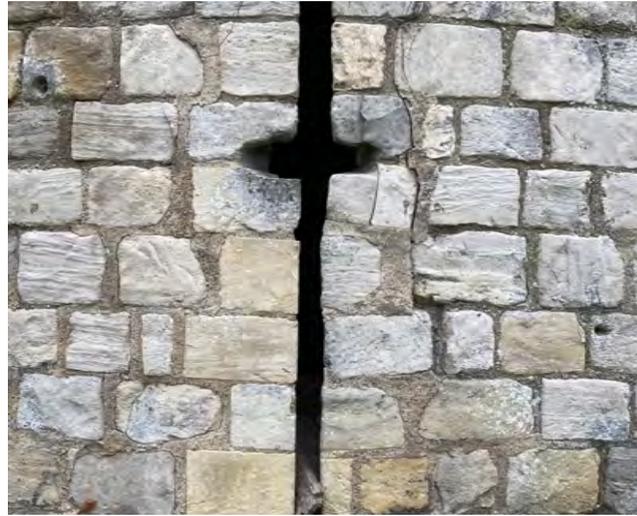
Section 12, Tower 32, New Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M4	West junction of tower with wall has significant movement cracks with 4 fractured stones. Recently repaired but movement is continuing to take place. Horizontal movement crack to west side at 1.6m from ground level. Structural movement to northern corner. Significant structural movement around northern arrow slit with cracks in masonry to either side and 7 number fractured stones with historic detail. Similar movement is occurring around east arrow slit. Movement continuous to junction between east wall and tower. Movement crack at high level at north east corner, projecting stone losing bedding.
Internal Masonry	M3	Movement cracks to junction west wall. Movement cracks to east wall under steps which was repointed in 2018 with fractured stones surrounding. Open joints at base with concrete foundation. Walkway level: modern graffiti. Movement crack to western corner. Large movement crack to eastern junction next to steps.
External Mortar	P3	Open joints to wall just west of tower 32 with significant movement joints. Areas of failed mortar around movement cracks to northern corner. Open perpend joints at high level. Generally failing mortar at low level. Open joints from movement at high level.
Internal Mortar	P3	Cement mortar failed with open joints.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Re-laid recently. polysulphide joints.
Railings	RA1	Good condition.
Doors	D2	Timber door requiring repair to ease it. Large step up from internal rampart.
Windows	W4	Open arrow slits. Open joints to internal window arches. See external masonry note above.
Ceiling	C2	Rusting reed bar to 1960s reinforced concrete ceiling. Recent cement repairs. Rust staining visible. Condensation settling on soffit of concrete.
Internal Walls	I3	Movement cracks on either side of door. Open joints to south wall. Salt movement.
Internal Floors	FL1	Earth floor.
Features		Round room. Poor access.

Section 12, Tower 32, New Tower



Entrance door



Fractured stones to perimeter of arrow slit



Internal ceiling showing water ingress



Internal junction to west wall



Structural movement at joint with west wall



Structural movement to joint with east wall

Section 12, Tower 33

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Vertical movement crack to west face of tower.
Internal Masonry	M3	Vertical movement cracks to wall west of tower. 2 eroding stones at low level. Movement cracks to top east corner. Movement crack across internal face. On walkway: vertical movement cracks to either side of tower where walls meet tower. 1 friable stone to side of crenel.
External Mortar	P3	Vertical movement cracks causing mortar to fail. Few open joints and vegetation growth.
Internal Mortar	P2	Failing cementitious mortar from movement causing open joints and minor vegetation growth.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Failing mortar joints with vegetation ingress. No falls or guided water run off. Open joints to steps.
Railings	RA2	90s modern square section, rusting. Welded movement joints. Welded bases to reuse existing fixings.

Section 12, Tower 33



Cracking and open joints to western walkway structure



Cracking to eastern side



Cracking to western side



Eroding stone to merlon



Movement crack to eastern walkway structure



Western elevation

Section 12, Tower 34

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Appears to be minor structural movement of stone at walkway level with crack in corresponding location under crenel sill. Sugaring stones to corbel details leading to loss of historic fabric and architectural details. Structural movement cracks to stones around entrance to Tower 34. Rusting historic fixing.
Internal Masonry	M3	Water weeping from halfway up wall. Holes from historic railing fixings. Movement crack to side of sill. 2 fractured stones.
External Mortar	P3	Failing mortar around areas of structural movement at walkway level. Open joints to buttresses at low level. Open joints around main entrance to steps to Tower 34.
Internal Mortar	P2	Failing cement mortar under top of steps. Open joints to base of steps. Few open joints. General cementitious mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Open joints.

Section 12, Tower 34



Friable surface near sulphuric crust



High level cracking and movement below crenel sill



Interior of crack below crenel



Open joints to low perimeter wall



Rust jacking and movement around entrance door



Walkway

Section 13, River Foss

Element	Rating	Comments
		No wall

Section 14, Red Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Bricks are in a fair condition. Saturation at low level caused by saturated surrounding ground on south side causing accelerated erosion and salt movement. Similar on east face and north face. Low level ruins have moss growth and cementitious repairs.
Internal Masonry	M2	Heavily eroded brick at low level.
External Mortar	P2	Open eroded mortar at low level. Mortar aggregate has large pieces of sand and gravel.
Internal Mortar	P2	Loss of mortar at low level due to floods.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Cobbles and flags in good condition.
Railings	RA1	Recently redecorated
Roof	RO2	Warped and chipped clay tiles. Moss growth. Few cracked tiles. 1 missing and several slipped on east face. Few cracked on south face. Insulated polystyrene roof exposed internally. Internal suspended sails cover roof structure internally.
Doors	D2	Timber entrance door eroded at base.
Windows	W1	New windows from recent refurbishment.
Ceiling	C2	Timber joists.
Internal Walls	I2	Exposed brick walls. Salt movement to north wall at ground floor.
Internal Floors	FL2	Painted concrete floor. Timber first floor.

Section 14, Red Tower



Ceiling and interior of roof



First floor interior



Ground floor interior



Internal staircase



Low level decay to south eastern corner



West elevation

Section 15, Chainage no. 2600-2900

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Heavily eroded arrow slits to merlons. Vegetation growth. Exposed rubble section at low level with stones arches visible. Significant movement crack at Walmgate Bar end. Significant movement crack just north of Tower 36 has been monitored (close to corner). Moisture and movement crack on north side of same corner. Crack increasing in size at low level. Movement crack just south of Tower 35. Movement to buttresses. Vegetation in coping stones at Red Tower end. 2no. fractured stones at parapet level at Red Tower end.
Internal Masonry	M2	Fractured stones under railings. Salt movement around arches under walkway. Moving edge stone over arch at Red Tower end. Concentration of water to springing points of arches likely to cause accelerated decay in the future. Stones eroding around sulphuric crust. Sulphuric crust icicles. Poor section of eroding masonry just north of Tower 35. Number of heavily eroded sills. Significant movement cracks between Tower 35 and 36.
External Mortar	P2	Open joints. Loose and failing mortar caused by water movement. Mortar failing due to water movement causing salt movement and algae growth. Brittle cement mortar is failing. Open joints to buttresses. Open joints and vegetation around chainage mark 2700. Open joints from 2700m chainage to red tower.
Internal Mortar	P3	Open joints by Red Tower entrance gate. Open joints at low level above walkway. Cementitious mortar is failing. Failed cement joint under edge stones to walkway. Failed mortar joints under steps. Poor section of mortar close to Tower 35 with open joints. Parapet above walkway south of Tower 35 has open joints. Failed cement mortar at parapet level. Open joints. Mortar bed joint to copings generally failing and letting moisture in. Open perpend joints.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Significant movement at steps. Poor instances of repairs to edge stones. Open perpend joints to edge stones. Large failing joints. Exposed metal cramps. Open joint to edge stones.

Section 15, Chainage no. 2600-2900



Structural movement at junctions

Section 15, Tower 35

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Rubble foundations are failing
Internal Masonry	M4	Significant movement crack below steps (3no.) and on either side of tower.
External Mortar	P2	Open washed out joints to rubble foundations.
Internal Mortar	P3	Open joints along movement cracks. Cementitious mortar failing in areas.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Fair condition.
Railings	RA1	Paint failing. Rust evident.

Section 15, Tower 35



Cracking below steps and railings



Cracking to interior of tower



Rubble foundations are failing



Structural movement below steps



Structural movement to southern end of tower

Section 15, Tower 36

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Significant movement at south corner plinth level, has been monitored. Vertical crack to east elevation. Movement crack on north side.
Internal Masonry	M2	Salt movement and saturation at low level between covered over sets of steps. Central pier seems to have rotated outwards (east) resulting in large open joint previously filled.
External Mortar	P2	Failed cement mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cementitious mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Poor detailing to infill section over original steps. Flags in fair condition. No edge detail.
Railings		No railings.
Window	W2	Arrow slit filled in internally. Heavily weathered stone.

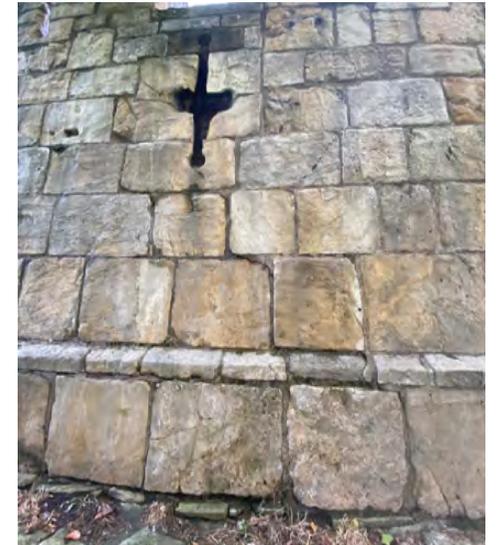
Section 15, Tower 36



Movement crack to north side



Movement to south west corner at plinth level



Vertical crack to east elevation and arrow slit



Steps built over with structural movement to central pier

Section 16, Walmgate Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	South east side: good condition, new SS bars to crenels of barbican. Heavy surface salts to soffit of barbican arch caused by water ingress from above walkway. Low level crack through northern base of barbican arch. North side of barbican has significant areas of water weeping from wall assumed to be concentrated from walkway above. Eroding soffit to road arch stones. Barbican Walkway: water pooling on barbican walkway, forcing water into masonry below. Movement crack to south corner turret of barbican. Fractured stone around handrail post. Open perpend joints to copings.
Internal Masonry	M3	Cheek wall to northern stair is leaning to west. Large metal cramps on copings are rusting and expanding causing copings stones to fracture. Movement through top section of masonry at top of north stairs. Blocked rain water pipe to north side of tower resulting in vegetation growth in this area. Rusting metal fixings to key stone of northern road arch. Inside barbican there is damp around down pipes causing algae growth and rust to pipes. Sulphuric crust to walls and arches of arched carriage way. Erosion to stone columns with new capitals. West elevation was recently restored following damage by a car colliding with a stone column. Timber and rendered elements is good condition. Rusting metal guard rail to low level of stairs rusting and fracturing stone copings. Salts and open joints to soffit of southern arch.
External Mortar	P2	South side good condition with 1960s pebble dash cement mortar. Failing cement mortar to barbican east face.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open mortar joints at top of north stair. Failing mortar joints to inside of north stair caused by saturation from rampart on other side of wall. Open joints to soffit of southern arch and reveal walls.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Landscape renewed in recent rebuilding.
Railings	RA1	New stone flags under railings. Fair condition. Round section handrails to western stair.
Roof	RO2	New lead roof. New timber deck. No access. Assumed to be leak in south east corner, Possible debris build up - maintenance schedule to be agreed to ensure rain water goods function.
Doors	D2	Large timber double gates at ground level have rusting metal hinges and studs.
Windows	W1	Fair condition.

Section 16, Walmgate Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
Ceiling	C3	Timber soffit from ground level under arched carriage way shows signs of water leaks. First floor: painted plaster. Second floor: appears to be a leak in south west corner. Mildew and peeling paint finish noted.
Internal Walls	I3	Cracks to plaster panels in north west corner and small section fallen away. Construction sounds very light and flimsy. Damp and mildew to panels at top of stairs at second floor. Movement crack to south east corner door way.
Internal Floors	FL1	Stone flags to first floor. Timber boards to second floor.
Features	FE1	Metal portcullis rusting. Timber portcullis internally. WC at first floor.

Section 16, Walmgate Bar



Evidence of water ingress to south west corner



Fractured stone to north east corner of barbican walkway



Roof of arch



Roof with cafe terrace



Structural movement to northern walkway stairs



Water ingress to west elevation

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	1 number fractured plinth chamfered string course between Fishergate Postern Tower and Tower 39. Heavily weathered stones surrounded by hard cement pointing near east of Tower 39. At the eastern side of the two dog legs at 3150m chainage there is significant movement to corner junction. Few eroded stones between Walmgate and Tower 37.
Internal Masonry	M2	Movement cracks below walkway at top of stairs at Walmgate. Parapet stone in poor condition from Tower 39 to Fishergate Postern Tower. 2 number stone fractured and eroded. stones eroding between the cementitious mortar. 1no. fractured stone to west side of crenel (under coping) west of Tower 37. 2 number cracked sills to crenel between 3100 and 3200m chainage.
External Mortar	P4	Fishergate Postern Tower to Tower 39 is in poor condition with failed hard cement mortar leaving open joints and eroding stones. Vertical movement cracks evident near Fishergate Postern Tower. Buttress near Tower 39 has open mortar joints with vegetation growth. Poor condition of mortar with failed hard cement now falling away to leave open joints to allow vegetation to grow and stones to suffer from accelerated decay. Poor condition of mortar continues to Fishergate Bar. Better condition east of Fishergate Bar but still cement mortar. At the eastern side of the two dog legs at 3150m chainage there is significant movement to corner junction causing open joints. Open joints to small buttress between dog leg and 3100m chainage. Open joints over plinth string course. Cementitious pebble dash mortar in fair condition running to Tower 37. Squat buttress has open joints with vegetation growth. Thin brittle cement mortar is falling away in stretch from Tower 37 to Walmgate Bar.
Internal Mortar	P4	Open joints to parapet base abutting the walkway. Failed joint to underside of edge stones. Failing joints below walkway close to Tower 37. Open joints under walkway west of Tower 37 allowing vegetation growth. Failing joints at corner at 3050 chainage heading west to 3200m chainage. Open joints west of Fishergate below walkway. Open joints at parapet level west of Fishergate Bar. Open joints from Tower 39 to Fishergate Postern Tower. Large areas of failed cement mortar to parapet leaving open joints causing accelerated decay to stones near Fishergate Postern Tower. Areas may require rebuilding. Cementitious mortar is accelerating decay to surrounding stones. Poor condition near Fishergate Postern Tower. Poor mortar joints to parapet from Fishergate Bar to Fishergate Postern, with failed cement mortar leaving open joints collecting water and accelerating decay to surrounding stones. Open bed joints to coping stones. Open perpend joints to copings allowing vegetation growth.

Element	Rating	Comments
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Open joint between flags and parapet wall, especially bad at top of stairs from Walmgate Bar. Failing joint between edge stone and flags allowing organic growth. Cementitious repairs to fractured edge and flag stones. 1 number edge stone cracked with 3 metal cramps. Moss growth to failing flag joints. Number cracked at corners. Number of fracturing new edge stones which now require replacement. Few fractured edge stones west of Fishergate Bar. Few fractured edge stones. Cracked and wide open joint between flags and parapet wall. Pooling water on flag stones being held in by new edge stones between dog legs at chainage 3150m.
Railings		No railings.

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400



Movement to corner Chainage 3150



External wall by Fishergate Postern Tower with failing mortar joints



Failing new edge stones



Fishergate Postern Tower end poor parapet wall condition



Poor hard cement mortar at Fishergate Postern Tower end



Structural movement to corner between Fishergate Postern and Tower 39

Section 17, Tower 37

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Fair condition. Movement crack to junction with wall on east side.
Internal Masonry	M2	Movement crack under northern steps. Concentrated water weeping under walkway to centre of tower.
External Mortar	P2	Poor wide cement mortar joints now failing.
Internal Mortar	P1	Cementitious mortar but no visible issues.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Edge stones fracturing. Joints to flags allowing organic growth.

Section 17, Tower 37



External view



Movement around steps



Movement crack to eastern junction with wall



Movement crack to south elevation



Water concentration to internal wall



West elevation

Section 17, Fishergate Bar

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Vertical movement cracks west and east of Bar.
Internal Masonry	M2	Horizontal movement cracks to section below walkway north of northern set of steps. Fractured copings to northern set of steps. Vegetation to high level platform over gate. Heavy salt movement and eroding stones to two pedestrian passages and central arched gate. Stone flaunching to east side has open joints.
External Mortar	P3	Open joints from failed cement pointing and movement cracks has allowed vegetation to grow. Open joints at base. Open joints east of eastern pedestrian passage allowing vegetation growth. Movement cracks to east of Bar causing open joints.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open joints allowing vegetation growth at high level. Failing cement mortar to western stair.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few cracked stones under rusting railings. Open joints under railings.
Railings	RA1	Round handrails.

Section 17, Fishergate Bar



Cement mortar to western stair



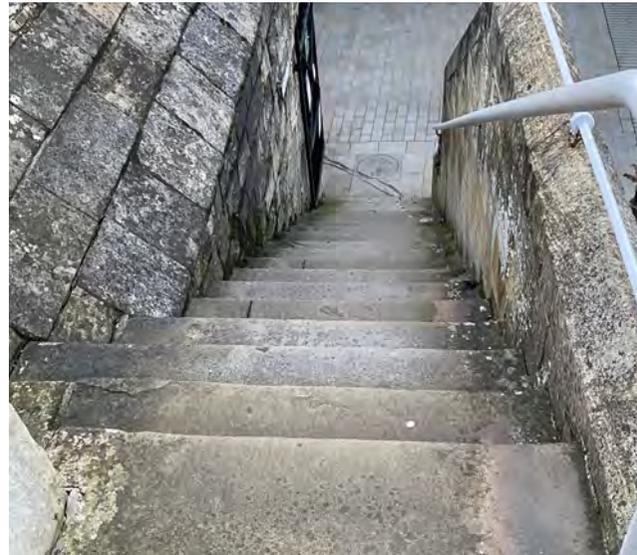
External view



Internal view



Movement to eastern junction with wall



Open joints to flaunching on eastern stair



Water saturation to pedestrian walkways

Section 17, Tower 38

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Stones suffering from cement mortar.
Internal Masonry	M2	Same as wider Section 17.
External Mortar	P3	Hard cement mortar is failing leaving open joints trapping water causing accelerated decay to surrounding stones. Low level open joints to east side.
Internal Mortar	P2	Same as wider Section 17
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Good condition.

Section 17, Tower 38



Eastern elevation



External view



Structural cracks and open joints to southern elevation



Western elevation

Section 17, Tower 39

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	SS bars within crenels. Few fractured stones. Historic movement. Movement cracks at junction to eastern wall.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition.
External Mortar	P2	Fair condition. Minor movement cracks at low level. Open perpend joints at foundation. Failing mortar at junction to eastern wall.
Internal Mortar	P2	Failing cement mortar under walkway. Movement cracks under stairs.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Good condition recently replaced and repaired.
Railings		No railings.
Doors	D3	Rotting base to timber door.
Windows	W1	Arrow slits blocked internally with masonry.
Ceiling	C2	Brick barrel vault is out of shape (bows against vault direction). Recently repaired to a utilitarian finish. Gaps along perimeter joints with external wall letting moisture in.
Internal Walls	I2	Exposed stone walls. Water ingress to north wall where the water runs off walkway above.
Internal Floors	FL2	Earth floor.
Features	FE2	Hole in chimney flue to external arrow slit. Modern plasterboard (assumed) cap is visible at the top of the flue (above opening to arrow slit) assume installed when walkway was reconstructed. The existing chimney flue has been capped with a modern material (assume plasterboard) at walkway level were perhaps it might have extended up to be a chimney. Perhaps it should be painted black so that the modern material is not so obvious or visually jarring if people look up the chimney flue.

Section 17, Tower 39



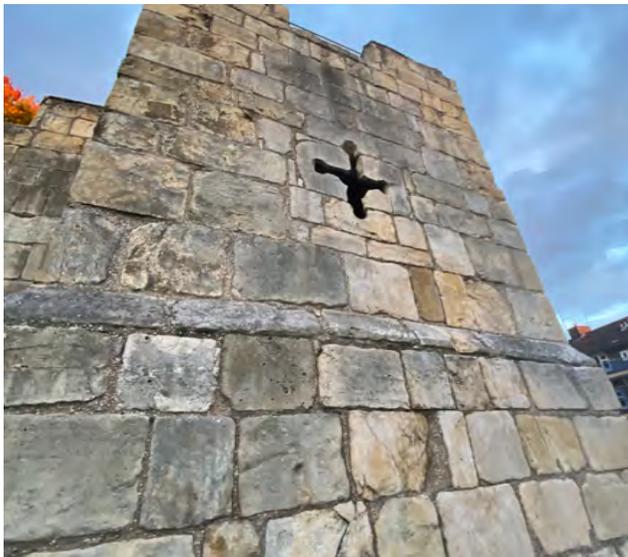
Fireplace and brick barrel vault



General external view



Rotting timber entrance door



South western face fractured stones



Walkway platform



Western junction with wall with arrow slit open to chimney flue

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Historic movement crack has been repaired. Generally good condition.
Internal Masonry	M1	Failing cement mortar to stair. Soffit of arch suffering from salt movement, algae and sulphuric crust from moisture movement from walkway above.
External Mortar	P1	Few thin open perpend joints but generally in a good condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open joints and failed cement pointing above southern steps.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Few cracked stones under rusting railings. Open joints under railings.
Railings	RA1	Good condition. Areas of rust at low level.
Roof	RO4	Clay tile roof. Moss to north side holding water and causing tiles to delaminate. Daylight can be seen through roof construction allowing water in. Roof timbers are rotting below, likely to require replacement. Timber roof structure built over crenelated parapet wall turning crenels into windows.
Doors	D1	Timber door in good condition.
Windows	W1	New modern windows.
Ceiling	C1	Exposed timber structures.
Internal Walls	I3	Dark grey cement mortar throughout. Areas of spalling stones to spiral stair, window reveals and parapet wall. Unknown purpose of masonry pockets to walls at first and second floors.
Internal Floors	FL2	Flagstones at ground floor are saturated, drainage requires improvement.
Features	FE1	Fireplace at ground floor. Garderobe at first floor.

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower



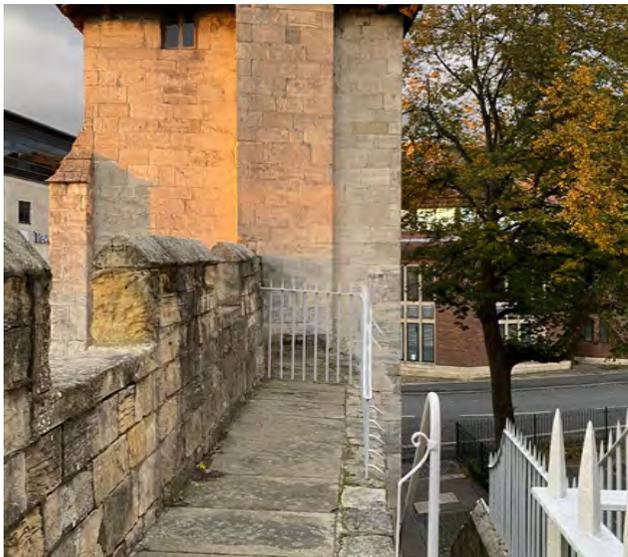
Holes in clay tile roof and rotting timber roof structure



North elevation



Sulphuric crust to arch (missing portcullis)



Walkway approach



Walkway steps and railings



Water ingress to ground floor

Section 19

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Wall covered by planting and ivy. Where wall is visible appears to be in a fair condition. Appears to be filled in crenels. Existing crenels with railings
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition. Algae growth. Few fractured and spalled stones but in stable condition.
External Mortar	P1	Cementitious mortar
Internal Mortar	P2	Open mortar joints with cement mortar accelerating erosion to surrounding stones.
Flagstone (walkway)	F2	Large stones that appear to match the wall geology (not flagstones). Open mortar joints against parapet wall with cement mortar accelerating erosion to surrounding stones. Stone has weathered away next to hard cement mortar leaving open holes for water to collect within and accelerate decay.
Railings	RA2	Railings within crenels are rusting with failing paint finish.

Section 19



Crenel with railings



Entrance



External view



Failed concrete mortar and open joints to walkway



General interior view of river end



General internal view

Section 19, Davy Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Stone wall to ground level and brick to first floor. Spalling brickwork within cement mortar. Fractured stones from ferrous fixings (south west corner), cement mortar and structural movement. North west rain water pipe is currently directing water into stone wall at low level rather than away from the building. Signs of saturation where the brick structure meets a horizontal stone surface that collects water and splashes the bricks above - assumed to be causing internal damp issues. Spalling brick below western window of south elevation. Vertical joint to western elevation is moving. Eastern chimney and elevation has extensive ivy growth. Stone at low level has suffered from saturation from rain caused by adjacent tarmac and flood damage.
External Mortar	P3	Hard cement mortar to stone at low level and brick at high level. Open joints where mortar has failed or become separated from surrounding masonry. Vertical joint to western elevation has failed cement mortar that has fallen away leaving exposed joints.
Roof	RO2	Slate roof. Ivy growth over eastern chimney. Failing cement flaunching to central chimney. Painted timber coving to eaves has peeling and failing paint.
Doors	D1	Painted timber to entrance door up external steps to assumed raised ground floor above the wall.
Windows	W2	Painted timber 6 over 6 sash windows. Paint failing. Cracks through sills and brick lintels to south western window on southern elevation.
Interior		No Access. Residential

Section 19, Davy Tower



Erosion of water within brick above low level stone



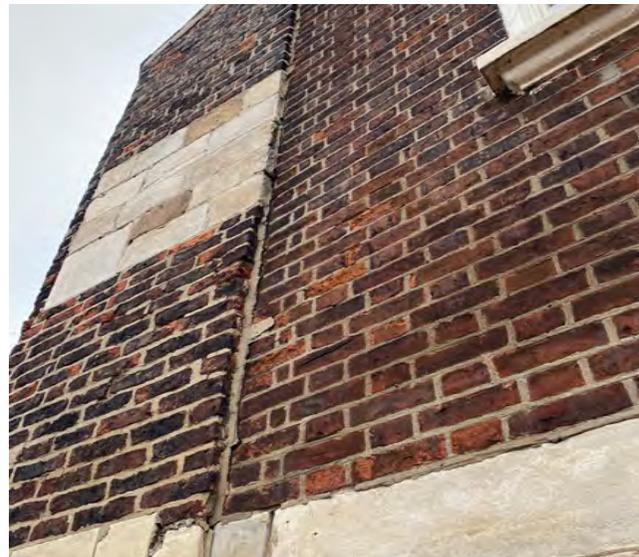
Ivy covered eastern chimney



North western elevation



Northern rainwater pipe discharging into building



Open joint to west elevation



Southern elevation

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Water Tower end: Exposed core to top of wall. Low wall near Water Tower is leaning outwards, lower course of stone has slid outwards near door. Cement mortar is causing stones to erode faster. Between St Olave's and Intermediate Tower 3 the rubble core is exposed at high level with vegetation growth. Note two new buttresses. Stretch from Intermediate Tower C to St Mary's Tower: has areas of exposed rubble core assumed to be left over from demolished buildings that once lent against wall. Heavy vegetation growth at high level. Stretch from St Mary to St Margaret's Postern Tower: is intermittent between buildings. Where visible there are scars from where buildings have been removed. Algae growth under tree canopy's. Movement cracks next to deep scars causing surrounding stones to fracture. High level vegetation growth. Small fragments of once internal paint or lime wash layers.
Internal Masonry	M2	Water Tower end: 2 movement cracks to low wall near Intermediate Tower A, assumed to be caused by tree root movement. hard cement mortar. Poorer condition of wall between Gate House and the black gates. Large section of concrete mortar repair above (non accessible) walkway. North of St Olaves wall has been built upon in brick with collapsed sections with vegetation growth. From Intermediate Tower C to St Mary's Tower the cement flaunching is failing allowing vegetation to grow. Large vegetation growth in same area. Note, timber hatches within crenels (2no.). Northern run from St Mary's Tower to St Margaret's Postern Tower has brick buildings that abut the wall with lead flashing at joints. Few number heavily eroded stones revealing core of wall. Large area of new stones integrated into fire damaged area adjacent to Intermediate Tower D. Number of fractured stones by Art Gallery, vegetation growth and areas of exposed core. Failed cement flaunching. Next to Art Gallery area very saturated causing algae growth. Failed cement flaunching and extensive vegetation growth. Rain water pipes from neighbouring property descends down wall.
External Mortar	P3	Water Tower end: Failing cement mortar near Water Tower. Poor cement mortar north of black gates. Open joints and vegetation growth in same area. Open joints and cement mortar up to Intermediate Tower B. Same continues to Gate House. St Mary's Tower to St Margaret's Postern Tower: cementitious mortar repairs are failing.
Internal Mortar	P2	Hard cement mortar to low section by Water Tower. Failing brittle cement mortar to section between Gate House and black gates. Failed cement mortar by Art Gallery with organic growth.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Short section of walk way south of Gate House.
Gate		2 sets of modern gates.

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls



Adjacent building drainage running over the walls



Extensive vegetation growth



Large cementitious repairs



Leaning wall near IT A



Timber crenel hatches



Wall north of Art Gallery saturated and covered externally by buildings

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Water Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Walls are exposed to rain with no cover to their rubble cores. Detail and stones missing from arrow slits.
Internal Masonry	M2	Fair condition. Saturated masonry and areas of vegetation growth.
External Mortar	P2	Recent repairs at low level assumed to be from flood damage. Generally fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Flush cementitious mortar.
Roof		No roof. (no walkway either)
Doors	D1	Rusting metal gate, locked.
Windows	W1	Open arrow slits with eroded stones.
Internal Floors	FL1	Gravel over geotextile. Assume original timber suspended floor is missing.

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower A

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Small low round tower with upper section of stones missing as per the surrounding area of wall. Movement cracks through structure assumed to be caused by tree roots from adjacent tress.
Internal Masonry	M2	Low masonry with exposed core. Movement cracks from tree.
External Mortar	P2	Cracking cement mortar.
Internal Mortar	P2	Hard cement mortar. Movement cracks from tree.
Flagstone (walkway)		No walkway
Railings		No railings
Interior		No interior

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower A



South elevation



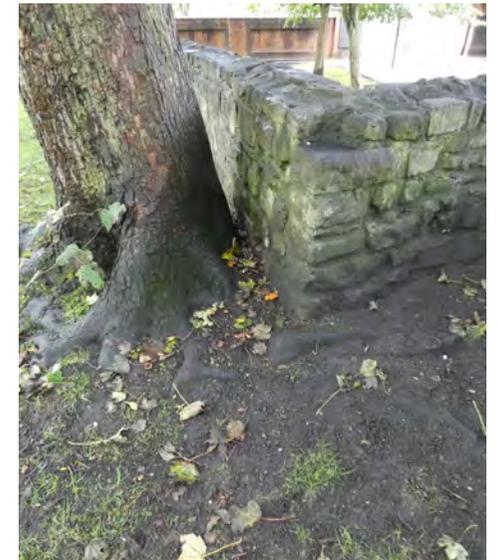
Interior with proximity to tree



Internal



Movement crack



Tree causing structural movement to wall and IT A

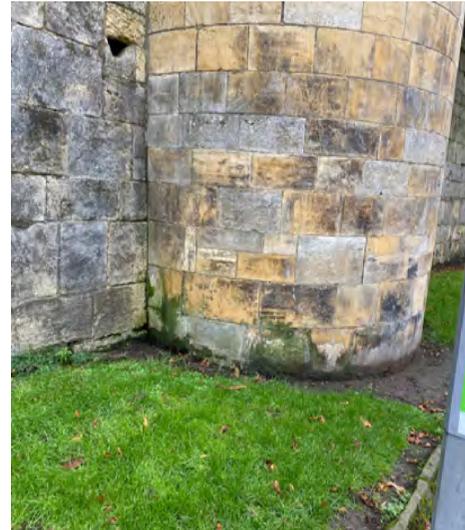
Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower B

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Good condition. Some fine movement cracks and fractured stone. Algae growth at base.
Internal Masonry	M1	Appears sound but access was not possible as structure is covered by poly tunnel from occupiers of Gate House.
External Mortar	P1	Tight joints with some movement cracks. Mortar has weathered back in places to no longer be flush.
Internal Mortar	P1	Appears flush from a distance.
Flagstone (walkway)		No access
Railings		No railings
Interior		No interior

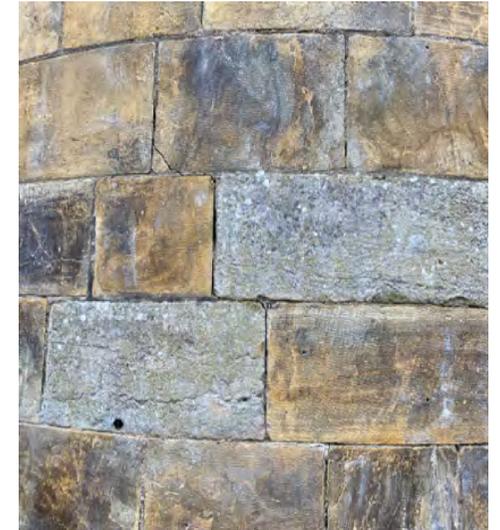
Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower B



Access restricted



Saturation at low level



Fine movement cracks to northern side



External view

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower C

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M1	Few missing sections of stone on north side. Weathered arrow slits. Open wall core at high level saturating stone and encouraging vegetation growth.
Internal Masonry	M1	saturated stones, failed cement flaunching with vegetation growth.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P1	Fair condition.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	Cement and open joints.
Windows	W2	Loss of detail to arrow slits.

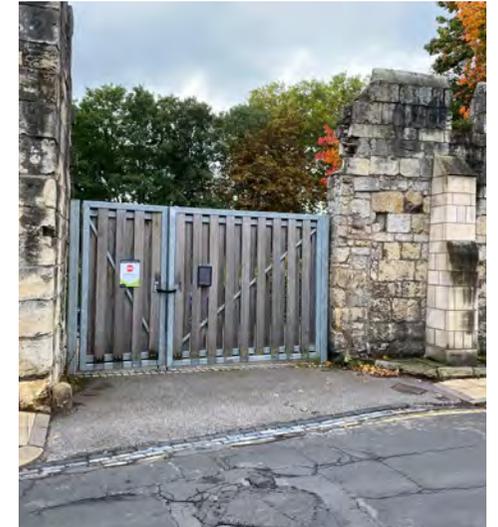
Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower C



Exterior eroding stones from concentrated water movement from fractured stone to top course



Interior, vegetation growth to horizontal surfaces



Modern gate external view



Modern gate internal view



Modern paving to base of IT C

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, St Mary's Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Blocked rain water pipe causing vegetation growth. String of decorative stones. Scar to south west face. Rusting metal cramps to north side. Exposed core where walls join on north side. Missing section of gutter allowing water to run down surface of stone.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fair condition. Areas of ashlar stone missing (historic loss).
External Mortar	P2	Brittle cementitious repointing is cracking from movement and vibration from road. Joints open at low level. 3 number vertical movement cracks. Hard cement mortar to north side. Very poor failing cement mortar on north east side of tower close to adjoining wall.
Internal Mortar	P1	Fair condition.
Roof	RO1	Clay tiles to cone shaped roof.
Doors	D3	Timber internal door appears broken from forced entry? Modern glazed external door smashed. Glazed door of poor quality and condition before damaged glass. Good door on north side.
Windows	W2	Windows are of poor quality with visible vents and pipes. Internal timber studded doors behind. Weathered window mouldings. Leaded lights to north side.
Interior		No Access

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, St Mary's Tower



Exposed core to north east



General external view



Internal elevation with broken door



Leaking rain water pipe



Structural cracks, fractured stones and failing cement mortar to eastern junction with wall



Structural movement cracks to south west corner

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower D

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M3	Movement cracks causing fractures to stones. 2 number significant cracks. One has been historically monitored. Movement through cementitious pebble dash mortar.
Internal Masonry	M1	Fire damaged stones (pink in colour) have recently been repaired with small pins. Vegetation growth. Painted steel structure over east window overpowers the tower visually and should be removed with more visually sensitive solution.
External Mortar	P3	Failing cementitious mortar with pebble dash finish has opened up around movement cracks.
Internal Mortar	P1	Recently repointed.
Flagstone (paving)	F1	Square paving slabs give a juxtaposed modern look.

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower D



Cracking along mortar joints to exterior



External structural movement cracks



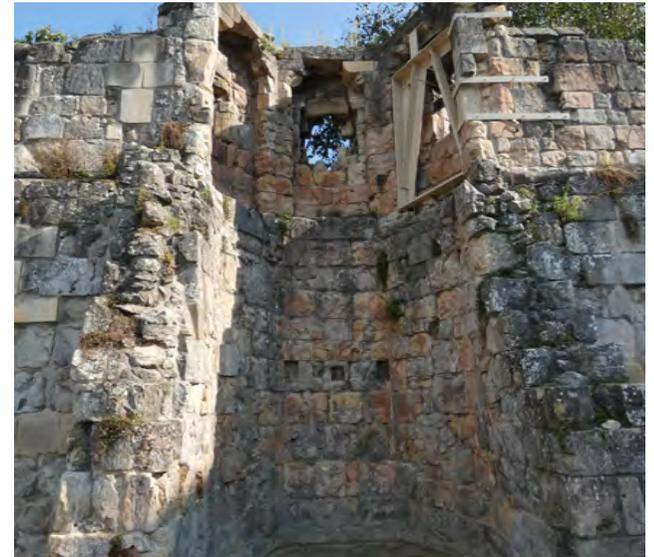
Internal view



Modern base to IT D



Pink fire damaged stones pinned

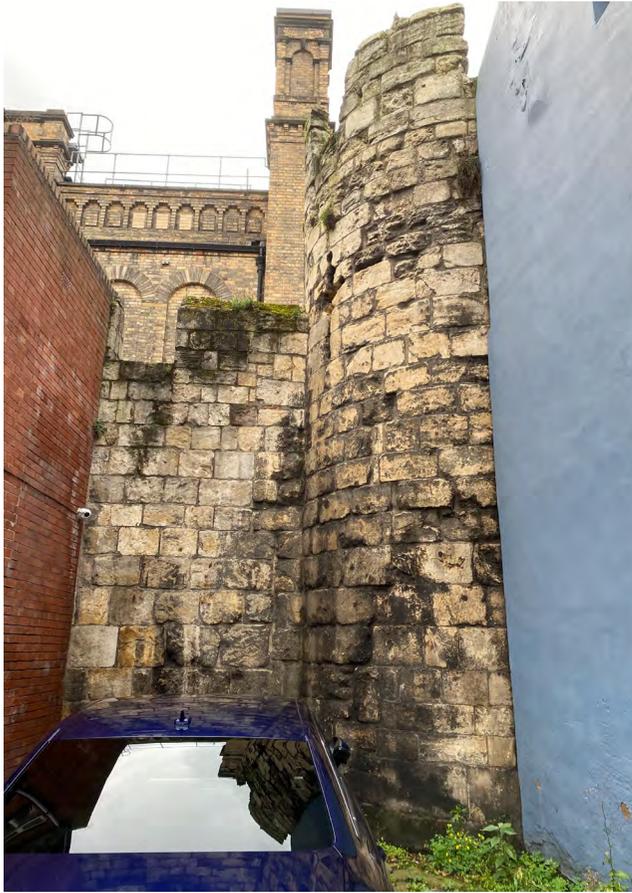


Steel brace intervention

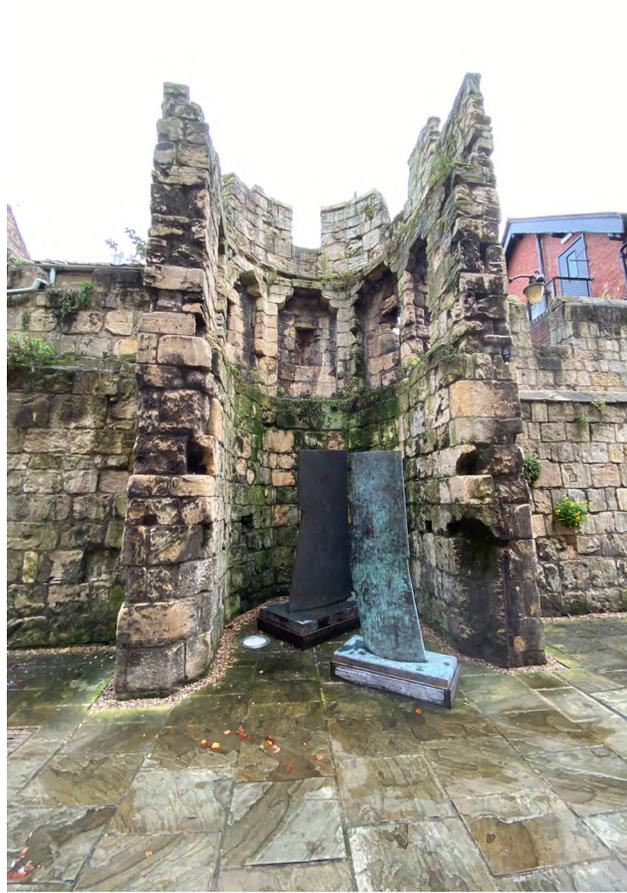
Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Intermediate Tower E

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	Heavily weathered finials. Saturation at high level. Black sulphuric crust. Vegetation growth.
Internal Masonry	M2	Heavily saturated with extensive algae growth. Thick sulphuric crust. Failed cement flashing with Extensive vegetation growth. Cracks through stone lintels to be monitored.
External Mortar	P2	Flush but suffering from sulphuric crust and vegetation growth.
Internal Mortar	P2	Cement mortar.
Flagstone (walkway)	F1	French drain at base. Riven stone flags.
Windows	W2	Weathered stone to windows. Sulphuric crust build up.

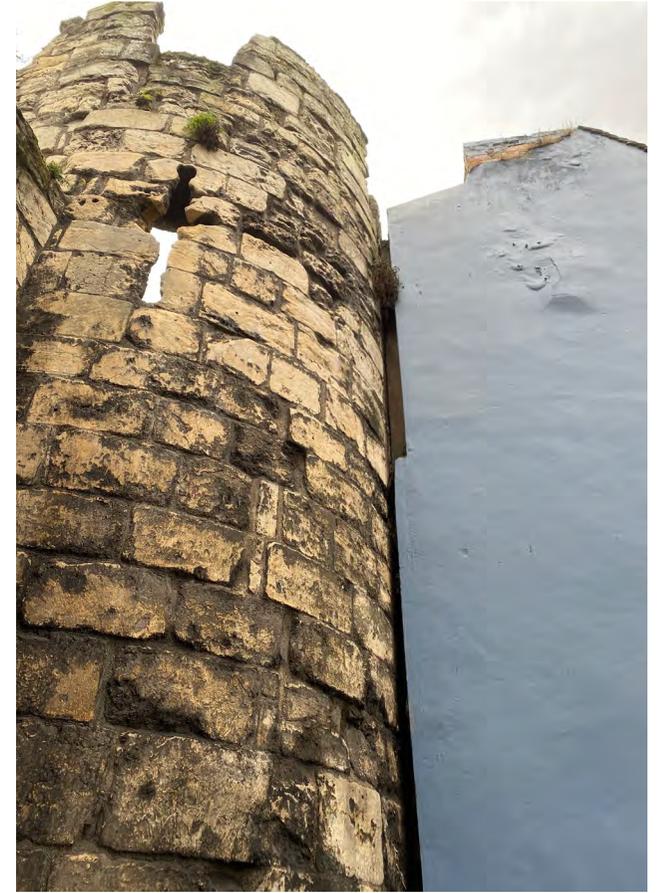
**Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct,
Intermediate Tower E**



External view



Internal view



Junction with building

**Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct,
Intermediate Tower E**



North west elevation



Saturated walkway north of Art Gallery

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Postern Tower

Element	Rating	Comments
External Masonry	M2	High level saturation over arch with vegetation growth. Loss of detail to hood moulding to arch.
Internal Masonry	M3	Cables hanging over facade. Crack through window lintel. Heavily weathered stone to springing point of arch. Arch suffering from sulphuric crust and cementitious repairs trapping mortar and accelerating decay. SVP and RWP blocked on south west side with vegetation growth.
External Mortar	P1	Fair condition.
Internal Mortar	P2	Open joints at low level. Heavily eroded stone at base of arch. Open joints and vegetation growth over arch.
Roof	RO1	Clay tile roof. No reported leaks.
Doors	D1	Double timber door. Minor graffiti damage.
Windows	W1	Leaded light windows with timber shutters.
Ceiling	C2	Exposed timber with 2 water stains from leaking WC. Modern plaster ceiling to top floor hiding timber roof structure with no access hatch to allow inspection or maintenance.
Internal Walls	I2	Exposed bricks. Evidence of salt movement. Damp to spiral stair external wall in location of external RWP and SVP.
Internal Floors	FL1	Carpet. WC to top floor.
Features	FE1	Brick arched reveals, stairs and windows.

Section 20, St Mary's Abbey Precinct, Postern Tower



Erosion of stone from water getting trapped behind sulphuric crust



Internal water ingress through cementitious render to spiral stairs from external down pipes



Rain water and soil pipes to north western elevation causing water ingress



South east view



South west view



Top floor modern ceiling with no access to roof void, cement mortar to bricks

Key

-  Good condition
-  Average condition
-  Average condition
-  Poor condition



Map 3.1 Summary of Condition Map



Visual Survey

Section 1

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations ¹
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>There is appropriate signage and interpretation regarding Baile Hill and Tower 1 located at bottom of steps of Tower 1 - CYC Boards with QR codes and a retrace panel. No signage to Baile Hill itself, or to Tower 2.</p> <p>Lighting comprises large floodlights in cages near Tower 1, which light the ramparts rather than walls / tower.</p>	<p>This area has an interesting history, with various past uses, which would benefit greatly from interpretation to promote better understanding and engagement and to encourage use by local communities. Tower 2 offers opportunities for interpretation by providing views down into the structure of the wall from the walkway (proposals are currently being developed by CYC). Light fittings and casings should be upgraded to improve their relationship with the setting of the walls and as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats and invertebrates.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV3	<p>The setting within the walls has a quiet residential suburban character with an intimate feel owing to its scale - with a backdrop of modest and attractive Victorian brick terraced houses facing onto the ramparts (Bishop Hill). Baile Hill is a major, wooded topographical feature, which characterises the area and the Walls provide an attractive limestone backdrop and sense of enclosure to the open space. The river and Victorian Skeldersgate Bridge lie within the immediate setting, though obscured from the walls by trees, there are attractive views of it from the outer ramparts, on Bishopgate Street. From this section of the wall walk and Tower 1, there are views north over the Victorian terraces of Baile Hill Terrace and Kyme Street to the clock tower of the Magistrates Court. The railed ramps leading to the Bonding Warehouse detract.</p>	<p>Views to and from the Hill could be revealed through the management of the trees on Baile Hill. A thorough review of the 1750s planting scheme and how this might affect the stability of the hill, ecology and other factors would need to be carefully considered. N.B. this would only be beneficial if it would reveal important visual connection to an interrelated structure (e.g. Bitchdaughter Tower).</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 1, Chainage No. 0–150

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations ¹
Access	A3	There is stepped access to the walls, with removed Victorian railings to the access steps and modern railings (detracting) facing Baile Hill and the steps leading from Tower 1 to the wall walk. People can access the wall walk from an informal path adjacent to Baile Hill. A pavement, following the line of the walls, is provided internally and externally.	The modern railings between Tower 1 and 2 are visually intrusive; their replacement would enhance the appearance of this section of wall. Access to Baile Hill could be improved with a new level path from the walkway to the hilltop, sensitive landscaping and seating; subject to a review of the archaeological implications and other factors such as ecology. The wall walk comes very low to the rampart near to Baile Hill, which provides an opportunity for improving physical access to the wall walk by provision of ramp or similar.
Ramparts	R2	<p>The outer ramparts are steep with grass, planted with some mature trees lining the roadside. Access to the base of the rampart is easy, via a low dwarf brick and stone wall.</p> <p>There is some erosion to the first section, between Towers 1 and 2 and there is street furniture / clutter near Tower 1.</p> <p>Top is low where movement is taking place; generally steep with trees at east end. There is a rotting stump under first corner, which could cause issues in future. By Tower 1: Height against stone wall should be monitored. Perhaps has lowered to reveal rough foundation stones?</p>	The opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties as a low-carbon heat network should be considered. This would align with the Government's 2017 Clean Growth Strategy. It would also provide an archaeological opportunity to excavate within the ramparts, but could be costly. The stability of Baile Hill should be reviewed and again any proposals would be subject to an archaeological review.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 1, Chainage No. 0–150

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations ¹
Ramparts cont.	R2	<p>The inner ramparts are shallower (eroded), grassed with some mature trees lining Baile Hill Terrace and Baile Hill itself. Again, public access is relatively easy, through an opening in the dwarf brick wall lining this street. Top of Baile Hill is accessed off Baile Hill Road.</p> <p>Baile Hill is a circular mound (motte). Mature sycamore trees cover the slope holding the ground together. Rotten timbers believed to be for retaining. Low retaining stone walls at pavement side. Earth from mound is beginning to go over the top of the wall. Flat grass covered top to mound with clearing within the trees. Mud paths provide access to the top. No direct access (locked gate and rotten timber steps) to or from the wall walk, although well used as a short cut by locals.</p>	
Visitor Facilities	VF3	None.	See recommendation for Baile Hill in Access.
Notes		The ashlar wall stretching from the NE corner of Tower 1 was an open urinal in the late-19 th century – and has since been removed.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

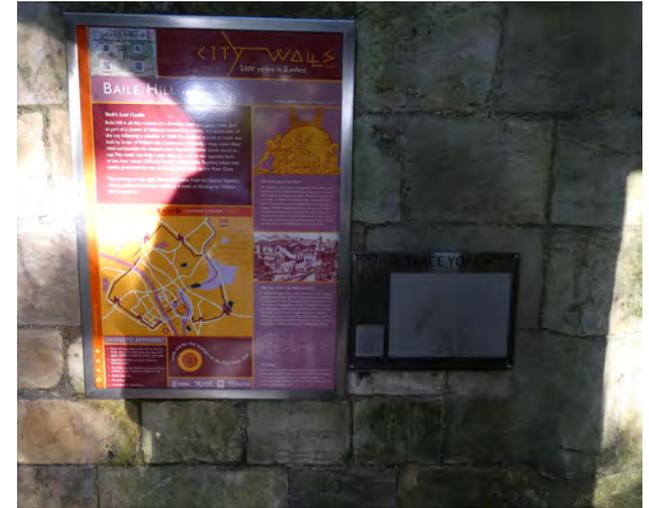
Section 1, Chainage No. 0–150



Section 1 Erosion at Baile Hill



Section 1 Modern railings between Baile Hill and the wall walk



Section 1 interpretation board and Retrace York panel



Section 1 View towards Baile Hill Terrace



Section 1 View towards Baile Hill along outer rampart



Section 1 Outer rampart lighting, Tower 1

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 2, Bitchdaughter Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>On the outer ramparts there are bulky floodlights encased in cages at the base of Bitchdaughter Tower.</p> <p>There is some subtle interpretation in the form of a stone paver inscribed with the respective locations of Baile Hill and Clifford's Tower - though should be closer to the Hill itself - it's location here is not explained.</p>	<p>Light fittings and casings should be upgraded to improve their relationship with the setting of the walls and as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact.</p> <p>Bitchdaughter Tower would benefit from improved signage and interpretation on the wall walk/tower platform to promote better understanding and engagement, including reference to its former prison use. Further research into the tower's history would assist this. Baile Hill / Clifford's Tower signage should be reviewed or an explanation for markers should be provided - perhaps online / in a leaflet.</p> <p>Providing access into the tower would be of great benefit, with associated interpretation, this could be secured and controlled by tour guides and reinstate the historic door which is currently lying on the ground decaying.</p> <p>The tower could also serve an alternative ecological use, such as housing bees/bats.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV3	<p>The views, character and setting here are similar to Sections 1 and 3 - attractive local views of Victorian terraces with some longer range views of landmark buildings. It also provides a viewing point for Baile Hill and the impressive straight section of Walls heading north west towards Micklegate Bar.</p>	<p>Interpretation / signage of views of Baile Hill and those along the straight section of wall towards Micklegate Bar could be provided, potentially with an in-ground marker or artwork.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 2, Bitchdaughter Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	<p>Access to the wall walk is via steps, plus additional steps up to the tower. No railings but only a short drop to inner rampart.</p> <p>No access to the interior of the Tower - currently boarded up. Rotting door (historic) lying on the floor within.</p>	<p>Through the provision of ramping to address the two shallow steps up onto Bitchdaughter Tower and two shallow steps off onto the wall heading north west to Victoria Bar, where the wall is at its widest, level access could be provided to a large section of the wall walk and directly to the Tower interior (to be developed in line with its future interpretive use). This in-turn could feed into promotion of this section wall as an accessible visitor attraction within the city.</p>
Ramparts	R1	Good.	<p>As above - options should be explored to provide access to wall walk. As with the previous section, the opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties as a low-carbon heat network should be considered alongside the archaeological implications.</p>
Visitor Facilities	VF4	None.	<p>Consider benches on the tower platform as it serves as a natural resting point with attractive views of the Walls and the Victorian terraces.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 2, Bitchdaughter Tower



Section 2 External view of Bitchdaughter Tower



Section 2 View of Bitchdaughter Tower from the wall walk



Section 2 View of Baile Hill from Bitchdaughter Tower



Section 2 In-ground marker at Bitchdaughter Tower



Section 2 Access steps at Bitchdaughter Tower



Section 2 Interior of Bitchdaughter Tower

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	Some very subtle interpretation in the form of a stone paver inscribed at Tower 7 with 'St Mary's Church, Bishophill', indicating its proximity (to the north). Victoria Bar features a CYC interpretation board and QR code at the base of the steps. No interpretation on the wall walk about this Bar. Outside the walls - The Nunnery Lane carpark has basic visitor information and a map.	<p>The provision of interpretation at Victoria Bar on the wall walk itself would promote better understanding and engagement – this could take the form of an in-ground marker naming the Bar. Opening the towers, for use as exhibitions or similar, would enable further engagement with the public, particularly Tower 7 (Sadler Tower). The minor towers could serve an alternative ecological use, such as housing bees/bats (some already in this use).</p> <p>Externally the Wall near Saddler Tower contains a good example of a stone shattered by a cannon shot which could be interpreted near Victoria Bar or along the outer pathway, encouraging visitors and local people to 'read' and better understand the archaeological evidence in the wall. The incised arcading at Tower 10 also provides similar opportunities.</p>
	S3	Generally limited signage other than recent COVID-related signs / arrows on the pavers.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV2	<p>Impressive views along the straight section of the wall walk of Micklegate Bar - representing the Roman town limits. Inside the walls there are attractive Victorian residential streets lined with trees and a view of St Mary's and of the Minster beyond (from wall walk between towers 7 and 8). Generally more civic buildings closer to Micklegate. Attractive local view from Victoria Bar along Victor Street and views of Magistrate's Court.</p> <p>Outside walls - development close to Micklegate Bar, including rear gardens of the Punchbowl.</p> <p>Outside the walls, near Micklegate Bar, there is a large carpark lined with a dwarf wall and trees at the base of the rampart; busy Nunnery lane and a 1980s single storey cafe, which detract. Attractive view to Scarcroft School along street off Nunnery lane and Victorian terraces.</p>	<p>Moving the carpark or providing landscaping would enhance the setting of the walls.</p> <p>The provision of resting stops would encourage visitors to pause to enjoy the key views.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	<p>Obtrusive modern railings and spikes to the southern steps at Victoria Bar, variety of Victorian railings lining the road and northern steps. The gate at Victoria Bar steps is closed at present due to the one way system. As with most of these gates - there is a City of York rose emblem attached.</p> <p>Road access at Victoria Bar is limited with bollards, providing access to card holders only.</p> <p>No railings to most part of wall walk.</p> <p>Modern brushed stainless steel rails to crenels of Tower 9.</p> <p>The gates leading to the outer ramparts off Nunnery Lane feature no signage.</p>	<p>Improving the appearance or replacing the modern railings would enhance the appearance of the walls. The paint scheme for metalwork across the walls should be reviewed and a new colour scheme could be based on historic paint analysis.</p> <p>Expansion of the playground facilities would supplement this section of walls as a visitor attraction. Information on the air raid shelters in this area should be provided through interpretation (virtual or physical) - the largest shelter in York was located where the playground now stands.</p> <p>The provision of a ramp up to the wall walk from the public gardens would improve access and, alongside improvements to the ramparts and playground and creation of resting stops, could enable this part of the wall to be promoted as a particularly family-friendly section.</p> <p>Victoria Bar gates should be opened to allow public access to the wall walk.</p> <p>As above, in interpretation, public access to the towers should be improved, potentially through controlled 'behind the scenes' tours. Currently towers are only opened for maintenance purposes.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R2	Inner ramparts planted with trees near residential streets, lined with low walls. Mostly grassed areas, fairly overgrown, with less physically accessible areas such as those nearer Micklegate featuring brambles and nettles. Collapsed section of rampart between Towers 7 and 8. Outer ramparts are steep and lawned. There are trees on the ramparts close to the walls as well as lining the carpark (no perceived issue to wall). Between Victoria Bar and Bitchdaughter Tower, ramparts are planted with trees near roadside and lined with dwarf walls - providing attractive local walks.	The overgrown area of ramparts adjacent to beer garden would benefit from improvement. The opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties should be considered alongside archaeological potential and cost considerations.
Visitor Facilities	VF3	There is a small a playground at the base of the inner ramparts. On the wall walk there are no facilities. There are WCs at the Nunnery Lane carpark.	Tower 9 presents the opportunity for a a resting spot. Creation of family-focus to this section of wall as per above. With this in mind, this section of the Walls presents a possible location for an improved toilet (particularly given its residential location). One of the towers has the potential to be a seasonal pop-up shop/food outlet. This would enable the public to engage with the towers and their interiors as well as providing passive surveillance and a commercial income for CYC.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
		Notes on Sadler's Bar 7: Beehive within Tower, accessed via rampart. Attractive views along Fairfax Street to the pinnacle of the Magistrate's Court and local church. Note: Underside of wall walk concreted along whole stretch.	Interpretation opportunity / information board? However, access is difficult (via steep rampart).

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 3, Chainage no. 150–650



Section 3 View to Minster over Bishophill



Section 3 View along wall walk to Micklegate Bar



Section 3 View to St Mary's Bishophill



Section 3 Nunnery Lane car park



Section 3 Outer ramparts near Victoria Bar



Section 3 Railings at Victoria Bar



Section 3 Incised arcading at Tower 10



Section 3 Tower 7, with adjacent walls displaying signs of cannon shot damage

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage / Lighting	S2	<p>Signage / information boards at the base of the Bar are generally good / appropriate - two information boards with QR codes, a further sign on the Bar and a metal Siege of York plaque.</p> <p>Gate signage is shabby and could be upgraded.</p> <p>Limited external signage for the Museum. Visitor facilities and information boards within the Museum are good; they include interpretation of the portcullis.</p> <p>Lighting under carriageway - large mid/late-20th century bulkheads.</p>	<p>The Henry VII Museum would benefit from improved signage (although this may be because it is closed - are there normally temporary signs?).</p> <p>The signage to the Bar gates, pipework and lighting should be reviewed to reduce visual clutter. The introduction of discreet signage for the Bar on the wall walk would improve wayfinding and interpretation.</p> <p>Making the portcullis operational (on a managed basis/linked to events) would enhance the visitor interest; particularly amongst school groups etc.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Views / Setting	SV1	<p>There is an urban character to the setting of the Bar, made up of a variety of building types of various ages, which hem the Bar in. Despite this, the Bar dominates the streetscene and there are very attractive street views along Micklegate and to a lesser extent Blossom Street, framed by the Bar's arches. There are views from the upper levels of the Bar itself, though the plastic in the arrowslits and windows has degraded, making views difficult. There are also strong, positive views of the Bar from the wall walk.</p> <p>A new roof garden development outside the walls (to the S), is attractive and appropriate to the setting.</p> <p>The area adjacent to the Punch Bowl and its on-street bin storage detract. Surface mounted cabling and rainwater pipes on the Bar detract.</p>	<p>Improvements should be made to the 'garden' areas adjacent to the Punch Bowl and the plant / vents which should be removed where possible and otherwise screened and smells mitigated. The pub's bin storage should be provided off the street.</p> <p>Plastic glazing in bridge walkway and to the upper floors of the Bar should be replaced to enhance high level views along Micklegate / Blossom Street; the integration of virtual technologies to show historic views along Micklegate, towards the Bar, would improve public engagement and understanding of the development of its setting and its former role..</p> <p>Potential to replace the new pitched roof with a flat roof to enable public access onto the roof of the Bar (to match Walmgate and future Monk and Bootham Bar aspirations).</p>
Access	A3	<p>Via steep steps only. Spikes to the west access stair wall, modern handrail to both west and east stair walls. Victorian railings to the top of the east access steps where they lead to wall walk. Access within the Bar is via steep timber staircases. Gates to the bridge walkway have been introduced to discourage antisocial behaviour (c.2005). N.B. Recent ban on vehicles directly under the Bar - vehicles now go through side arches.</p>	<p>Improving the appearance or replacing the modern railings would enhance the appearance of the walls. The paint scheme for metalwork across the walls should be reviewed and a new colour scheme could be based on historic paint analysis.</p> <p>The provision of virtual access to the Bar would enhance engagement and understanding.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R2	Low ramparts, grassed and a little unkempt / overgrown. Retaining walls to each side.	<p>A terrace / seating area could be created to the outside ramparts (S), with access from side door near the east access steps to provide additional visitor facilities and encourage visitors to stop and engage with the walls for longer.</p> <p>The ramparts provide the opportunity for the creation of an ecological corridor, linking sections 3 and 5 of the walls.</p> <p>The inner rampart next to pub beer garden (Punch Bowl) would benefit from being cleared and improved; the creation of an enlarged, well-landscaped beer garden would provide further opportunity to linger and engage with the walls.</p>
Visitor Facilities	VF1	Henry VII Experience is currently closed due to COVID. The Bar has been structurally repaired, with new internal structure. Cabling within the spaces could be reviewed along with shop clutter. Litter bins at the base of the Bar provide visual and physical clutter and could look better.	<p>The museum would benefit from improved signage and a general uplift including the removal of furniture/clutter in the museum shop and the rationalisation of cabling etc.</p> <p>Whilst litter bins are required, improvements could be made to reduce the visual clutter at the base of the Bar.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 4, Micklegate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
The Museum: Henry VII Experience		<p>Notes on Interior: First floor accessed via bridge. On the bridge walkway in places there appear to be traces of plaster and red colouring on the internal stonework. Third floor exhibition space has modern laminate floor, probably 19th century roof beams augmented in recent works with new hangers, purlins, and tension bars near end walls. Second floor exhibition space, laminate floors over historic and replacement timber beam floor structure. Leaded windows and arrowslits with plastic (failing). Faux fireplace (part of recent works) Similar at first floor, carpeted floors over stone flag and brick. Main shop/entrance with flanking office/staff spaces off. Modern timber staircase with metal balusters throughout. Very poor quality cement repointing in shop area.</p>	Review pointing in the shop, replace plastic in the windows / arrowslits.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 4, Micklegate Bar



Section 4 South elevation of Micklegate Bar



Section 4 North elevation of Micklegate Bar from Micklegate



Section 4 Siege of York plaque at Micklegate Bar



Section 4 Interior of Micklegate Bar



Section 4 Outer rampart near Micklegate Bar



Section 4 Overgrown area adjacent to Micklegate Bar

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>Minimal signage to most of this stretch of the wall walk. There is a metal in-ground marker on the wall walk (near Tower 14) denoting the location of the old station. There is outdated signage near Station Rise access steps (next to the railways arches). Signage and gates here also need maintenance. There is signage / CYC information boards (with QR codes) at the end of the wall walk, near Barker Tower.</p> <p>There are large floodlights in cages.</p> <p>This section contains one of the few stretches of wall walk that comes down to pavement level (adjacent to Barker Tower) and confusingly which does not have No Dogs signs. A contradictory signage issue which has caused problems with dog-walkers.</p> <p>There is a sundial set in stone, at the base of the ramparts near the 1876 Railway arch, which reads 'come from the four winds of breath', 1946.</p>	<p>The provision of discreet signage and interpretation along this section of wall would enhance public understanding and engagement whilst the access gates would benefit from being repaired / repainted.</p> <p>Review 'No dogs' signage.</p> <p>Access to / interpretation of air raid shelters near Tower 15 should be provided to enhance public engagement and understanding.</p> <p>Toft's Tower should be signified with an in-ground marker or similar.</p> <p>Light fittings and casings should be upgraded to improve their relationship with the setting of the walls and as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	SV1 - After Tower 14 the Minster comes into view and provides a dramatic sense of arrival into York, with the War Memorial and The Grand Hotel in the foreground. Through wall's crenellations the Principal Hotel at the Station is visible.	The outside of this section of wall presents the opportunity for enhancement; including for the development of new buildings using good quality modern design and materials that are appropriate in their size and location.
	SV3	<p>SV3 - Sections between Micklegate Bar and Toft's Tower feature limited local views along Queen Street. Beyond Toft's Tower, approaching views of the Station are attractive and there are impressive views back to the flank wall of Micklegate Bar.</p> <p>Modern development on the inside of the walls spoils the setting somewhat - particularly the 1960s road bridge and large areas of parking around Stevenson House. Long views over the railtracks of a water tower and suburban terraces are of limited interest.</p> <p>Views of the newest development - Hudson House (under construction) - impinge on walls as they pop above the crenellations in views of the Walls on arrival from the Station.</p> <p>Railings to 1876 Railway arch and street furniture / clutter in this area detract. The Rowing Club building is utilitarian and detracts.</p>	<p>Due consideration would need to be given as to whether new buildings enhance or intrude into the setting of the walls, their environment and the views to and from them. Future development should avoid competing with walls and key views such as those of the walls from the Station on arrival into York must be considered. Views of the Station are likely to be improved under the latest 'Station Approach' proposals.</p> <p>The general setting of the walls would benefit from improvement including softening the large areas of parking through improved landscaping and the reduction of street clutter around the Railway arches.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	<p>This section contains one of the few stretches of wall walk that comes down to pavement level (adjacent to Barker Tower).</p> <p>Via steps from Micklegate Bar. The modern railings to the wall walk between Micklegate Bar and Tower 14 are visually intrusive. There are steps along this course of wall walk to the towers also and the walkway is uneven and narrows (pinch-points). Railings over the Railway arch features railings in a Victorian style.</p> <p>Pavements adjacent to the ramparts around Station Rise / Station Road are pebbled, discouraging pedestrians. The road bridge over Leeman Road/Rougier Street (1876 Railway Arch) has a ridge (raised in the early-20th century). There are modern brushed stainless steel tubular rails between the crenels here.</p>	<p>Improving the appearance or replacing the modern railings would enhance the appearance of the walls. The paint scheme for metalwork across the walls should be reviewed and a new colour scheme could be based on historic paint analysis.</p> <p>A review of the pavements to enable pedestrian access to the base of the inner and outer ramparts should be undertaken.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R3	The inner ramparts near Micklegate Bar feature scrubby areas of grass, with Victorian dwarf stone walls, iron gate and posts. Between Micklegate Bar and Tofts Tower the steep inner ramparts are largely impinged by large modern developments including Stevenson House. The lower portions of the ramparts here are retained by modern red brick walls and the area is not very accessible to the public. Within the inner ramparts behind the War Memorial is a large air raid shelter. Between Towers 14 and 16, the inner ramparts are overgrown, with a tall brick retaining wall facing new development next to Stevenson House. The ramparts between Leeman Road and Barker Tower are well maintained and contain floral displays in summer. Grave stone or sign post near Tower 16.	<p>New uses should be considered to the parts of the ramparts which are currently inaccessible to the public or overgrown.</p> <p>The ramparts provide the opportunity for the creation of an ecological corridor, including wild flower planting on inner ramparts (those set behind the War Memorial), utilising this existing feature for ecological benefits; and the opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties should be considered alongside archaeological potential and cost considerations.</p>
	R2	The outer ramparts are impinged by buildings on Queen Street, but then open up on approach to the Station. The ramparts here are steep, grassed but accessible at the base. The ramparts along Queen Street are planted intermittently with trees and there are low dwarf stone walls. Between Toft's Tower and Tower 14 and near Tower 16 they have been curtailed to make way for modern development. Those around the cholera burial ground have eroded and now feature flat and well-maintained areas planted with mature trees. Near the York City Rowing Club, the ramparts appear to be less regularly maintained (but not neglected).	<p>The provision of benches to the outer ramparts between Station Rise and Leeman Road would enable visitors to stop and linger and link to the gardens green network and Memorial Gardens, this would be further enhanced by wider improvements to the pedestrian experience such as the introduction of shared surfaces.</p> <p>The areas occupied by YCRC required better maintenance; the provision of outdoor seating areas associated with the club to take in setting of walls and the river would be of benefit to both the club and visitor experience. Potential to adapt wall lining the towpath to enhance views of the river from the ramparts / boat club.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Visitor Facilities	VF3	<p>There is shabby municipal bench and a stone-clad litter bin at Toft's Tower.</p> <p>There is an interactive visitor 'tower' near the station/cholera burial ground, providing digital maps etc.</p>	<p>Benches and litter bins at Toft's Tower should be upgraded - similarly provision at base of outer ramparts between Station Rise and Leeman Road.</p> <p>A number of pinch-points along the wall walk present the opportunity for a larger resting point to be created through modern intervention to better capture the exceptional views of the Minster.</p> <p>As with all other recommendations in this section, this would need to be subject to a thorough design and archaeological review, according to each specific location.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 5, Chainage no. 650–1300



Section 5 Outdated sign near the Station Rise access steps



Section 5 View towards Minster, with The Grand and War Memorial



Section 5 Stephenson House and truncated ramparts



Section 5 Queen Street Road Bridge



Section 5 War Memorial



Section 5 Visual clutter at Station Rise

Section 6, Barker Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage / Lighting	S3	<p>The signage is limited to the CYC interpretation board at the end of Section 5.</p> <p>The underside of the road bridge at towpath level is illuminated by crude strip lights.</p>	<p>Naming Barker Tower externally and the provision of additional interpretation at towpath level would enhance public understanding and engagement.</p> <p>The road bridge would benefit from improved lighting which could feature light/art installation.</p> <p>The potential for future archaeological deposits presents the opportunity for interpretation based upon the archaeological significance of the walls at this point.</p>
Views / Setting	SV2	<p>There are very attractive river views from the Tower, both within and out. This tower has a strong visual connection with the river, bridge and Lendal Tower - which contribute to its setting considerably. The tower itself is a distinctive part of the street and riverscape, particularly its conical roofscape as seen from the bridge. The tarmac towpath visually detracts.</p>	<p>Improvements to the towpath surfaces would improve the setting of the tower; whilst improved areas for outdoor seating would enhance the visitor experience.</p>
Access	A2	<p>Access to view the Tower's exterior is at towpath level. Access from the rest of wall walk/road level is via set of stone steps with modern handrails. Access to the building itself is via steep stone steps.</p>	<p>The provision of virtual access to the Tower would enhance engagement and understanding.</p>
Ramparts		None	No ramparts to this section.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	<p>There is a café in the Tower with seasonal outdoor seating. N.B. the ground floor is prone to flooding and so is only used on a temporary basis.</p>	No recommendations.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 6, Barker Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
		<p>Notes on Interior: Two floors, occupied as a café. The ground floor is very susceptible to flooding so only used on temporal basis, with arcaded walls, stone flag floors, modern timber floor structure, mesh windows. There is also a fireplace at this level. The first floor holds the main part of the café, with stone flag floors, timber conical roof structure - variety of ages but mostly modern and modern timber framed windows. The staircase mentioned in the RCHME volume is potentially in location of a blocked trapdoor in the first floor. Views of the river, bridge and Lendal Tower.</p>	<p>Potential for future archaeological deposits and therefore investigation.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 6, Barker Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>The Tower is well (and appropriately) signed and there is a CYC interpretation board on the bridge, adjacent to the steps to the towpath and a further plaque on the Tower itself.</p> <p>Signage relating to the river cruises clutter the bridge and base of the Tower.</p>	<p>Signage relating to the river cruises could be reviewed in terms of its appearance to reduce clutter.</p> <p>The provision of interpretation at towpath level would enhance public understanding and engagement.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>The Tower is set within a cobbled enclave along with Lendal Hill House, Whistler House and the former Engine House, which contribute strongly to its setting both through historic association and visual quality. The Tower fronts the river directly and has a strong visual relationship with the river, the bridge and Barker Tower. It also forms part of impressive sequential views along the bridge and its towers, terminating in views of the Minster. Views are slightly impinged by the mature tree to the NE.</p>	<p>Views would be improved through the removal of signage, which clutters the base of the Tower. Pruning of the mature tree to the NE of Lendal Tower would enhance views north to the Minster.</p>
Access	A1	<p>The Tower is visible from the bridge/street level though access to towpath from bridge is via steep steps.</p>	<p>The access and surfaces to the base of the tower from the north side of the bridge require improvement, whilst retaining overall character and historic road surfaces.</p>
	A3	<p>Access to the towpath is difficult to negotiate - via cobbled and York stone path off the north side of bridge. There is no public access to the Tower / Lendal Hill House itself (holiday rental only*).</p>	<p>The provision of virtual access to the tower would enhance engagement and understanding.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 6, Barker Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts		None.	No ramparts to this section.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	Restaurant within former Engine House complex, including an extension and new terrace facing the river.	Opening the Tower and providing access to the tower roof (on a managed basis such as Doors Open Day and additional events) would greatly enhance the visitor experience and understanding.
		Notes on Lendal Hill House: In private residential use, not inspected internally.	
		Notes on Engine House: Converted into The Star restaurant. Modern extension to west of Engine House.	
		Notes on Lendal Tower: In use as a holiday rental. Railings to the top of the Tower	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 6, Barker Tower



Section 6 View of North Street Postern and Barker Tower



Section 6 Barker Tower from Lendal Bridge



Section 6 North Street Postern



Section 6 Road Bridge adjacent to Barker Tower



Section 6 View of Barker Tower, Lendal Bridge and Lendal Tower



Section 6 Ground floor of Barker Tower

Section 7, Lendal Tower



Section 7 View of Lendal Tower from the Bridge



Section 7 View towards Lendal Tower, with Whistler House and Lendal Hill House in foreground



Section 7 Cluttered signage near Lendal Tower



Section 7 View of The Star - converted Engine House



Section 7 Lendal Tower Service areas to the rear of The Star

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>At present there is no signage at the entrance to the Archive and the various stretches of Wall behind it are not well signed and are difficult to find. The areas behind the Library and the footpath beside the King's Manor have an aura of private property that do not encourage exploration. The interpretation in the undercroft of St Leonard's is inaccessible at present due to Covid restrictions and apparently suffers from pigeon guano</p> <p>The stone signs should be maintained and upgraded.</p>	<p>This section of the Walls is typically accessed via Museum Gardens but is currently only accessible from Library Square. Signage to the Walls and towers should be introduced to Library Square in the context of the wider signage for the Library so as to avoid over-cluttering the railings. The entrance from Museum Gardens, through the undercroft St Leonard's ruin, should be opened, as should the gate adjacent to Multangular Tower.</p> <p>More information should be provided on St Leonard's Precinct to enhance understanding of the entire evolution of the site; through discrete signage and interpretation and activities / occasional events within St Leonard's undercroft should be explored to enhance the visitor offer.</p>
	S1	<p>To the rear of the Library and within Museum Gardens, there are a number of carved stones which provide subtle and appropriate interpretation (but require repainting / cleaning). There is a CYC interpretation board attached to the wall adjacent to Multangular Tower. There is a metal plaque attached to the wall of St Leonard's.</p> <p>Adjacent to the Anglian Tower is one of the 'best pieces of interpretation' for the city Walls - a series of banks indicating the rampart levels at different historical periods (introduced in the 1970s). Though there is no explanation on this and it may need updating in light of more recent findings.</p>	<p>Access, orientation and interpretation should be improved, in particular the area behind the Library, to augment the appropriate signage already in place.</p> <p>Better signage should be provided to explain the three separate walls between Multangular Tower to Anglian Tower; this could be achieved by encouraging access to the rampart to the NE, near the King's Manor. The 19th century tunnel could be restored and opened to enable interpretation. The passage to the tunnel through the Anglian Tower into the mews building should also be understood and interpreted. In light of more recent excavations the signage may need to be revised to ensure the information provided to the public is correct. Interpretation, discussing the ramparts adjacent, would be beneficial.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting cont.	S1/S3		<p>The stone signs should be maintained and upgraded.</p> <p>Opening the Tower 19 (Anglian Tower) for use would enable further engagement with the public and prevent anti-social behaviour, this could be secured and managed. Information should also be provided about the Tower.</p> <p>Improvements should be made to the signage / interpretation and setting of the Roman section of the Walls and St Mary's Abbey Walls by the King's Manor / St Leonard's Place.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>This section of the City walls contains the most extensive stretch of the Roman fortress wall. The Multangular Tower and wall bordering St Leonard's precinct provide a backdrop for the Museum Gardens, enhancing the impression of a Victorian pleasure garden with associated antiquities. An attractive fern garden abuts the walls on this side (though the tarmac detracts).</p> <p>The area within the walls in the grounds of the Library is secluded and quiet, and includes the upstanding ruin of part of the infirmary range of the medieval St Leonard's Hospital, providing a distinctive historic respite away from the bustle of the City. The 1930s Library (on the site of Roman barracks) now plays a major part in the setting of the walls here; though its parking areas detract. The modest mews buildings in Mint Yard have been refurbished, with new door/window joinery introduced.</p> <p>St Leonard's Undercroft is an amazing space with a vaulted ceiling, leaded light windows and incised lettering to its stones. Part of the ruin is currently used as storage by the Library and could be put to better, public use. There is a further section of St Mary's wall by the King's Manor (Grade I) and the remaining portion of Roman wall adjacent to St Leonard's Place/the King's Manor - set within a private car park (which detracts). Views from the rampart down over the Anglian Tower and Walls are dramatic and could be used for interpretive purposes.</p>	<p>The grounds would benefit from relandscaping and present the opportunity to introduce a use which would encourage the public to visit and linger such as a café or restaurant connected to the Library; whilst proposals for a temporary crazy golf pitch may detract they will test the appropriateness of future proposals for this area.</p> <p>The hard and soft landscaping in the area should be improved (also for drainage purposes), including the steps and railings leading to Tower 19 and the removal/improvements to the inappropriately-regimented cobbled underpinning introduced in the late-1960s. The cement mortar could be removed and be replaced – potentially with one large gallet/galleting.</p> <p>The layout and appearance of the carpark area adjacent to the King's Manor / St Leonard's Place should be improved, and opportunities to allow public access to and interpretation of the Roman section of the Walls and St Mary's Abbey walls.</p> <p>Views from the rampart to the NE of Anglian Tower are dramatic and could be better celebrated in tandem with allowing public access and providing interpretation.</p>

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A1	Physical access is good, slopes rather than steps, flat surfaces, access from ground level from behind the Library/Archive or Museum Gardens (closed at night). However, the paths in the Library/Archive gardens are gravel.	<p>Access would be improved through reopening the short section of wall by Lendal Tower (currently closed to the public) - this would enable visitors to appreciate the dimensions of the earlier wall-walk – however railings would be required, given the drop.</p> <p>The 1970s ramped areas and railings adjacent to Tower 19 should be improved as above.</p> <p>Reopening the gate between Library grounds and fern garden in Museum Gardens would improve access and circulation.</p> <p>Review options to form an improved connection between Anglian Tower and Exhibition Square and the remaining section of Roman wall by the King's Manor/ St Leonard's Place to enable the route of the Walls to be fully appreciated. Currently it has a 'back of house' character and feels private. This area also features the end of the wall – allowing its construction to be seen in cross section – and provides elevated views of the Anglian Tower and three parallel walls – offering interpretation opportunities. This would also enable access to the view facing the Kings Manor, which is attractive in terms of its historic patina.</p>
	A3	There is a locked metal gate through to the Museum Gardens adjacent to Multangular Tower. The walkway along the short stretch of Wall between Lendal Tower and the Museum Gardens entrance is not open for public access. Paving between Multangular Tower and Tower 19 varies in quality. The access via St Leonard's undercroft is currently blocked due to COVID restrictions.	<p>1) To achieve this, Museum Gardens could be extended along the rampart to encapsulate the entire wall so that it is accessible to the public.</p> <p>2) Alternatively, steps/ramps could be introduced to the 1970s interpretative rampart cross sections – the new access could be integrated in a different colour to differentiate it. There could also be more fluid access between Museum Gardens and the Library gardens via the undercroft / the breach between Museum Gardens and the Library garden. Alternative uses for St Leonard's undercroft should be explored - public access should be improved.</p>

Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R3	There is a short section of rampart behind the City Wall between Lendal Hill House and the entrance to the Museum Gardens, with no public access. It is backed by the service yard to the Star Restaurant and surrounded by shabby timber fencing (which detract).	<p>There is potential that the short section of inner rampart between Lendal Tower and St Leonard's has been disturbed less than many other areas of rampart and may be worth physical investigation to establish the extent of survival and increase understanding about the ramparts.</p> <p>The setting of the rampart would be improved through the tidying of the service yard and replacement fencing.</p>
Visitor Facilities	VF2	Some visitor facilities, such as seating and litter bins in front of and behind the Library. Paved paths and benches are provided within the Museum Gardens and Library grounds.	<p>Benches within the Library gardens should be upgraded.</p> <p>A review of this area should be carried out to encourage visitors to explore its rich archaeological history (unless on a guided tour it is often missed), whilst retaining its quiet, contemplative character.</p>
		Notes on Multangular Tower: Interpretation board with QR code adjacent to Tower.	
		Notes on Tower 19 (Anglian Tower): Openings in the Tower are either boarded or contain mesh infill to deter antisocial behaviour.	
		Notes: Inappropriate cobbled walling/underpinning on the inside face of wall behind archive/library, carved date stone 1960.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

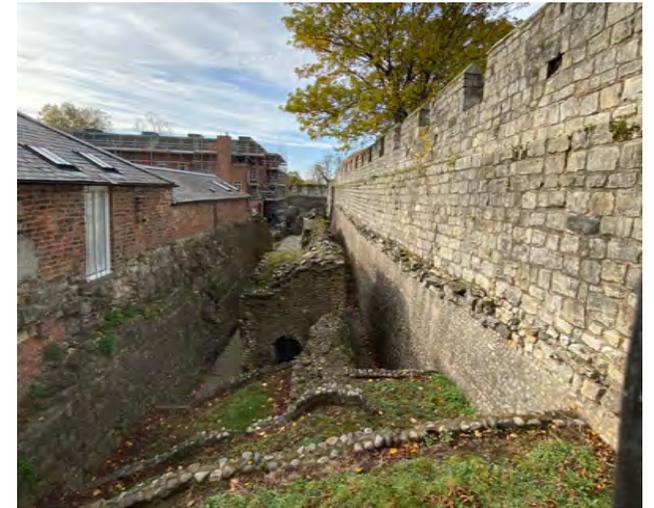
Section 8, Chainage no. 1400–1600



Section 8 Service Yard, with rampart between Lendal Tower and Gatehouse



Section 8 Wall between Lendal Tower and the Gatehouse



Section 8, View from rampart over Anglian Tower



Section 8 Roman wall adjacent to St Leonard's Place



Section 8 Carved signage in need of maintenance



Section 8 View of Anglian Tower with the 1970s Interpretative banks beyond

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage / Lighting	S1	There is CYC interpretation board with a QR code at the bottom of the access steps to the Bar. Other signage includes a Roman fortress sign, road sign, A-board for the cafe, a blue plaque and a WC sign, which could be reviewed to declutter the area.	The signage needs to be reviewed, upgraded and clarified as part of a wall-wide strategy but specifically to ensure visitors can access the Bar, clearly navigate the wall walk and to reduce visual and physical clutter.
	S3	<p>The Bar forms the beginning of most tours of the walls, but lacks much information except for a temporary interpretation board within the Bar at first floor. The route through the Bar confuses many, who think it's not accessible as the gate is closed. Some signage and maps are outdated-at the top of access stairs. Confusingly there is a sign pointing to the continuation of the wall route at Lendal Bridge inferring that the Mint Yard area and Multangular Tower section are not part of this.</p> <p>There are late-20th century bulkhead lights fixed to the underside of flat modern infill to the arch. Lighting on the 'Hole in the Wall' pub facade on High Petergate lights bar on special occasions/events.</p>	<p>The room at first floor within the Bar presents the opportunity to introduce better interpretation and facilities; making the portcullis operational (on a managed basis/linked to events) would enhance the visitor interest; particularly amongst school groups etc., The development of such proposals would need to take into account the significance of the Victorian alterations as an example of early 'conservation' philosophy; interpretation could be provided highlighting this.</p> <p>Access to the roof of the Bar via a new staircase would enhance public engagement and understanding and should be accompanied by interpretation.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Views / Setting	SV1	<p>Bootham Bar is of a more domestic scale than the other medieval bars but still forms a key feature of the townscape, particularly along High Petergate, where it is hemmed in by development on the high street. From the Bar, key views along High Petergate to the Minster are framed by the historic high street and views along Bootham are also attractive, with the Postern Gate and Tower in the foreground. There are some fantastic views from the roof of the Bar, taking in the Minster, High Petergate, Bootham and Museum Square.</p> <p>There is a relatively new cafe which has been subtly introduced on the inside of walls next to Bootham Bar. The busy road / dangerous pedestrian crossing and street clutter adjacent to the Postern Gate and Tower detract considerably from its setting.</p>	<p>Views from the roof of the Bar could be enjoyed by the public and enhance the visitor attraction through the provision of sensitively integrated access. The development of such proposals would need to take into account the significance of the Victorian alterations as an example of early 'conservation' philosophy.</p> <p>Part-pedestrianising / introducing shared surfaces and new street furniture in this area would improve the setting of the Bar; better link to with Museum Square area and encourage pedestrians along Gillygate and Bootham.</p> <p>The underside of the arch should be renewed to improve its appearance.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	The Bar is visible and accessible at ground level via the pavement. There are unattractive modern tubular railings either side of road on the inside of the Bar. A bollard limits vehicular access to High Petergate to cycles and pedestrians between the hours of 10:30am to 8pm, except cycles one way, but area in front is used for parking.	See above regarding signage on gates. Removing/replacing the tubular railings fronting the road on High Petergate would improve the setting of the wall.
	A3	N.B. The Bar still suffers from vehicle strikes. The wall walk and upper floors of the Bar limited access as via steep, quite uneven steps at the Bar and those internally are incomplete with no public access to the upper floors (access is via a hatch). Gates introduced to deter pigeons, but also deter visitors.	Remove parking rights in front of Bar in order to improve access and its setting. The provision of virtual access to the Bar would enhance engagement and understanding. The gates to the Bar make it appear closed, review options to use alternative pigeon deterrents.
Ramparts		None	No ramparts to this section.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	There are public WC facilities set within the wall, entrance adjacent to cafe's archway. Cafe neatly tucked behind the City Walls, entered via an arch (with courtyard seating) or doorway adjacent to the Bar's access steps.	Visitor facilities should be provided at first floor within the Bar. Access to the roof for views could be explored alongside any future repair projects.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
		<p>Notes on Interior of Bar: First floor is a large square room, with a stone flag floor, partial staircase. Access to the second floor is via this part-stair and hatch. Reproduction timber portcullis. Restored timber ceiling structure (above first floor). The second floor has a v.low ceiling height. The roof is in v.poor condition - critical (see condition survey). The underside of the arch comprises an iron beam with concrete infill. Drainpipes run under the archway.</p>	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 9, Bootham Bar



Section 9 Signage at Bootham Bar



Section 9 Bootham Bar temporary information board



Section 9 Interior of Bootham Bar with portcullis and temporary information board



Section 9 Gate to Bootham Bar



Section 9 View to Exhibition Square, York Gallery, Postern Gate Tower and Bootham



Section 9 View along Petergate from roof of Bootham Bar

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>Signage / interpretation on this section of the wall walk can be found at Bootham Bar - on both permanent and temporary boards. There is little on the wall walk / at the Towers. There is a plaque on the section of the wall overlooking Ripon St. John's which relates to this section of the wall being restored to city ownership by Edwin Gray in 1889. There is an in-ground marker relating to the gateway to the Roman fortress.</p> <p>There are floodlights in cages to the outer ramparts lining Lord Mayor's Walk.</p>	<p>The misleading sign relating to Edwin Gray should be explained - perhaps in leaflets / online.</p> <p>Utilising the space beneath restored Robin Hood's Tower and smaller interval towers for exhibition/ events would enhance public engagement and understanding. Their use could be associated with the forthcoming Sensory Garden (part of Minster Precinct proposals).</p> <p>Tower 28 could be used for interpretation, alongside improved access – as set out below.</p> <p>Alternatively, the interval towers could offer bat roosting areas and enhance the environmental credentials of the walls.</p> <p>The lighting scheme should be upgraded as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls.</p> <p>Clearing the foliage, restoring and providing access to the ice house would enhance the visitor offer. Could form part of the Sensory Gardens interpretation.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>The wall itself is the Victorian reconstruction of what they thought a medieval wall and towers should look like. This section provides some of the best views of the Minster and its precinct ('Minster Close'), framed and in some cases partially obscured by mature trees. There is evidence that trees are still being planted - memorial tree near Robin Hood's Tower for example - which, depending on species, could obscure this key view from the wall walk. To the east are tree-lined views of grand, private residences which contribute to the setting considerably. The two main portions of the walls follow the lines of the Roman fortifications - offering distinctively straight views along the wall walk. Views on approach to Monk Bar are striking, though marred by modern railings and grilles (as most of this wall walk is). There are attractive meandering views along the ditch at the base of the outer ramparts along the Lord Mayor's Walk (the best preserved ditch in all of the circuit).</p> <p>There is a metal grille to the roof and plant associated with the Lamb and Lion pub at the start of wall walk, which detract.</p>	<p>Careful management of the trees on both sides of the wall and clearing of the scrubby areas adjacent to the walls should be carried out in order to enhance and frame views.</p> <p>There is the potential to provide a combined piece of art or interpretation, which explains key elements within the views of the Minster and other significant buildings including Minster Court and the Treasurer's House, as well as the Roman fortifications. The views along the wall walk should be reviewed. through the replacement of the modern railings with more subtle ones.</p> <p>Agreement should be reached with the Lamb and Lion pub to improve the railings at the beginning of the wall walk and plant / vents should be removed where possible and otherwise screened. In addition, smells from these vents should be mitigated.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	<p>Physical access is poor, only for people with full mobility, as there is no access from ground level except via another section of Walls - access is via steps from Bootham Bar / Monk Bar - and there are further steps along the wall walk, which also narrows in places. The walk is lined with historic (Victorian) York stone flags.</p> <p>The wall walk is lined with modern railings which are visually intrusive and are worsening existing structural issues with the wall walk. The historic railing fixings are visible from the inner ramparts. Modern grilles protect properties close to Monk Bar, but are visually intrusive. The outer ramparts along Lord Mayor's Walk are a more readily accessible way of appreciating the walls.</p> <p>N.B. No motorised vehicles are allowed under the bar, except for access and loading (ban 10:30am to 8pm).</p>	<p>The railings are apparently exasperating a structural issue with the wall walk which should be addressed to secure the wall and to improve the appearance.</p> <p>Improving the appearance or replacing the modern railings and grilles nearer Monk Bar would enhance the setting of the walls and bar.</p> <p>Walls are narrow especially at the Bootham Bar end - contemporary passing spaces which project out from the inner face of the wall walk could be introduced. Public Access could be securely provided to Tower 28 with incorporation of new steps/ramp from the walkway to its entrance. Ramped access to Tower 24 could be reviewed, in association with the forthcoming development of Deanery Gardens.</p> <p>There is a retaining wall preventing access to Deanery Gardens, this wall could be increased in height if required.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 9, Bootham Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R3	Ramparts are showing signs of wear and tear, are truncated and in private use (as private gardens) with no public access along most of this stretch of the walls. Domestic dividing walls split up the ramparts on the section between Bootham Bar and Robin Hood's Tower. Access to the walls / inner ramparts is possible via the gardens of Gray's Court Hotel. There are a number of private entrances / stairways onto the wall that are now locked or blocked off. The inner ramparts between Tower 29 and Monk's Bar are mostly truncated by development to the south. Most of both the inner and outer ramparts are unkempt, closer to the walls themselves, except for the area near Robin Hood's Tower, which is landscaped with rubble walls and the gardens of the Hotel. The outer ramparts, reveal the former ditch, from Robin Hood's Tower to Monk Bar - along the Lord Mayor's Walk.	<p>Consultation with owners of these stretches, particularly the outer ramparts backing properties on Gillygate, is required to develop a maintenance strategy for clearing damaging trees and other planting. This should also include proposals to demolish the brick walls where they connect to the Walls to enable maintenance access for the stone masons (which could be replaced with gates if needed).</p> <p>The outer ramparts along the Lord Mayor's Walk could be used to form an accessible trail, as well as enhancing them as ecological corridors. Options to provide an accessible connection between Monk Gate Yard and the ramparts in Section 12 should be explored – would be subject to negotiations with the owners of numerous properties.</p>
Visitor Facilities	VF3	Some visitor facilities, such as seating, litter bins - shabby bench at Tower 24 and Robin Hood's Tower.	The introduction of better facilities would enhance the visitor offer and, given the size of the platform over Robin Hood's Tower, interpretation / art could be introduced to further improve public engagement and understanding.
		Notes on Towers 22 and 23: Carved graffiti	

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
		<p>Notes on Tower 24: There is an unexcavated ice-house within the Minster precinct, close to the Wall near interval Tower 24. Some carved graffiti on the Tower, at wall walk level. It is of stone and brick construction, with a studded timber door (decaying on the ground). Near Tower 24 there is a group of re-used stones dating from c.1150 and possibly from the Archbishop's Palace. Interior of Tower 24 - vaulted brick, stone walls with apsidal end wall.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Tower 25: Interior of Tower 25 - vaulted brick, stone walls with apsidal end wall.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Tower 27, Robin Hood's Tower: Restored in c.2005. Concrete under walkway, new brick partition and brick piers. Major water egress from stone on inner face - underside of walkway. Railings in the area were probably also rectified at this time.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Tower 29: There are also many re-used blocks possibly from the Archbishop's Palace on the inner face north of Monks Bar near to Gray's Court.</p>	

Section 10, Chainage no.1600-Monk Bar



Section 10 View of the Minster from between Towers 28 and 29



Section 10 View along Wall Walk, with modern railings



Section 10 View along wall walk to Robin Hood Tower



Section 10 View of inner ramparts



Section 10 The ditch lining Lord Mayor's Walk



Section 10 Visitor facilities at Robin Hood Tower

Section 11, Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S1	<p>There is generally a good level of signage / interpretation provided - with a CYC information board, with QR code.</p> <p>The signage for Richard III Experience Museum is fairly subtle, located next to the stepped entrance from the street and on a large board sign at the entrance door from the western section of the wall walk. There are also temporary 'no entrance' signs related to COVID-19.</p> <p>There are large floodlights attached to buildings outside and inside walls illuminate the bar. There is a mid/late-20th century bulkhead fitting to the groin vaulted arch. There is an outdated map on the western access steps.</p>	<p>The outdated map should be replaced as part of a wall-wide interpretation strategy.</p> <p>Floodlights should be upgraded to be less visually intrusive as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls including the illumination of the underside of this arch - picking out its groin vaulting.</p> <p>Making the portcullis operational (on a managed basis/linked to events) would enhance the visitor interest; particularly amongst school groups etc.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>The Bar is a key feature in the streetscene despite being hemmed in by historic development on its inner side, and with high street properties abutting it. There are attractive views to and from the Bar up Goodramgate, particularly given the street's character and deflection. Views outside the walls to Monkgate are more open, less historic and as a result less impressive, particularly beyond the junction. Views along the straight walls are impressive from the entrance to the Bar and from its roof - which offer a fabulous panorama of the Minster and Goodramgate over pantiled and slated roofs.</p>	<p>The incredible views of the Minster from the roof of the Bar could be enjoyed by the public and enhance the visitor attraction through the provision of sensitively integrated access.</p> <p>Improvements to this junction, including the street furniture road /cycle surfaces, would enhance the setting of the Bar.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 11, Monk Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	<p>Access to the Bar is difficult, via the walkway, or via a very narrow internal staircase leading from Goodramgate. The upper floors of the Museum are similarly difficult to access - narrow and uneven steps. There is a turnpike stair leading to the roof.</p> <p>N.B The eastern access steps were restored c.3 years ago. Steps and stones lifted and realigned, with foamcrete applied beneath.</p>	<p>The provision of virtual access to the Bar would enhance engagement and understanding.</p> <p>Review options to create an alternative staircase to street level to improve head height.</p> <p>Review options to create continuous access through the first floor of the Bar, as at Micklegate, to reduce the need for the narrow staircase and to encourage people into Monk Bar even when the museum is closed.</p>
Ramparts		None.	
Visitor Facilities	VF1	<p>Richard III Experience Museum, run by Yorvik. There is a well-laid out shop at first floor, exhibition spaces above - currently being using temporary basis during COVID to run virtual meetings/learning.</p>	<p>Access should be facilitated to the roof for incredible views of Minster and across the city as above.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 11, Monk Bar



Section 11 View of Monk Bar from Goodramgate



Section 11 View of Goodramgate from the arch of Monk Bar



Section 11 Entrance steps to Monk Bar



Section 11, View of the Minster from the roof of Monk Bar



Section 11 View of Wall from the roof of Monk Bar



Section 11 Museum at Monk Bar

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>There is an outdated map to the access steps to the wall walk at Monk Bar and a further one at Tower 34. Carved in-ground pavement markers identify the Ice House and Jewbury locations on the wall walk.</p> <p>Street signage near Tower 34 directs pedestrians to the wall walk along Foss Island Road. At Tower 34 there is an interpretation board regarding the lost Layerthorpe Bridge / Postern Tower and the Jewbury area.</p> <p>Lighting follows precedent elsewhere - floodlights in cages on the outer ramparts.</p>	<p>The provision of further interpretation regarding the significant features seen from the wall (ice house, Roman remains etc.) would enhance public engagement and understanding.</p> <p>A QR code with virtual reality of the Roman fortress, showing the line of the former eastern wall would aid interpretation of the city's Roman defences.</p> <p>Opening Tower 31 should be considered for use as exhibitions or similar, this would enable further engagement with the public. Stepped access could be provided from the walkway. This could house better interpretation relating to the Jewbury area.</p> <p>The outdated map should be replaced as part of a wall-wide interpretation strategy.</p> <p>Lighting should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact.</p> <p>Removal of the railings and interpretation for the garderobe.</p> <p>Signage should be provided at Towers 33 and 34 to explain how to get to the Red Tower using the elevated view will help with visitor orientation. This would also be an opportunity to use virtual reality to show the King's Fish Pond to explain why the wall ends here.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>The Wall here seems to be the solid division between historic York within the Walls and modern York without, as the character changes completely each side. Externally there are leafy green suburbs in addition to large retail outlets and modern development.</p> <p>The views from this stretch of Wall includes interesting features such as the excavated Roman corner tower, a 19th century ice house and the Merchant Taylor's Hall. There are attractive secluded gardens close to Tower 32 - St Anthony's Garden, though access is convoluted. Views of the Minster between Towers 31 and 32.</p>	<p>The appearance of the timber gates near Tower 34 should be improved.</p> <p>The integration of landscaping or different surfaces would improve the appearance of the car-parking areas and their contribution to the setting of the walls.</p> <p>The traffic management system and road surfaces at the Layerthorpe Bridge junction should be reviewed to reduce visual clutter.</p>
	SV3	<p>The view from Tower 34 is over Layerthorpe Bridge junction, which is marred by the numerous signs, traffic management arrangements and commercial development. The single storey holiday apartment complex and associated car-parking adjacent to Monk Bar detract. The Sainsbury's carpark is low-lying and covered in ivy, which reduces its visual impact - though its overall scale is not appropriate to the setting. The modern office development adjacent to Towers 33 and 34 detracts. Shabby timber gates to the modern development here detract. The 1980s/90s housing developments off Aldwark, arranged around setted courtyards are neutral and in some cases detract from the setting of the walls.</p>	

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A3	Physical access poor, only for people with full mobility, many steps, no access from ground level except via another section of Walls. There is a mixture of modern plain / spiked railings, most of which detract. Access to St Anthony's Gardens is awkward and often missed by visitors.	<p>Improving the appearance or replacing the modern railings would enhance the appearance of the walls; this should include a review of the necessity of railings to the arched opening in wall – the former garderobe.</p> <p>Providing access steps / ramp to the Roman Corner Tower should be considered.</p> <p>The possibility of forming a direct connection from the wall walk to St Anthony's Gardens should be explored.</p> <p>The flat portions of the outer ramparts offer the potential to form part of an accessible wall trail, enhancing the visitor offer.</p>
Ramparts	R2	The outer ramparts, between Towers 31 and 34 are in relatively good condition, with some erosion, large flat areas and full access from street level. The area adjacent to Monk Bar is poorly-maintained and contains construction fencing.	<p>The area adjacent to Monk Bar should be improved; access to the outer ramparts could provide an accessible route through from the Lord Mayor's Walk, via Monkgate Yard, the pub and holiday cottages. The upper portion of the outer rampart by Monk Bar should be reviewed for the creation of a terrace area/rest stop. Issues with ownership / access past the pub or holiday lets may be an issue</p>
	R3	The inner ramparts are truncated between Monk Bar and Tower 31 and between the New Tower and Tower 34.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Visitor Facilities	VF3	No visitor facilities.	The provision of benches or similar at the larger towers would provide resting points and the opportunity to linger and enjoy the walls. Potential for modest benches at the larger towers.
		Notes on Ice House: This lies on outer ramparts and is accessible from beer garden or holiday cottage carpark	Its setting and approach could be improved.
		Notes on Tower 30: Roman tower, part excavated	Access could be provided, either directly from the wall walk or via the gateway adjacent to Monk Bar (issues with private access / rights of way would need to be overcome).
		Notes on Tower 31 Harlot Hill Tower: Recently repaired - concrete repairs to underside of wall walk. Historic studded timber door.	

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 12, Chainage no. 2250–2550



Section 12 Section of Outer rampart by Monk Bar



Section 12 Outer rampart and the Ice House



Section 12 Carpark adjacent to outer rampart



Section 12 1980s development by Tower 34



Section 12 Jewbury-Foss Island Road Junction



Section 12 View of St Anthony's Gardens from the wall walk

Section 13, River Foss

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>The signage is mostly poor along this entire section and it is easy to lose interest. The Layerthorpe Bridge sign is heavily weathered. There is a CYC interpretation board with QR code at the bottom of the steps to Tower 34. There is a street sign at Tower 34 directing pedestrians. There is a new signpost near the footway to the towpath along the Foss and another by the Red Tower. There are brass in-ground markers are present along some stretches, but they are inconsistent.</p>	<p>Creative interpretation needs to be developed to retain interest along this section – virtual and digital technologies could be integrated to provide information on how the area appearance historically and enhance public engagement and understanding.</p> <p>The signage should be improved as part of a wall-wide strategy and more consistent brass in-ground markers be provided or an alternative marking system introduced within the pavement such as carved markers. These could be fish casts to relate to the fact that the area was once a large pond/river.</p> <p>The road sign at Navigation Road should be upgraded.</p> <p>Interpretation of 'the destructor' would further enhance public engagement and understanding.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV3	<p>Mainly views are of modern commercial development on the east side of Foss Island Road. The Victorian incinerator chimney - 'the destructor' lies adjacent to Morrison's and is a key landmark in the area. The River Foss and nature reserve is unkempt/littered and the bridge over this part of the Foss is shabby. The Foss is fronted by 1990s residential development.</p>	<p>The traffic management system at the Layerthorpe Bridge junction should be reviewed to reduce visual clutter.</p> <p>Artwork and additional street trees should be introduced to improve the appearance of the retaining walls of the Foss and potentially the commercial units lining the road.</p> <p>The Foss and bridge over should be maintained and potentially the access reopened.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	Accessible but not pleasant - there are multiple crossings.	Pathways and traffic management require improvement whilst interpretation/art work outlined above would improve access perceptually.
Ramparts		None	The paths alongside the Foss offer the potential to form part of an accessible wall trail, as above.
Visitor Facilities	VF3	Poor quality benches.	Improved benches along the Foss.

Section 13, River Foss



Section 13 New street sign on Foss Island Road



Section 13 Outdated Signage



Section 13 The River Foss



Section 13 View along the River Foss, with modern residential and commercial development and the Destructor Chimney



Section 13 View of commercial development along Foss Island Road



Section 13 View of the Destructor Chimney

Section 14, Red Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>There is new street signage at the corner of Rosemary Place/Navigation Road and another at Foss Island Road. There is a CYC interpretation board with QR code fixed to the Tower, adjacent to the entrance door. The second (older) information board fixed to the Tower wall is hard to read as it is set behind glass and the separate map leading to the wall walk is faded / outdated.</p> <p>There is floodlighting in large cages on outer ramparts.</p>	<p>The older sign fixed to the tower should be removed if information is duplicated in the CYC board.</p> <p>Interpretation should be provided regarding the previous use of the building, especially regarding its use as a sulphur factory, to improve public engagement and understanding particularly to school groups.</p> <p>Lighting of the tower should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact.</p> <p>The provenance of the stones in the small wall feature around the Red Tower and their previous use should be established. It is thought that they are reclaimed stones from a demolished prison.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV2	The Red Tower is modest in scale, though forms an attractive landmark, which contrasts given its red brick elevations. Attractive view of walls and wall walk inside the walls. The Neo-Georgian, brick-built residential development on Rosemary Court and Place is set within generous communal gardens, providing a modest setting to the Tower.	Artwork and additional street trees or potentially hedging lining the pavement, in order to block and absorb air pollution from vehicles, whilst reducing the visual impact of the road should be introduced to improve the appearance of the walls along Foss Island Road.
	SV3	Outside the walls there is further modern commercial development along Foss Island Road.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 14, Red Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	The Red Tower is accessible externally and also its ground floor (when open). The wall walk is accessed via steps from Red Tower. The outside of the walls are accessible along the roadside, although this is a busy commercial road.	The large tubular barriers to the path leading from Foss Island Road should be removed and replaced with a more sympathetic solution.
Ramparts	R3	Inner and outer ramparts have been truncated in places and lowered. At the Tower, there is a garden set within short angular stone walls.	The outer ramparts offer the potential to form part of an accessible wall trail, enhancing the visitor offer. Additional planting should be provided to shield the flat portions of the ramparts from Foss Island Road and the commercial development.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	The Red Tower has recently been the subject of a major refurbishment, though is currently closed. A vegetable garden established within the garden - part of edible gardens trail.	The potential for the edible gardens incentive to be extended across the walls should be explored.
		Notes: The Red Tower was refurbished in 2018 and is currently operated by The Red Tower Trust, providing facilities for events and venue hire. Available for hire to public but since the death of the man running it, the Tower has barely been open.	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 14, Red Tower



Section 14 New street sign on Navigation Road



Section 14 Difficult to read board at the Red Tower



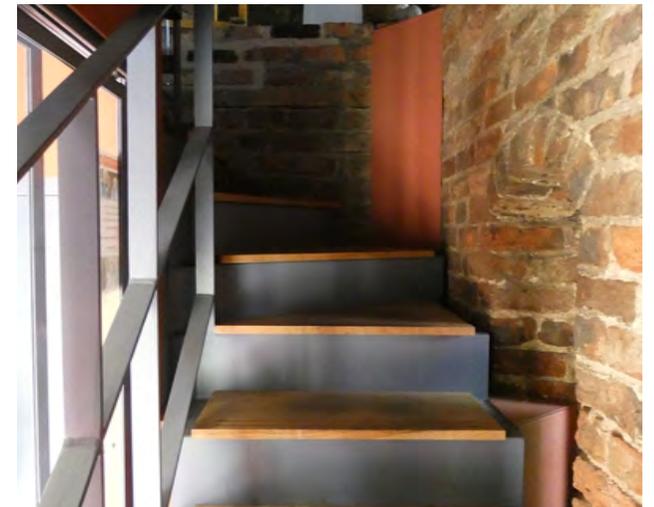
Section 14 View of the Red Tower from the north west



Section 14 Garden enclosed by low stone walls at the Red Tower



Section 14 Handrails at Red Tower



Section 14 New staircase in the Red Tower

Section 15, Chainage no. 2600-2900

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	There is an interpretation board at the Red Tower, otherwise there is limited signage and out of date maps at end of the wall walk, near Walmgate Bar.	<p>The signage and maps should be removed if information is duplicated in the CYC board.</p> <p>Lighting of the towers and wall should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats.</p>
Significant view / feature	SV3	20 th century housing developments line the inside of the walls, the 1950s stock is set within generous gardens, and provides a leafy setting whilst the later 20 th century developments close to Walmgate are more intensive, utilitarian in design and detract. The more recent McQuades Court, close to Tower 36, does not contribute. There are local views of the National Centre for Early Music from the ramparts and wall walk. Views to Walmgate Bar from the wall walk, of plain late-Victorian housing outside the walls and modern commercial development on Foss Island Road.	<p>The street lamp obscuring views to the National Centre for Early Music should be removed/ relocated and subtle interpretation (in-ground marker) provided.</p> <p>Artwork should be introduced to improve the appearance of the walls along Foss Island Road.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 15, Chainage no. 2600-2900

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	Access to the wall walk is via a short flight of steps by the Red Tower and many steps along walk itself. There is white paint to the steps to aid visibility, though some has rubbed off. There are no railings to most of the wall walk, except at the start by Red Tower and a small section by Tower 35. There is a residential pedestrian access from Walmgate to the housing developments, via a tarmac path at the base of the inner rampart. The walls can be walked externally, along the flat outer ramparts or roadside pavement.	The outer ramparts offer the potential to form part of an accessible wall trail, enhancing the visitor offer.
Ramparts	R3	Inner and outer ramparts have been truncated and levelled by mostly by residential development within the walls. Nearer Walmgate, the inner ramparts are more intact, but overgrown. The outer ramparts running between Walmgate and near Red Tower more intact but some erosion, and they gradually lead down to flattened ramparts near Red Tower. There is some tree planting lining Foss Island Road.	<p>The landscaping of the inner ramparts should be improved and the opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties should be considered, alongside the archaeological implications/potential and cost.</p> <p>A community garden or sponsored landscaping (corporate) should be considered for both inner and outer ramparts to improve the setting of the walls. This could also tally with their enhancement as ecological corridors.</p>
Visitor Facilities	VF3	None.	No recommendations.
		Notes on Tower 35: Construction of the wall walk foundations visible in this area between Tower 35 and Walmgate Bar.	
		Notes on Tower 36: Access steps to early wall walk at Tower 36.	

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 15, Chainage no. 2600-2900



Section 15 View of the lowered inner ramparts and Rosemary Court Housing



Section 15 View of the National Early Centre for Music



Section 15 Lowered outer Rrmparts



Section 15 McQuade's Court housing



Section 15 1960s housing near Walmgate Bar



Section 15 View along Foss Island Road

Section 16, Walmgate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	There is a CYC interpretation board at the base of the Bar. There are also outdated maps, information board (behind glass) and cluttered signs to the access gates. The gold leaf plaque fixed to the barbican wall is poorly painted.	<p>The outdated boards/maps should be replaced as part of a wall-wide interpretation strategy.</p> <p>The gold leaf plaque over the barbican's arch should be repainted.</p> <p>Lighting of the finest features of the Bar should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls; the Elizabethan elevation has many cornices to disguise small fittings. This should be developed whilst being mindful of the ecological impact.</p> <p>Making the portcullis operational (on a managed basis/linked to events) would enhance the visitor interest; particularly amongst school groups etc.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 16, Walmgate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV3	<p>The Bar is an impressive structure, which terminates views along Walmgate and Lavander Street. It has a 'medieval' outer face and an Elizabethan inner face. It contrasts with the other main Bars due to the survival of its barbican and the Elizabethan timber façade. However views are impinged by its location at a very busy junction and bollards, railings etc. The junction is lined with mostly two storey Victorian and 20th century properties, in red brick. Inside of the Bar has a setting comprising mostly 20th century housing - most of which does not contribute to its setting and in some cases detracts - but also includes more historic properties such as Bowes Morrell House (Grade II*). There are large downpipes on the inside of the barbican and surface cabling, which detract.</p> <p>There are dramatic views down onto the barbican, along the wall walk and of the 'Destructor' chimney, from the roof terrace.</p>	<p>Improvements to this junction, including the street furniture road / cycle surfaces (as at Fishergate Bar), should be made to enhance the setting of the Bar.</p> <p>Stopping vehicles passing through the Bar should be considered to avoid future damage and create visitor opportunities including the potential for interpretation and a rest point with cafe / seating linking to uses on the ramparts (see below).</p> <p>External downpipes and cabling should be rationalised and maintained with a clear maintenance agreement with the tenants.</p>
Access	A2	<p>Access to the upper parts of the barbican is via two sets of steps. Within, there are further steps - modern leading to second floor and historic turnpike stairs leading above. Access to the barbican walkway is at first floor, via very narrow doors. Around the barbican are new section of brushed stainless steel railings. The handrail to the southern access steps, leading to the wall walk, is broken.</p>	<p>Broken handrails to the access steps should be replaced and the modern railings to the north access steps should be replaced to improve the Bar's appearance.</p> <p>The provision of virtual access to the Bar would enhance engagement and understanding.</p>

Section 16, Walmgate Bar

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Ramparts	R2	The inner ramparts on the north side are scrubby, as noted in previous section. Those south of Walmgate are grassed and back onto 20 th century residential development.	No ramparts.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	Café and meeting / reading room within the Bar with terrace areas on the roof and walkway around the barbican. The Elizabethan frontage contains a café, which has recently been refurbished following vehicular damage. New railings are visible from wall walk in Section 15. The narrow walkway around the barbican is used as a terrace by the café.	Landscaping of the inside of the barbican should be improved, potentially with planting and revisions to hard landscaping, which could improve drainage and protect the historic fabric.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 16, Walmgate Bar



Section 16 Difficult to read board at Walmgate Bar



Section 16 Poorly repainted plaque at Walmgate Bar



Section 16 View of Inside face of Walmgate Bar



Section 16 View of Walmgate Bar from Barbican Road



Section 16 Barbican Walkway now a terrace at Walmgate Bar



Section 16 First floor interior of Walmgate Bar

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>There are CYC interpretation boards with QR codes at Walmgate and Fishergate Bars and Fishergate Postern Tower.</p> <p>There is good quality public realm and inscribed cycle/pedestrian flagstone at Fishergate Bar.</p> <p>There are floodlights in cages to the outer ramparts.</p>	<p>Lighting of the walls, Bars and towers should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats.</p> <p>The road surfaces and paths should be revitalised and form the basis of a walls-wide programme to improve these areas within the Bars.</p> <p>The newly-restored Tower 39 should be used for interpretation/education to enhance public engagement and understanding. Access could be provided during events / fob access given to tour guides.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV3	<p>The setting largely comprises 20th century residential development on the inside of the walls. Outside the walls are Barbican Road and Paragon Street, with commercial development and the large Barbican culture/hotel complex, which detracts. There are some views of the Minster and the 'Destructor' chimney from the wall walk. The development along Fishergate is mostly two-storey and provides a modest suburban character to the setting, whilst the utilitarian housing development on Paragon Street detracts. There are attractive layered views from the wall walk and Tower 39 of Fishergate Postern Tower, the Crown Court and Clifford's Tower. The Travel Lodge building interrupts this view.</p>	<p>Improvements should be made to the garage areas / landscaping along Long Close Lane to enhance views from Tower 37; methods such as a sedum roof could provide a visual uplift in the short-term.</p> <p>Both sides of the wall present the opportunity for enhancement; including for the development of new buildings using good quality modern design and materials that are appropriate in their size and location.</p> <p>Due consideration would need to be given as to whether new buildings enhance or intrude into the setting of the walls, their environment and the views to and from them. Future development should avoid competing with walls and key views.</p> <p>The empty site to the east of the Barbican Centre offers a development opportunity whilst short-term enhancements could be made through landscaping and improvements to the railings around the Arncroft Close housing development.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	Via steps from Walmgate Bar or when two-way, also from Fishergate Postern Tower. Numerous steps along walkway also. The walls can be walked externally, along the flat outer ramparts or roadside pavement. Access through Fishergate Bar is restricted to pedestrians and cyclists.	<p>The outer ramparts offer the potential to form part of an accessible wall trail, enhancing the visitor offer.</p> <p>Ramped access could be provided to Tower 37 alongside improved visitor facilities.</p> <p>Potential for stone to be reintroduced in place of concrete steps to lower flight of access steps to Fishergate Bar should be considered - subject to limiting damage to the stonework during removal.</p>
Ramparts	R2	The outer ramparts are in relatively good condition, with grassed slopes and large, wide flat and accessible areas at their base. There is some erosion of the ramparts close to Fishergate Postern Tower.	<p>The landscaping of the inner ramparts should be improved and the opportunity to supply ground source energy to nearby residential properties should be considered alongside the archaeological and financial implications.</p>
	R3	Most of the inner ramparts back onto 20 th century housing and are semi-private. Ramparts behind Ancroft Close housing have been truncated and terraced to provide communal rear gardens / landscaping of the housing. These areas are bound by looped metal fencing and gate at Fishergate Postern Tower.	<p>A community garden or sponsored landscaping (corporate) should be considered for both inner and outer ramparts to improve the setting of the walls.</p> <p>As above, the outer ramparts could be used to form an accessible trail, as well as enhancing them as ecological corridors.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Visitor Facilities	VF3	No visitor facilities, except for a shabby bench, surrounded with litter. Great views of the Minster from this bench.	Well designed benches and bins should be introduced at key resting points, particularly those with positive views including Tower 37 to enhance the visitor offer and encourage people to linger and engage with the walls for longer.
		<p>Notes: As with Section 15, the Wall in this area is and represents a boundary between suburban residential areas and busy urban traffic routes. Otherwise, this is a relatively utilitarian stretch of City Wall, with the Bar and postern gate being the only features of real interest, although there are mason's marks on the Wall between Tower 39 and Fishergate Postern.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Tower 39: Historic timber door. This tower has recently been repaired, and new stainless steel railings added to its crenels. Internally it has a 'squashed' vaulted ceiling and a later fireplace, possibly 17th century (post Civil War).</p>	

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 17, Chainage no. 2900 - 3400



Section 17 View from Tower 39, towards Clifford's Tower, the Museum and the Crown Court



Section 17 View of Minster from Tower 37



Section 17 Sympathetic surfaces at Fishergate Bar



Section 18 1960s housing in the setting of Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 17 Truncated inner ramparts



Section 17 Truncated outer ramparts

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S2	<p>There is a CYC interpretation board with QR code and retrace York plaque on the external wall of the Tower. There is also a faded / outdated map.</p> <p>Large, wall mounted floodlights on the west elevation.</p>	<p>Orientation regarding the continuation of the City Walls, City attractions and routes to the City centre should be provided in a sympathetic manner in this area. This is an ideal point to encourage visitors into the City, as it is only a short walk to the main shopping centre.</p> <p>The outdated map should be replaced as part of a wall-wide interpretation strategy.</p> <p>Lighting of the finest features of the tower should be reviewed as part of a strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats.</p> <p>The reproduction of a portcullis and making it operational (on a managed basis/linked to events) would enhance the visitor interest; particularly amongst school groups etc.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV3	The Tower is a landmark building, which terminates this section of wall and this effect is re-enforced by the fact that it is not clear where the next section of wall begins. The setting is largely of modern development, including the 20 th century residential development on Arncroft Close. Some of this development is presumably designed to complement the walls but actually detracts by visually competing: the Travel Lodge is reminiscent of National Museum of Scotland - with a tower form and considerable bulk. This development also visually cuts off any views from the Tower to Clifford's Tower. The buildings lining Fishergate are modest high street buildings, of two storeys which provide a modest suburban character.	<p>Both sides of the wall present the opportunity for enhancement; including for the development of new buildings using good quality modern design and materials that are appropriate in their size and location.</p> <p>Due consideration would need to be given as to whether new buildings enhance or intrude into the setting of the walls, their environment and the views to and from them. Future development should avoid competing with walls and key views.</p> <p>Future redevelopment of the Travel Lodge site should seek to reveal these views and enhance the setting of the walls. In the short-term, improvements should be made to the railings around the Arncroft Close housing development.</p>
Access	A2	Access to view the exterior and to the ground floor is possible. However, accessing the upper floors of the Tower is extremely tricky given the narrow turnpike stair.	Given the extremely difficult access, the provision of virtual access to the tower is provided on the FoYW website, which mitigates this issue to a certain extent.
Ramparts		None.	No ramparts to this section.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Visitor Facilities	VF2	<p>The Tower contains a museum run by the Friends of York Walls - it is open some weekends, particular bank holidays. Boards / display show findings (mostly replicas) of the 2018 excavation at the Tower; other boards are in the process of being updated. Each floor contains interpretation, relating to the walls as a whole and / or to the tower specifically. Some information boards are temporary in appearance - the exhibition is in the process of being upgraded. The FOYW have plans to develop community involvement / heritage training skills, based at the Tower.</p>	<p>Proposals to develop community involvement / heritage training by FOYW should be continued .</p> <p>Lighting / cabling solutions should be rationalised to avoid visually-distracting service routes.</p> <p>Potential to agree to an extension of the public realm around the foot of the Tower to provide space for seating, communal garden area for use by FOYW / residents - this would be subject to the management / designing out of anti-social behaviour (in agreement with Arncroft Close management/owner)</p>
		<p>Notes: The Tower has flooded in recent times (c.5 years ago) and perhaps also historically given its proximity to the Foss. The guide slot for the portcullis can be seen in the arch over the postern and continues up the stair turret of the Tower. The turnpike stair tower continues to upper floor (which was once roof level, and once led further (now curtailed). Electrical services have been provided to the Tower, but cabling solutions are not yet resolved.</p>	

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 18, Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 18 West elevation of Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 18 Travel Lodge adjacent to Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 18 1960s housing in the setting of Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 18 Mixture of signage at Fishergate Postern Tower, including faded map



Section 18 Bulky lighting at Fishergate Postern Tower



Section 18 Archaeological display at Fishergate Postern Tower

Section 19

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	There are brass in-ground wall markers to indicate the City Walls trail between Fishergate Postern and the Tower Street entrance to St George's Field, where the wall restarts. Otherwise, orientation and signage is limited. Within St George's Field is a CYC interpretation board with a QR code - though this is also where the bins are kept. There is further interpretation provided throughout the park on large plinths (funded by various inc. Persimmon Homes).	<p>Creative interpretation needs to be developed to retain interest along this section – virtual and digital technologies could be integrated to provide information on how the area appearance historically and enhance public engagement and understanding with topics such as Gray Friars, Castlegate Postern, Davy Tower, the river as defence (including the chain), the walls in general, the walkways (this is one of the few accessible sections of the wall with the original walkway access), hoardings and their development over time.</p> <p>Discreet signage, much like the new signs at Red Tower, should be introduced to guide the way and additional signage provided at the entrance to the Gardens as part of a wall-wide signage strategy.</p> <p>Interpretation should be provided on the Bridge explaining the role of the Foss / Ouse in the defences to enhance public engagement and understanding.</p> <p>The signage should be improved as part of a wall-wide strategy and more consistent brass in-ground markers be provided or an alternative marking system introduced within the pavement such as carved markers.</p> <p>The level of this walkway is accessible for all visitors but formalising this is likely to cause conflict with the residents. Access could be agreed with the residents and limited to Heritage Open Days or for guided tours.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 19

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>Visitors often do not realise that this Wall is part of the City Wall circuit and the stretch of wall within the park is divorced from the other parts of the wall in location and character. The area is made up of the Courts, Museum and Clifford's Tower and the surrounding 'Curtain Wall', the two rivers, and the domestic character of Davy Tower and the terraced houses lining the wall itself - which all contribute positively to the setting. Busy Tower Bridge and Tower Street are lined with utilitarian railings, which detract, as does the surface carpark adjacent (St George's Field). Alongside the wall is a narrow passageway, where the secluded terrace of houses (2-8 Tower Place) are fronted by modest gardens. Davy Tower is a visually interesting building which terminates this short section of the walls. The park also form part of the setting, and provide welcome public green space, fronting the river - however it could be improved: planting on the park side of the Walls is obscuring them and potentially causing issues with damp; the pathways and street furniture within the Gardens could be improved.</p>	<p>The public realm / road system / pedestrian crossing around Clifford's Tower should be improved visually given the importance of this site - which would enhance its setting considerably; shared surfaces could be explored.</p> <p>Traffic controls / limits to traffic should be introduced to make the area more pedestrian friendly and be carried out in conjunction with a wider landscape strategy.</p> <p>Within the Gardens, the planting adjacent to the walls should be maintained / reviewed to remove larger species and reveal more of the walls. The planting, layout and surfaces within the Gardens should be improved to enhance the setting of the Walls and Davy Tower.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 19

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A1	Access is generally good, with pavements running the length of the route. However, the road network between here and St George's Fields and beyond the Baile Hill is not very pedestrian friendly. The continuous row of railings is visually intrusive and makes the road difficult to navigate. A combined cycleway and walkway runs along the riverbank on the west side of the Gardens, following the line of the wall to join Tower Street.	Improvement to the public realm as a whole, as discussed above, would alleviate access / crossing issues.
Ramparts		None.	No ramparts to this section.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	The park contain benches, litter bins etc., some bins are temporary wheely bins. There is a café within the tower of Skeldersgate Bridge.	All fittings within the Gardens should be reviewed; benches appear bespoke (if not a little dated), but bins are standard issue or wheelie bins and should be improved. The bin store/area at the entrance, by the interpretation board should be relocated or its appearance enhanced.

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 19



Section 19, View along Tower Street with heavy railings



Section 19 Clifford's Tower, viewed from the entrance to St George's Field



Section 19 View along original walkway



Section 19 View along Tower Place



Section 19 View along outside of Wall, with tarmac and bin area in foreground



Section 19 Davy Tower, surrounded by a mixture of paving

Section 20

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Signage, orientation, interpretation and lighting	S3	<p>There is minimal signage, mostly related to the Abbey, Museum and Gallery. Some maps are outdated / shabby. Tour guides may cover this area, but self guided discovery is limited. No signage/ information relating to role of walls as defences for the Abbey. There is a tourist map/board near the Gatehouse on Marygate, which could be improved. There is some A-board signage to guesthouses near interval Tower C and a tourist board near St Mary's Gatehouse. St Mary's Tower is named externally, but not within the Gardens.</p> <p>There are timber shutters near interval Tower C, which have an interpretation board externally on Marygate (but nothing on the inside of the wall).</p> <p>The Gardens contain contemporary lighting set in hard landscaping to rear of the Gallery, some in ground spotlights upright the walls around interval Towers D and E. There is a large 'traditional lantern' on top of the arch at the Water Tower.</p>	<p>Discreet interpretation relating to the role of the Precinct walls in Museum Gardens at its entrances and potentially in-ground or using engraved stones used elsewhere in the Gardens, including at Interval Tower A, should be introduced to enhance public engagement and understanding.</p> <p>Access and interpretation should be provided to enhance public engagement and understanding to sections of wall with a narrow wall walk (between interval towers A and B); at the garden off Bootham (potentially images of properties which once stood here and highlighting of the limewash / paint on the walls); at the Water Tower; St Mary's Tower; interval tower D (to explain the intricate stone repairs and the history of fire here).</p> <p>Replace the light on the Water Tower's arch with a more sensitive solution, in order to improve the setting of the walls and tower - as part of a wider strategy to provide better architectural illumination of the walls, whilst being mindful of the ecological impact - particularly bats.</p> <p>The City map on Marygate should be updated.</p>

¹ Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 20

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Significant view / feature	SV1	<p>This is a highly distinctive and attractive setting, comprising the Abbey precinct - a collection of buildings and ruins (listed / scheduled) which acts a picturesque backdrop to the registered gardens. This is enhanced by its riverside setting and glimpsed views of the Minster from alongside the Gallery, near interval Tower D. The Abbey's Precinct Walls stretch along Bootham and terminate in the Postern Tower, by the Gallery entrance, taking in views of the Gallery, De Grey Rooms, Bootham Bar, the distinctive and gentle curve of St Leonard's Place and beyond - the Minster. The White Horse pub backs directly onto the wall lining Bootham, infilling its crenels. Other, residential properties back onto walls between the Postern Tower and St Mary's Tower, in some instances with some poor drainage solutions.</p> <p>Views along Marygate are attractive, with St Mary's Gatehouse, St Olave's and fine Georgian and Victorian residential properties. The modern gates in the Walls are neutral or detract. Views from St Mary's Tower and progressive views along Bootham looking to the Minster and Bootham Bar are dramatic.</p> <p>Some stretches of the walls have back of house functions set against them - e.g. parking, storage, compost storage, private garden associated with gatehouse. There is an unattractive 1960s building (York St John's Boathouse) lining Dame Judy Dench Walk and near the Water Tower, which detracts. There is street furniture clutter around St Mary's Gatehouse and the Postern Tower.</p>	<p>The 1960s boathouse should be removed.</p> <p>Improvements should be made to the street clutter at Postern Tower and on Exhibition Square as part of a public realm / landscape strategy to tie in with Exhibition Square and avoid the dangerous pinch point at the corner of Bootham.</p> <p>Poor external cabling and conduit to the Postern Tower should be rationalised.</p> <p>A management strategy should be created for the back-of-house areas fronting the walls along Marygate, including Interval Tower B, to improve their setting / avoid clutter / storing damaging elements against the walls.</p> <p>Drainage from properties lining Bootham should be reviewed.</p> <p>The interpretation board on Marygate (regarding the shutter) should be replaced as part of the wall-wide strategy and be duplicated on the inside of the walls.</p>

Section 20

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
Access	A2	<p>The Precinct Walls are relatively accessible but there are no paths to south were west corner of the gardens, near the walls. The walls are relatively accessible along Marygate via wide pavements of tarmac. There are York stone and setts at the gatehouse entrance, however the pavement has pinch points where it narrows dramatically. Opportunities may be limited by historic surfaces.</p> <p>Access to St Leonard's is currently blocked and the gate leading from the Fern Garden to Multangular Tower is locked.</p>	<p>Improvements to the pavements along Marygate should be reviewed, taking into account the historic surfaces.</p>
Ramparts		None	No ramparts.
Visitor Facilities	VF2	<p>Major attraction but role of the precinct walls does not appear to be well explained. Standard issue Council bins adjacent to Water Tower. There is a small, but welcome, garden off Bootham though it only has one bench, planted with three birch trees.</p>	<p>The small garden off Bootham should be improved through the introduction of additional benches and discreet interpretation. The bins / benches close to the walls and towers should be reviewed as part of this and the garden area adjacent to St Mary's Tower improved and litter bin location reviewed/replaced.</p> <p>At the Water Tower, the potential for a temporary cultural / pop up use in summer months should be considered as a means of introducing activity and reaching wider audiences. N.B. the archway is narrow, which would restrict access.</p> <p>The street clutter at the corner of Bootham and St Mary's Gatehouse should be rationalised.</p>

1 Any recommendation or opportunity is the result of a rapid site survey and its acceptability would need robustly testing

Section 20

Theme/Criteria	Score	Comments	Threats / Opportunities for change / Recommendations
		<p>Notes on St Mary's Tower: Hamlet of St Mary Sign, otherwise no information. There is a listed K6 red telephone box next to the Tower. Modern timber framed windows in Tower, at first floor leaded. Small garden adjacent to tower could be improved. Litter bin could also be improved.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Gatehouse: Interior not inspected. Museum Gardens signage and St Olave's A-board. No signage/information relating to role of walls as defences for the Abbey.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Interval Tower D: Very delicate and intricate stone repairs to demonstrate/salvage fire damaged stone, substantial metal propping (temporary - 5 years). No interpretation for repair works, history of fire etc.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Postern Tower and Interior: Contains Sightseeing York tour ticket office. Ground floor access only. A lot of street clutter at this corner, Gallery side and roadside. Poor external cabling and conduit.</p>	
		<p>Notes on Interval tower E: Large artwork placed here, lit by large in ground uplighters</p>	

Section 20



Section 20 Map on Marygate



Section 20 Street furniture clutter at Postern Tower



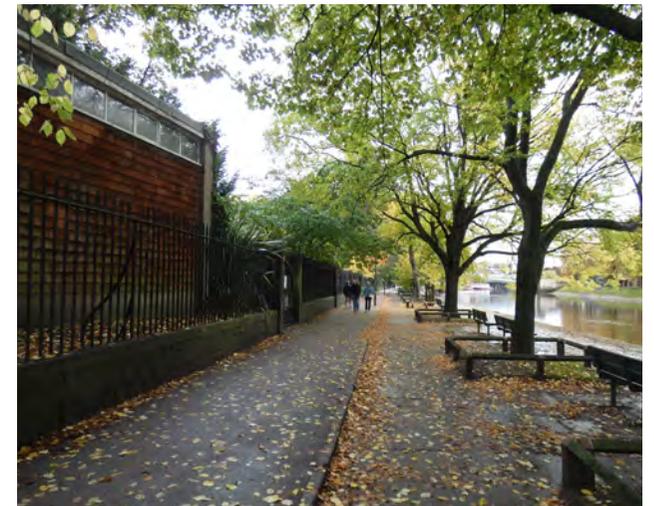
Section 20 Signage and clutter at St Mary's Gatehouse



Section 20 Boathouse in Museum Gardens



Section 20 The Hospitium in Museum Gardens



Section 20 View along towpath

Section 20



Section 20 St Mary's Tower from the rear of York Art Gallery



Section 20 View along Marygate



Section 20 Service yard in Museum Gardens



Section 20 Service yard in Museum Gardens, note original wall walk



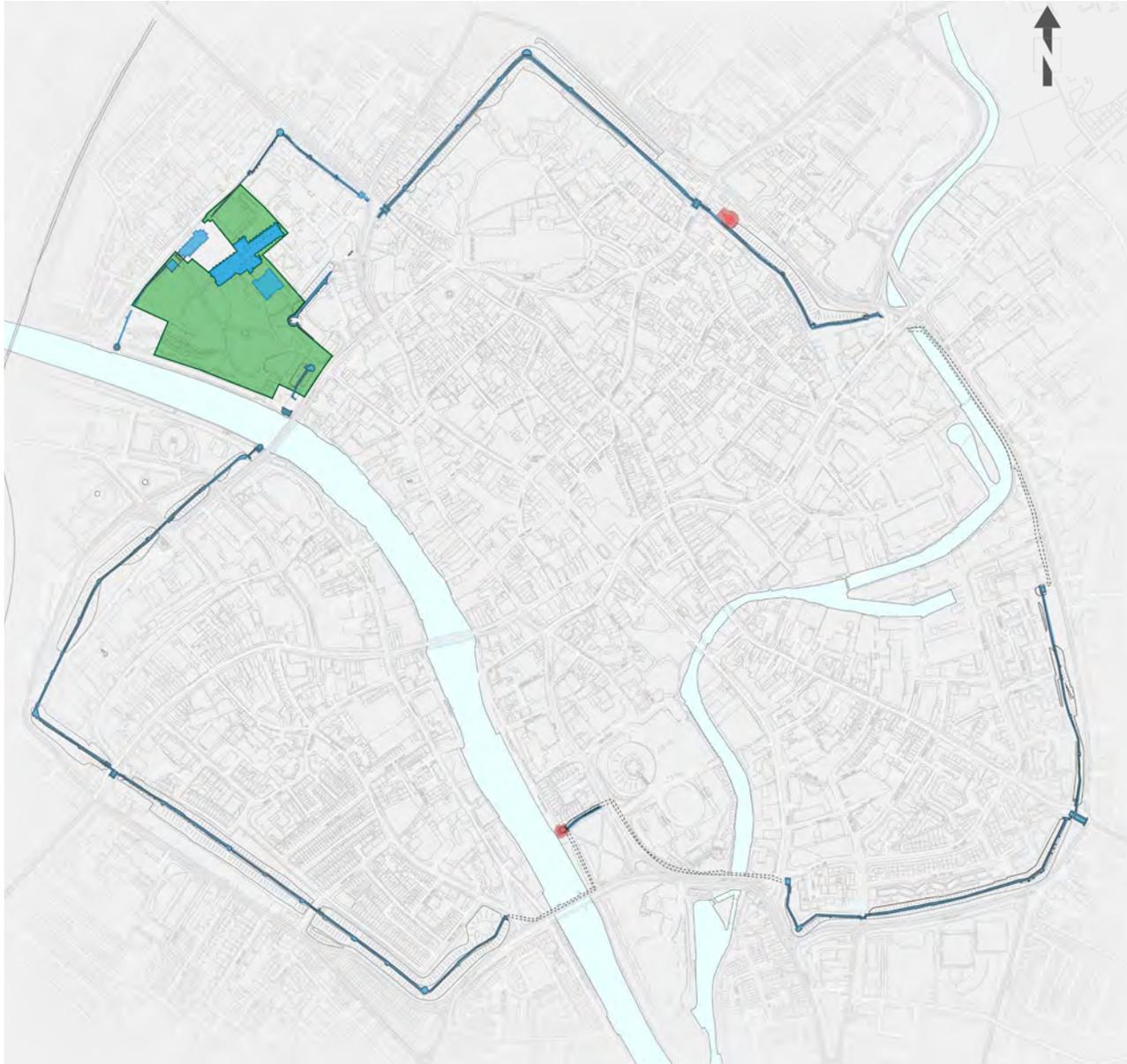
Section 20 Garden along Bootham



Section 20 St Mary's Precinct Wall

Key

- Grade I listed
- Grade II* listed
- Grade II Registered Park and Garden



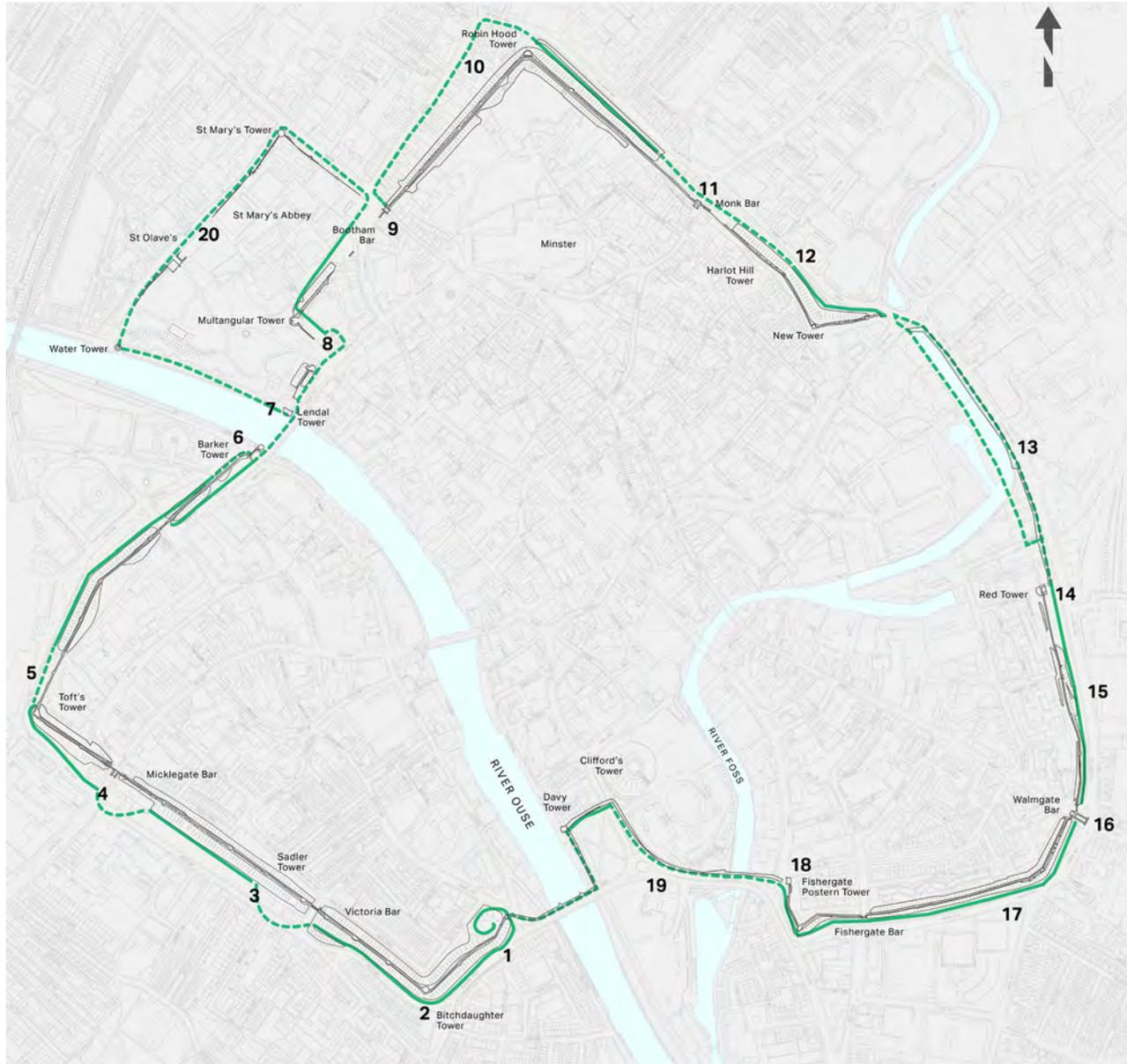
Listed Buildings Associated with the Walls

Key

- Positive
- Modest
- Neutral
- Negative
- Detractive Railing
- S Street furniture



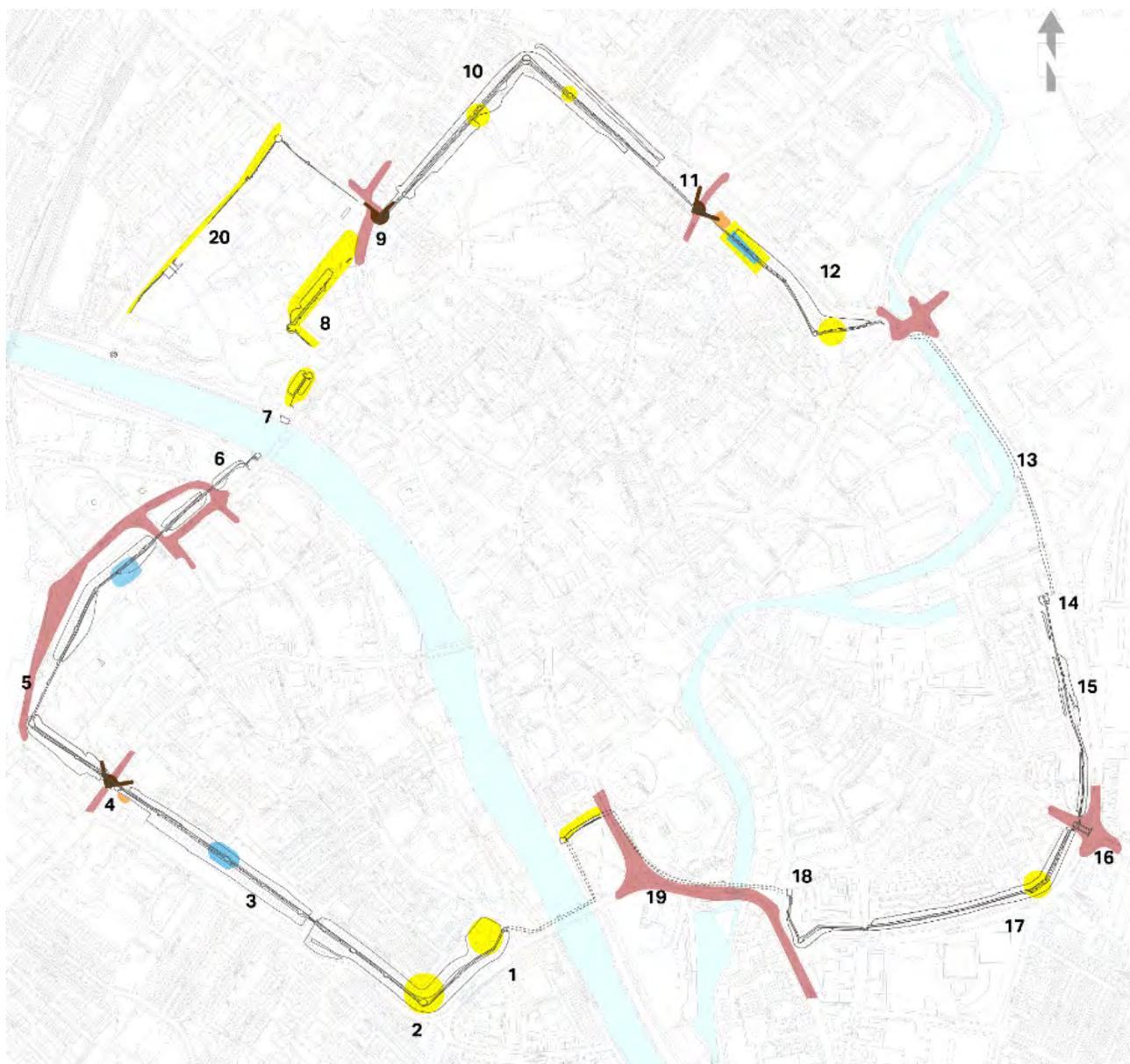
Contributions to the Immediate Setting of the Walls



Suggested rampart route map

Key

- Improved access
- Traffic/highways improvement
- Area to be reviewed to improve appreciation of key views / features
- Potential location for cafe / New or improved WC facilities
- New rooftop viewpoints



Potential opportunities map



Appendices

Contents

Appendix I: City Walls Scheduled Monument Description	500
Appendix I: York Minster Cathedral Precinct Scheduled Monument Description	501
Appendix I: St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls Scheduled Monument Description	504
Appendix II: Listed Buildings Associated with the City Walls	507
Appendix II: Listed Buildings Associated with St Mary's Abbey	514
Appendix II: Museum Gardens Listing Description	521
Appendix III: Generic Scheduled Monument Consent Application (2007)	524
Appendix III: Specification for Works Conducted under Generic SMC (2007)	526
Appendix V: Bibliography	540
Appendix VI: Section 2 Plates	541
Appendix VII: List of Plans Consulted in 2020 at York Explore Library and Archive	545
Appendix VIII: Research Agenda: Initial Research Questions	546
Appendix VIII: Research Agenda: Initial Research Questions Continued	547
Appendix IX: Recent Planning History for the Walls	548
Appendix X: Recent Planning History for Development within the Setting of the Walls	550
Appendix XI: CYC Chainage Map	552
Appendix XII: CYC Ownership Map	553
Appendix XIII: CYC Historic Environment Record Asset List with Monument Numbers	554

Appendix I: City Walls Scheduled Monument Description

City Walls, gates, posterns

Heritage Category: Scheduled Monument

List Entry Number: 1004910

National Grid References: SE 59969 51328, SE 59992 51958, SE 60016 52002, SE 60032 52067, SE 60400 51409, SE 60678 52141, SE 60880 51286

Summary

Not currently available for this entry.

Reasons for Designation

Not currently available for this entry.

History

Not currently available for this entry.

Details

This record has been generated from an "old county number" (OCN) scheduling record. These are monuments that were not reviewed under the Monuments Protection Programme and are some of our oldest designation records. As such they do not yet have the full descriptions of their modernised counterparts available. Please contact us if you would like further information.

Legacy

The contents of this record have been generated from a legacy data system.

Legacy System number: YO 30

Legacy System: RSM - OCN

Appendix I: York Minster Cathedral Precinct Scheduled Monument Description

York Minster Cathedral Precinct: including Bootham Bar and the length of City Walls extending round the precinct up to Monk Bar

Heritage Category: Scheduled Monument

List Entry Number: 1017777

Date first listed: 8th October 1937

Date of most recent amendment: 20th May 1993

National Grid Reference: SE 60335 52293

Reasons for Designation

The present cathedral church known as York Minster is at least the fourth major church to have stood on this site. The earliest ecclesiastical use of the site can be traced back to the early seventh century when Paulinus baptised King Edwin of Northumbria in a wooden oratory considered to have been located in the vicinity of the present Minster. This event was of particular importance as it marked the post-Roman rebirth of Christianity in northern Britain. As a result of the adoption of Christianity by the Northumbrian kings, a bishopric was established in York, this being one of the earliest such foundations in post-Roman England. Pre-Conquest cathedrals are a rare and poorly understood monument class, there having been only twenty-four known examples. York is of particular note because its chief incumbents were archbishops second in ecclesiastical authority only to the archbishops of Canterbury. Evidence for the ecclesiastical importance of York in the pre-Conquest period is provided by contemporary references to its library, the episcopal see and, in particular, its monastic school whose most famous pupil, Alcuin, became Charlemagne's adviser. This impor-

tance has been maintained down to the present day. Even during the Viking period, when York was conquered and became part of an independent Viking kingdom that lasted from 866 to 954, there was an unbroken succession of archbishops suggesting that the pagan Vikings quickly converted to Christianity. After the Norman Conquest, the see rose in power and prosperity when its Norman archbishops began a series of major building works which culminated in the construction of the present Minster in the thirteenth century and after. During the medieval period, the cathedral gained considerably from its position within a thriving and wealthy town; one of the most flourishing urban centres in England and the major town of the North. The wealth of York was reflected in the magnificent, extensive and costly building programme which characterised much of the cathedral precinct throughout the medieval period. These works were funded in part by pious donations and endowments to the church made by leading secular individuals. With the exception of the present Minster many of the buildings and features of the pre- and post-Conquest cathedral precinct are no longer visible. However, extensive below-ground deposits are known to survive across the majority of the precinct area. This is due in part to the fact that the area has remained largely in ecclesiastical hands since earliest times. This has limited development within the precinct; hence, below-ground archaeology survives here in much better condition than in other more intensively developed areas of the city. In some areas of the precinct, up to 4m of archaeological deposits are preserved. Because of this depth of stratigraphy, extensive remains will survive well beneath the present ground surface and will include not only those of the pre- and post-Conquest cathedrals and their ancillary buildings but also the Roman legionary fortress which formerly occupied the site and the remains of the seventeenth century Ingram Mansion. The survival of the Roman fortress is of particular note as it

was one of the earliest military foundations in the north of England and also one of the most long-lived. It led to York being granted the status of colonia and also, in the fourth century, to it becoming, for a time, the Imperial capital of the Emperor Constantine. This and the degree to which its remains are preserved make it a monument of national importance in its own right.

Details

York Minster cathedral precinct is a multi-period site comprising a single area containing a number of nationally important archaeological features which also extend beyond the area of the scheduling. These include part of the Roman legionary fortress at Eboracum, the site of the Anglian and early Norman minsters, the sites of the Anglian and medieval churches of the Alma Sophia, St Sepulchre and St Mary ad Valvas, the sites of the medieval archbishops' palace and deanery, St William's College, the precinct boundary, gates and gatehouses, part of the City Wall including Bootham Bar, cemeteries dating from the ninth to fifteenth centuries, the site of the Ingram Mansion and the sites of the cathedral prebendal houses. The boundary of the scheduling has been drawn to identify the main area of the cathedral precinct. The legionary fortress, founded in AD71 by Petilius Cerialis, occupied a roughly square site on the north-east bank of the River Ouse above its confluence with the Foss. The cathedral precinct lies largely within the north quarter and includes the remains of barracks, the commandant's house, the principia or headquarters, sections of the road known as the Via Decumana and parts of the north-west and north-east walls. In the seventh and eighth centuries AD the Roman fortress was taken over as a royal centre by the Anglian Kingdom of Northumbria. The principia survived

in use as a palace down to c.AD800 and the commandant's house is thought to have been reused as the Anglian archbishop's residence. The fortress walls were maintained throughout the Anglian period and refortified with a new rampart and palisade during the Viking era. After the Norman Conquest the Viking defences were added to and, during the twelfth century, the four main city gateways, or Bars, were built. Of these, Bootham Bar lies adjacent to the Minster precinct at the junction of Bootham and High Petergate. The walls form the northern part of the cathedral precinct boundary while the southern part correlated with the boundaries of adjacent parishes. Four cathedral precinct gates were still extant in 1736: Peter Gate, the main gate at Minster Gates, a gate 'in Ogleforth' and a gate at the junction of College Street and Goodramgate. The latter allowed access from the main precinct to the Bedern, a cluster of buildings which housed the Vicars Choral who supported the medieval cathedral canons in services in the Minster. Although a Bishop of York is known to have existed in AD314, no Roman church has so far been identified. The present see was founded in 625 when Paulinus, arriving from Kent to convert the Northumbrians to Christianity, built a small wooden church dedicated to St Peter within the Anglian royal centre. This church was restored and repaired several times in the succeeding centuries until, in 1069, work began on the first Norman minster. The remains of Paulinus's church and its Anglian and Viking successors have not yet been located, but fragments of sculpture have been recovered from the cemeteries of both periods and include seventh and eighth century grave-slabs, and Viking grave-markers have been excavated from beneath the south transept of the present Minster. Excavation has shown that the pre-Conquest cathedral does not underlie the Norman foundation and therefore it is presumed to lie either south of the south transept or north of the present church beneath Dean's Park. The latter is considered the

most likely since it would explain the alignment of the medieval archbishops' palace which does not match that of the medieval church. The substantial stone foundations of the first Norman minster have, however, been found beneath the present church, overlying the north corner of the Roman principia and adjacent barrack blocks. Begun by Archbishop Thomas of Bayeux in 1069, this church was extended by Archbishop Roger of Pont l'Eveque in the mid-twelfth century. The present Minster dates from the second quarter of the thirteenth century and is not included in the scheduling, being in current ecclesiastical use. The remains of a number of churches dating to the Anglian and medieval periods are also known to survive within the cathedral precinct. These are the Alma Sophia, or church of the Holy Wisdom, built between 767 and 780 and so far not precisely located, the church of St Mary and the Holy Angels, also known as St Sepulchre, founded in the late twelfth century, and the church of St Mary ad Valvas, demolished in the 1380s. One wall of the latter was uncovered in the late 1960s, close to the east end of the Minster, and remains relating to St Sepulchre were found near the gate of the archbishops' palace, partially built over by the fourteenth century extension of the cathedral nave. The post-Conquest palace of Archbishop Thomas and his successors lay to the north of the Minster and comprised an open court surrounded by buildings. Its visible remains consist of six bays of a late twelfth century blind arcade, known as the 'Cloister', and an L-shaped block to the north which housed the thirteenth century chapel and is now the Minster Library. Documentary sources refer to an aisled medieval hall, a south-west range and a buttressed building to the south-east of the chapel. During the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, the palace fell out of use and, by 1600, had become ruinous. In 1618 the site was leased to Sir Arthur Ingram who incorporated the south-west range into a mansion known as York Palace. Plans and surveys show

the layout of the mansion but, by the eighteenth century, this too was in ruins and was demolished and the site cleared in 1814. Other features of the cathedral precinct include the site of the medieval deanery, originally constructed in the reign of William II at the junction of Minster Yard and Deangate, St William's College, built in 1465 to provide accommodation for the chantry priests, and numerous prebendal houses, some of which, like St William's College and some of the service buildings of the deanery, are still extant or incorporated into current buildings. The remains of the medieval Treasurer's House survive beneath the extant seventeenth century building and adjacent Gray's Court while a late medieval cemetery lies around the east end of the current Minster. The current seventeenth century Treasurer's House is considered adequately protected by its Grade I Listed status and is not included in the scheduling, although the ground beneath is incorporated. This also applies to St Williams College, the Minster Library, Gray's Court and the present Minster, which are protected by Grade I Listed status. In addition other buildings, considered adequately protected by Listed status are excluded from the scheduling, although the ground beneath them is included: York College for Girls (Grade II*), the Minster Song School and the Purey-Cust Chambers (both Grade II), together with other buildings including private houses and premises Listed Grade I, II* and II). Also excluded from the scheduling are the present Deanery, the Purey-Cust Nursing Home, all buildings, the surfaces of all paths, roads and driveways, all modern walling and railings; all fixtures such as lamp-posts, bins, benches and signs, although the ground beneath all these exclusions is included.

Legacy System number: 13280

Legacy System: RSM

Sources

Books and journals

The Victoria History of the City of York, (1961)

Addyman, P V (ed), The Archaeology of York, (1972)

Aylmer, G E, Cant, R (eds), A History of York Minster, (1977)

Benson, G, Later Medieval York, (1919)

Drake, , Eboracum, (1736)

Butler, R M, 'York Historian' in York Palace: A Vanished Jacobean Mansion, , Vol. VIII, (1988), 25-45

Morris, R K, 'The Anglo Saxon Church' in Alcuin, York and the alma sophia, , Vol. 60, (1986), 80-89

Phillips, D, 'Excavations at York Minster' in The Cathedral of Archbishop Thomas of Bayeux, , Vol. Vol II, (1985)

Other

RCHM, Eburacum, Roman York, York, (1962)

RCHM, The Central Area, York, (1981)

RCHME, City of York Volume II: The City Walls, (1972)

Ryder, P, Cathedral Close Reports: York, 1990, Unpublished

Title: Roman and Anglian York Source Date: 1989 Author:

Publisher: Surveyor: With descriptive text

Title: Viking and Medieval York Source Date: 1989 Author:

Publisher: Surveyor: With descriptive text

Appendix I: St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls Scheduled Monument Description

St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls

Heritage Category: Scheduled Monument

List Entry Number: 1004920

Date first listed: 19th April 1915

Date of most recent amendment: 18th December 2014

Location Description: Precinct walls and associated towers extending along Marygate and Bootham, York.

National Grid Reference: SE 59994 52330

Summary

Medieval defences defining the precinct boundary to the north and west sides of St Mary's Abbey, York. See separate, abutting scheduling for St Mary's Abbey (NHLE 100419) which also includes other parts of the precinct boundary.

Reasons for Designation

The medieval defences defining the precinct boundary to the north and west sides of St Mary's Abbey, York, are scheduled for the following principal reasons:

* Architectural: the precinct walls represent a very significant survival of medieval monastic architecture;

* Historical: from its foundation in the eleventh century St Mary's Abbey remained one of the most prominent and wealthy monasteries in England until its Dissolution in 1539;

* Archaeological potential: the wall, towers and ground beneath them retain material which has the potential to increase our knowledge and understanding of the abbey, its precinct, and of other sites of this type.

History

St Mary's Abbey was founded in circa 1086 when Count Alan Rufus granted St Olave's Church (on the line of the defences, Grade I listed, but not included in the scheduling) to a community of Benedictine monks which had been trying to re-establish the monastery at Lastingham on the North York Moors. In 1088 William II visited York and made a further grant of land adjacent to St Olave's, personally laying the foundation stone for a new abbey church. This royal grant established the extent of the monastic precinct which is thought to fossilise the extent of a defended annex to the Roman legionary fortress lying immediately outside the western defences of the city. It is suggested that this was the pre-Conquest Earlsburh: the seat of the English earls who governed York from 954.

It is presumed that the abbey had some form of boundary marking the extent of the precinct soon after its establishment, but it is not known what form this took. The earliest sections of the surviving precinct walls are thought to date to 1266, being built following the murder of some of the abbey's tenants by people from the city in 1262. This took the form of a wall built of magnesian limestone ashlar rising to over 3m, providing a measure of security, but falling short of being fully defensive. This wall is thought to have only enclosed the north-eastern part of the precinct, extending northwards from St Olave's along Marygate and then eastwards along Bootham.

In 1318 (during a period of Scottish incursions following the English defeat at Bannockburn in 1314) the abbey was granted a licence to crenellate, resulting in extension and fortification of the walls to form a defensive circuit immediately outside the defences of the city. The earlier wall was heightened by a further 2m and crenellated, with half-round interval towers also being constructed. The circuit was also extended with a new wall linking the main gatehouse by St Olave's to the river. As part of this work, two large round towers were built in circa 1324, St Mary's Tower (at the corner of Bootham and Marygate) and the Water Tower at the southern end of the Marygate wall, on the Ouse riverbank. A wall was also constructed along the eastern side of the precinct, facing the higher city wall across an intramural ditch. A surviving section of this wall (Grade I listed, but not included in the scheduling) extends north-eastwards of the Kings Manor, on the eastern side of a driveway. Buried remains of the rest of the circuit are also not included, although parts are included within the scheduling of St Mary's Abbey.

In 1497 a postern gate defended by a rectangular tower was constructed in the north-eastern corner of the precinct to allow more direct access into the city via Bootham Bar. The pretext for its construction was a proposed visit to the abbey by Henry VII, but it is named Queen Margaret's Arch after his eldest daughter who visited York en route north to become the bride of James IV of Scotland.

St Mary's Abbey was one of the last monasteries to be dissolved, being surrendered to the Crown on 26 November 1539. It was retained by Henry VIII, becoming the Kings Manor, used as the headquarters of the "King's Council of the Northern Parts" governing northern England. The Kings Manor remained a seat of government

and occasional royal residence up until the English Civil War when the precinct walls were re-used as part of the city's defences. These withstood a 12-week siege by Parliamentary forces in 1644, the precinct being breached, but unsuccessfully assaulted on the 16 June. This assault resulted in the partial destruction of St Mary's Tower which was subsequently repaired.

From 1827, much of the abbey precinct was purchased by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society and turned into a museum and pleasure grounds. The society undertook restoration work of the standing walls, including the demolition of a number of properties that had been built up along the outside face of the precinct walls. Pedestrian arches were also inserted (circa 1836) besides Queen Margaret's Arch and the Water Tower.

Designation History: The precinct walls and towers along Marygate and Bootham were included along with about two-thirds of St Mary's Abbey precinct as a single scheduled monument in 1915. The scheduling of the precinct walls was confirmed in 1922 following a query from the Corporation of York which had by this time taken over responsibility for the walls. This confirmation led to the precinct walls being treated as a separate, but related, scheduled monument. These scheduled walls were listed Grade I in 1954.

Details

The monument is divided into two scheduled areas: extending along the precinct boundary from Queen Margaret's Arch, via St Mary's Tower, as far as the north side of 29 Marygate; and secondly from St Mary's Lodge to the Water Tower. Both these scheduled areas abut the larger

scheduled area for St Mary's Abbey, this latter scheduling including the gatehouse adjacent to St Olave's on Marygate.

Most of the walls and towers within the scheduling are thought to survive to about their full height, with C19 and later restoration and areas of rebuilding. The post-1318 heightening of the earlier wall is marked by a clear horizontal break internally because the later work is slightly thinner, with the off-set for the thicker, lower wall thought to have formed part of the support for a timber wall-walk. There is also a slight change in stonework, with the later walling generally employing larger blocks of a slightly lighter colour. Unrestored crenellations retain L-shaped slots in the reveals to the embrasures, indicating that these were originally closed by timber shutters. Arrow slits within towers and through some of the merlons of the battlements are generally cruciform, with widely splayed internal reveals.

The Postern Tower, built 1497, is rectangular, extending beyond the outer face of the wall. This is brick built, faced in ashlar, originally of two storeys but with the upper floor divided to provide a third storey probably in the C17. The hipped roof is also thought to be C17. Extending to its south east is a section of wall just over 9m long which stands to full height which is pierced by Queen Margaret's Arch and a much smaller C19 pedestrian entrance. The broken eastern end of this wall is just short of where it is thought to have turned south-west (to be continued by the unscheduled but Grade I-listed length of wall north-east of Kings Manor). Between the Postern Tower and St Mary's Tower about 130m to the north-west, the wall also stands complete, topped by battlements and retaining two interval towers (Towers D and E). However, for much of this length, the wall forms the rear of three terraces of C18 and C19 buildings. These buildings extend beyond

the area of scheduling, but include two Grade II Listings (8 and 10 Bootham and 40 Bootham). The interval towers are of similar design and size, being half-round externally, semi-hexagonal internally, with an open back which projects beyond the inner face of the flanking wall.

St Mary's Tower is circular externally, hexagonal internally, of two storeys with a C19 conical roof. Much of the northern half of the building is a C17 rebuild following the partial demolition of the tower in the siege of 1644: the ragged boundary between the two builds being particularly clear on the side facing Bootham. The wall continues just over 140m between St Mary's Tower and 29 Marygate. About halfway along this length there is an open backed, rectangular interval tower (Tower C) which retains a possible door-jamb of a blocked postern doorway. Adjacent to this tower there is a C20 vehicle entrance that is cut through the wall. The southern end of this section of precinct wall (and the southern end of the first area of scheduling) forms part of 29 Marygate: an C18 house that is listed Grade II* and extends beyond the boundary of the monument, also incorporating further medieval remains.

The principal medieval entrance to St Mary's Abbey, the gatehouse immediately to the south-west of St Olave's Church, is not included in this scheduling but is included in the separately scheduled area for the rest of the Abbey. The adjacent Grade I-listed St Mary's Lodge is also not included. This monument's second area of scheduling includes the precinct wall which extends from St Mary's Lodge, south-west to end at the Water Tower on the Ouse riverbank. This section of wall was originally built after 1318, but various sections are C19 rebuilds or alterations. The wall includes two, small, semi-circular interval towers, the northern (Tower B) being a C19 rebuild of the original demolished in circa 1700, the wall to the north

standing to full height, that to the south being lower with no crenellations. Just south of the southern interval tower (Tower A) there is a blocked postern doorway. The wall terminates to the south at the Water Tower. This is circular externally, hexagonal internally, now appearing to be single storied because of the embankment of the river. The parapet is much reduced, but was formally battlemented. There is evidence that the tower was connected to a wall running eastwards along the river, possibly forming part of a quay. The medieval style archway through the wall north of the tower is C19, created as part of a riverside walk.

Legacy System number: YO 12 A

Legacy System: RSM – OCN

Sources: Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 160-173

Appendix II: Listed Buildings Associated with the City Walls

City Wall from Lendal Hill House to The Lodge, Museum Gardens

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259290

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60014 52008

Details

Defensive wall approximately 45 metres long from Lendal Hill House, Museum Street (qv) to The Lodge, Museum Gardens (qv). 1250-70, partly rebuilt 1874. Magnesian limestone ashlar. Embattled wall from approximately 2 metres to 4 metres high, stepped up slope of rampart. Four buttresses with offsets on inner side and wallwalk approximately 1 metre wide. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 110).

Legacy System number: 463050

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 110

City Wall from Multangular Tower to rear of No.8 St Leonard's Place

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259292

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60029 52117

Details

Defensive wall approximately 75 metres long from the Multangular Tower, Museum Gardens (qv) to rear of No.8 St Leonard's Place (qv). 1250-70; excavated 1969. Magnesian limestone ashlar, underbuilt in places with cobbles. Embattled wall varying in height from 3.5 to 5.0 metres, with sloped copings. Inserted doorway with corbelled lintel adjacent to Multangular Tower. 7 squat buttresses with offsets on outer side of wall, one and traces of other on inside: wallwalk approximately 0.5 metres wide. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 111).

Legacy System number: 463052

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 111

City Wall from Bootham Bar to Layerthorpe, including Bootham Bar, Robin Hood Tower, Monks Bar, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259293

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60284 52411

Details

Includes: Monk Bar GOODRAMGATE. Includes: Robin Hood's Tower LORD MAYOR'S WALK. Includes: Bootham Bar HIGH PETERGATE. Defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses between Bootham Bar and Layerthorpe, including 10 intermediate towers, in addition to the 3 main towers. 1250-70. Wall between Monk Bar and Layerthorpe restored 1877-78, between Bootham Bar and Monk Bar restored 1888-89. Bootham Bar repaired 1645 following Civil War damage; barbican removed 1831; inner side remodelled and flanking arches created 1834; major restorations of 1889 and 1969; figures carved in 1894 by George Milburn. Robin Hood's Tower rebuilt 1889. Monk Bar early C14, raised in late C15, refenestrated in C16; barbican removed 1825; flanking arches 1845 and 1861; restorations of 1952-53 and 1966. MATERIALS: magnesian limestone ashlar; Bootham Bar incorporates reused Roman gritstone: Bootham and Monk Bars have lead roofs. EXTERIOR: walls battered to full height in places, with chamfered plinth, strengthened by buttresses with weathered offsets. Crenellations have sloped copings and some merlons pierced by musket loops or gunports.

On inner side, stone paved wallwalk largely carried on series of round arches, protected by cast-iron railings. Towers are half-hexagonal, semicircular, rectangular or irregular in shape, most having cruciform arrow slits with oilllets: one along Jewbury has musket loops. Most have embattled parapets with merlons pierced by arrow slits: one in angle of the wall along Jewbury has corbelled string course beneath reconstructed C19 merlons. Towers along Lord Mayor's Walk and Jewbury have C19 bartizans, the former embattled, the latter with plain copings. Former has carved shield with cross in relief. Tower at Layerthorpe end is supported on 2 buttress bases and reused corbels, and incorporates head of pointed arch of 5 orders: on outer side, water spout survives. Adjacent wall is stepped down to chamfered gateway with 2-centred head closed by iron bar gate.

Bootham Bar: 3 storeys. Round arch of 2 orders is flanked by buttresses with offsets, rising to circular bartizans at second floor level. On first floor are two small pointed windows: on second floor, two blocked rectangular windows beneath plain parapet between bartizans. Chamfered string courses on first and second floors extend full width of front, buttresses and bartizans. Beneath second floor string are two shields carved with the Arms of the City of York, both formerly painted; above is shield of the Stuart Royal Arms within moulded round-headed panel. Figures topping bartizans and parapet represent an Alderman, a mason and a knight. Inner side largely repeats the outer with cruciform arrow slits on first floor, narrow slits windows in chamfered openings on second floor and shallow recessed panel beneath parapet. INTERIOR: raised portcullis fixed in position behind outer arch. Robin Hood's Tower has high chamfered plinth, 2 tiers of cruciform slits and embattled parapet above string course, merlons pierced by slits and with gabled inside and out. Monk Bar: 4 storeys. Round carriage arch

2 plain orders recessed beneath giant 2-centred arch of 2 chamfered orders springing from 2-storey projecting pilaster buttresses with moulded and weathered bases. First floor of buttresses pierced by shouldered doorways to original barbican: above carriage arch, 2 tiers of cruciform arrow slits. Buttresses rise into corbelled-out 3-stage embattled bartizans joined at second stage by gallery with embattled parapet, at third stage by plain parapet. Bartizans have cruciform arrow slits to each stage, also to second stage, behind gallery, over square gunports. Heraldry includes 2 painted and carved shields of the Arms of City of York and shield of the Royal Arms of England beneath crowned helm with crest, all beneath canopies. Both bartizans topped by 3 carved figures of wildmen holding boulders. Inner side has giant segmental chamfered arch over recessed carriageway arch with pointed arched staircase door at left. Above carriage arch is corbelled gallery beneath low round-headed doorway, central window of 2 tiers of 3 round-headed lights and 1-light window to left, in chamfered surrounds. Second floor has square-headed window of 3 trefoiled lights in centre, niches with cinquefoiled heads at each end. Third floor has square-headed window of paired shouldered lights at each side of shallow trefoil-headed niche in round-headed moulded surround. INTERIOR: staircases to all floors contained in wall thickness. All upper floors are stone-flagged and roofs to ground, first and second floors are vaulted with chamfered stone ribs. Garderobes and fireplaces survive on first and second floors. On first floor, raised portcullis is visible: on second floor, wooden windlass for portcullis survives. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 115-137).

Legacy System number: 463053

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 115-137

City Wall from the Red Tower to Fishergate Postern Tower, including The Red Tower, Fishergate Bar, Walmgate Bar, Fishergate Postern Tower, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259296

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60694 51256

Details

Includes: Fishergate Postern Tower PICCADILLY. Includes: The Red Tower FOSS ISLANDS ROAD. Includes: Fishergate Bar PARAGON STREET. Includes: Walmgate Bar WALMGATE. Defensive walls, gates, gatehouses and towers between The Red Tower and Fishergate Postern Tower, including 5 intermediate towers in addition to the 3 main towers. Walls mid C14, restored 1857-58, 1864 and later. The Red Tower built c1490, heavily restored and re-roofed 1857-8, restored 1958. Walmgate Bar and barbican C14 incorporating mid C12 gate, house added c1585, repaired 1645-48, restorations 1840 and later. Fishergate Bar incorporating earlier gate c1440, blocked 1489-1827, restored 1961. Fishergate Postern c1440,

Tower c1505, re-roofed C17, restored 1838 and 1960. All structures except The Red Tower of magnesian limestone ashlar; The Red Tower of red-brown brick in random bond with limestone dressings. House on Walmgate Bar timber-framed with plastered infill: Bar has lead roof. The Red Tower and Fishergate Postern Tower have hipped roofs of tile with gablets and overhanging eaves. EXTERIOR: walls carried on foundation arches, embedded in rampart, and stepped with the slope, has chamfered plinth where visible; short buttresses have offsets. Parapet is plain or crenellated with sloped copings, and pierced with musket loops or arrow slits, some canopied. On inner side, stone paved walkway edged with moulded coping, carried on segmental arches in places. Towers are rectangular with chamfered plinths; some have cruciform arrow slits with oilets; all are crenellated, one with merlons pierced with canopied arrow slits. Inner side of tower at south angle has doorway with chamfer-stopped jambs and segment-arched lintel. The Red Tower: 2 storeys and attic. Entrance on inner side is quoined and chamfered doorway with 4-centred head. Generally ground floor openings are plain slits with ashlar sills and lintels; first floor openings either segment-headed or brick blocked by board shutters or cruciform slits with oilets cut from ashlar blocks. One side has dummy garderobe projecting on corbels. Attic windows are gabled dormers closed with board shutters. Walmgate Bar: 3-storey gate and gatehouse with 1-storey barbican. Barbican has moulded plinth, weathered angle buttresses, moulded corbel course to embattled parapet and corbelled-out bartizans. Archway is chamfered and 2-centred with moulded impost. Parapet has central painted and carved City of York arms in moulded and pedimented surround, over defaced datestone originally dated AD.1684. Returns have embattled parapets over hollow chamfered corbel courses. Gatehouse front within barbican has chamfered round arch with inscribed slate panel recording

1840 restoration above. Upper storey between embattled bartizans joined by plain parapet has reset painted and carved Royal Arms in moulded surround flanked by 1-light windows. Square-headed doorways open to barbican walkways. Moulded strings beneath upper storey and parapet. Gatehouse front to Walmgate: chamfered round arch on imposts closed by massive wooden gates with wicket. Upper storeys obscured by extension raised on Doric columns on tall pedestals, carrying entablature with moulded cornice. First and second floors flanked by tiered columns, Doric on first floor with triglyph frieze blocks and moulded cornice, Ionic on second floor beneath entablature with enriched cornice. First floor window of 6 mullioned and transomed lights with triglyph keyblock on first floor, on second floor similar 5-light window. Balustraded parapet with turned balusters and square newels surmounted by obelisk finials. Access to gatehouse through shouldered doorway on first floor of right return. Fishergate Bar: 1-storey gateway. Truncated wall finished with plain parapet with sloped coping has round carriage arch of 2 chamfered orders with portcullis slot: on each side are weathered block buttresses pierced by foot passages with corbelled lintels. Parapet incorporates through datestone recording construction of 60 yards of the city wall in 1487 by Lord Mayor Sir William Todd, carved with the City of York arms. Fishergate Postern and Tower: 4-storey tower with postern attached. Postern is pointed arch of 4 chamfered orders incorporating portcullis slot. Tower, originally embattled, part on moulded plinth, has clasping buttresses at two angles, one incorporating projecting garderobe on first floor. Doorway on inner side is chamfered with 4-centred head and C20 nail-studded door. Windows are slits in chamfered openings or of 2 segment-arched lights in square-headed surround. Original embrasures converted to unglazed windows by roof construction. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: The

Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 139-157).

Legacy System number: 463056

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 139-157

City Wall attached to Tower Place

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259260

Date first listed: 24th June 1983

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60403 51412

Details

Defensive wall attached to No.9 Tower Place (qv), extending approximately 60 metres north-east, now forming southern boundary to Tower Place. Probably late C13. Magnesian limestone ashlar. Approximately 2 to 3 metres high with embattled parapet. Cruciform arrow slit towards No.9 (Davy Tower), and head of weathered buttress adjacent to No.2 Tower Place (qv). On inner side of wall a narrow length of original wallwalk survives behind the parapet. Wall ran originally from Davy Tower on the river bank to Castlegate Postern, demolished in 1826. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York:

The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 158).

Legacy System number: 463063

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 158

City Wall from Baile Hill to Barker Tower, including Baile Hill Tower, Victoria Bar, Micklegate Bar, Barker Tower, North Street Postern, defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259262

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59683 51630

Details

Defensive walls, towers, gates and gatehouses between Baile Hill and Barker Tower including Baile Hill Tower, Bitch-daughter Tower and 15 intermediate towers, in addition to the 3 main towers. Walls 1250-60 and 1330-40; major restoration of 1831-32. Walls breached for railway arches in 1839, 1845, 1874 and 1876, latter rebuilt 1965. Baile Hill Tower 1878 when walls adjacent to Skeldergate Bridge (qv) were demolished. Bitch-daughter Tower 1330-40, remodelled 1645. Victoria Bar constructed

1838, foot arches added 1864 and 1877. Micklegate Bar mid C14 incorporating early C12 gate; barbican removed 1826, inner side remodelled by Peter Atkinson jnr. 1827; foot arches 1827 and 1863; figures carved in 1950 by Walter Rylett; restoration and repairs of 1952 and 1968. North Street Postern rebuilt 1840. Barker Tower early C14, re-roofed in C17, altered 1840, restored 1970. All structures of magnesian limestone ashlar except for walkway partly carried on wall of orange-brown brick and Victoria Bar steps of orange brick with stone treads and cast-iron balustrade and handrail. Barker Tower has plain tiled conical roof with overhanging eaves. EXTERIOR: wall strengthened by squat weathered buttresses on high bases. Wallwalk paved with stone flags edged with chamfered coping stones; parapet part crenellated, part plain and pierced by musket loops, with sloped coping. Towers are semicircular, rectangular or half-hexagonal, on battered, weathered and double chamfered plinths; some have cruciform slits with or without oilets, some chamfered doorways with shouldered or flat lintels, others no openings; crenellated parapets are unpierced. Baile Hill Tower octagonal on plan; Bitch-daughter Tower irregular circle on plan; Barker Tower circular on plan. Baile Hill Tower: 2 storeys with embattled parapet. Flight of steps to wallwalk passes through tower from foot of rampart, through arched doorway with stilted 2-centred head. Other openings are 3 slit lights in chamfered openings and 2 arrow slits with oilets, one blocked. Victoria Bar: semicircular carriage arch of 2 chamfered orders flanked by single chamfered pedestrian arches. Incised stone above central arch reads: Victoria Bar erected by Public Subscription under the direction of The City Commissioners AD1836 George Hudson Esq Lord Mayor. Micklegate Bar: 4-storey 3-bay front: outer bays in form of pilaster buttresses with battered bases rising into 2-storey embattled bartizans with cruciform arrow slits. Semicircular carriage arch incorporating portcullis slot,

of 2 stepped orders of gritstone voussoirs. First stage has narrow vertical light over arch: in buttresses shoulder-headed doorways originally to barbican walkway, all in chamfered openings. Second stage has similar central light flanked by cruciform arrow slits with oilets. Third floor has two vertical lights. Bartizans joined by embattled parapet over lion's head gargoyle in centre: some merlons pierced by cruciform slits. Heraldry includes carved plaque commemorating restoration of 1727, with shield of arms of Lord Mayor Sir John Lister Kaye; two shields of the Arms of the City of York: the Plantagenet Royal Arms beneath a crested helm. Inner side: carriage arch as on outer side. Each upper storey has two square-headed windows of two pointed lights in chamfered surrounds. Corbel course beneath plain parapet steps up over top floor windows. Shield of Tudor Royal Arms between first floor windows. INTERIOR: portcullis remains are stored on the first floor. North Street Postern: rebuilt length of wall contains 4-centred carriage arch between pointed side arches of gritstone voussoirs, all chamfered. Barker Tower: 2 storeys on battered base: conical roof broken by barge-boarded gable with 1-light attic window in quoined opening. Ground floor door beneath outside stairs to first floor has one chamfered jamb with run-out stop. Other openings are vestigial cruciform arrow slits with oilets and two inserted 1-pane windows. First floor doorway has plain lintel. Embrasures of original embattled parapet converted to 1-pane windows by altered roof: two 2x6-pane Yorkshire sashes inserted in C18. INTERIOR: original ground floor openings are splayed with shouldered re-arches recessed beneath 2-centred arches: 3 survive, 2 altered. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 90-107).

Legacy System number: 463065

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 90-107

9, Tower Place (Davy Tower)

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II*

List Entry Number: 1256415

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 60369 51390

Details

Also known as: Davy Tower TOWER PLACE. Defensive tower, converted to summerhouse, now house. Tower c1250; converted to summerhouse c1730, extended c1830; further extension in C20. MATERIALS: tower base of magnesian limestone; raised and extended in red brick in Flemish bond; C20 extension in red and grey brick in Monk bond; porch and coved eaves cornice of timber; slate roof, hipped towards river, with wrought-iron corner scrolls and 2 brick stacks. EXTERIOR: entrance front to Tower Place: 1-storey gable end. Steps up to door of 6 raised and fielded panels with divided overlight in plain porch, to left of extruded stack. River front: basement and 1 storey, 2 windows; 1-bay extension to left. Main wall has 12-pane sash to left and blind window opening to right: both have painted moulded stone sill and flat arch of gauged brick with fasciated keyblocks. Extension bay is canted at the corner and has 2 x 4-pane casement

window. Park front: basement and 1 storey, 2 bays. To left, offset buttress and musket loop to right. Above, windows are 16-pane sashes, detailed as on river front. Return wall to right has cruciform loop. In the C14 and early C15, tower was known as the Tower of the Friars Minor; by the end of C15, Davy Tower. A defensive chain was customarily slung across the river from Davy Tower to the tower opposite. INTERIOR: not inspected. RCHM records its original summerhouse fittings including a chimneypiece with pulvinated frieze, window seats, a dado rail with sunk panelling above, and a moulded and enriched cornice. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 158-9; City of York: RCHME: The Central Area: HMSO: 1981-: 235-6).

Legacy System number: 464947

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 158-159

An Inventory of the City of York V Central, (1981), 235-236

Wall approximately 2 metres north of number 9 (Roman Wall at St Leonard's Place)

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1256762

Date first listed: 24th June 1983

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60079 52174

Details

Fragment of wall approximately 7 metres long from the outer defences of the Roman legionary fortress of Eboracum. c300 AD. Coursed rubble stone faced on one side with small limestone blocks: approximately 0.75 to 1.50 metres high. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 115).

Legacy System number: 464563

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 115

Lendal Tower

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257086

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 59991 51959

Details

Defensive tower converted for use as water tower, now used as offices. c1300; heightened 1616, strengthened

and extended c1677; altered for offices c1846; refitted 1932. Magnesian limestone, much re-used and including carved fragments of canopy, finial and other mouldings from the ruins of St Mary's Abbey (qqv): roof not visible but said to be of copper. EXTERIOR: 3-stage circular tower with extruded circular stair tower, on chamfered plinth; 3-storey extension. All parts are embattled. Tower entered through Lendal Hill House (qv): unused C19 shouldered doorway with panelled double doors survives in extension. Blocked slit lights are visible on ground floor of both towers: 1- and 2-light windows elsewhere in chamfered openings with chamfered mullions. INTERIOR: not inspected. RCHM record brick partition wall on the lower storeys retaining evidence of engine housings; wooden spiral staircase in stair tower; rooms on first and second floors fitted with panelling. HISTORICAL NOTE: the tower was leased to the Waterworks Company by the York Corporation in 1677 for 500 years in return for a peppercorn rent, still paid annually by the Company in 1994. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 108).

Legacy System number: 464253

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 108

Multangular Tower and wall attached to south east

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257120

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 60012 52072

Details

Defensive tower and length of wall approximately 25 metres long forming west angle tower and south-west wall of the Roman legionary fortress of Eboracum; incorporated later into the defences of the medieval city. c300 AD; tower raised in late C13; excavated 1831; restored 1960. Roman masonry in small limestone blocks laced with bonding courses of red tile; tower raised in larger ashlar blocks. Tower is approximately 9.5 metres high, on battered plinth. Upper stage is faceted, each of 8 faces having a cruciform arrow slit. At former parapet level, stub of water spout projects. On inner side slits are set in pointed arched recesses. Wall approximately 5.5 metres high and contains a number of blocked recesses on the inner side. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 110).

Legacy System number: 464203

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 110

Anglian Tower

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257157

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 60045 52135

Details

Formerly known as: The Roman Room MUSEUM GARDENS. Defensive tower. Probably C7 AD on Roman footings; excavated in 1969. Rough dressed oolitic limestone with brick vaulted roof. Rectangular on plan, approximately 4.5 metres high. Original access by means of narrow segment-arched doorways in both returns. Front and rear broken by round-arched vault of C19 tunnel, during the excavations for which the tower, subsumed within the ramparts of the medieval walls, was rediscovered in 1839. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 111).

Legacy System number: 464198

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 111

Ice House approximately 25 metres to rear of number 4 The Bay Horse Public House

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II

List Entry Number: 1257239

Date first listed: 24th June 1983

National Grid Reference: SE 60598 52214

Details

Ice house. Probably late C18. Exposed red brick in stretcher bond. Circular domed chamber approximately 4 metres in diameter approached by tunnel-vaulted passage partly sunk into city wall rampart. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 89).

Legacy System number: 464111

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 89

Roman Wall approximately 20 metres south east of Monk Bar

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1259572

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60622 52178

Details

Formerly known as: Roman Corner Towers ALDWARD. Part of the north-east wall of the Roman fortress, extending south-east to remains of east angle tower and incorporating remains of one interval tower. c200 AD on foundations c110 AD. By the IXth and VIth Legions. Earlier foundations of clay and cobble; later structures have limestone rubble core, towers and inner side of wall faced with dressed limestone, outer side of wall with ashlar. Wall approximately 60 metres long and 5 metres high in front of the angle tower; chamfered plinth and cornice, chamfered on lower face, beneath former parapet and walk, now lost. Remains of angle tower approximately 2 metres high, roughly rectangular on plan, built against curving wall of fortress east angle. Interval tower approximately 40 metres north-west of the east angle tower, approximately .66 metres visible above ground and roughly rectangular on plan. (City of York: RCHME: Roman York: HMSO: 1962-: 29-35).

Legacy System number: 462775

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York I Roman York, (1962), 29-35

Appendix II: Listed Buildings Associated with St Mary's Abbey

St Marys Lodge and attached railings, gates and gate piers

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257136

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59837 52159

Details

Abbey gatehouse and lodges, partly ruined; now part of The Yorkshire Museum (qv). Gatehouse late C12, lodges added c1470; St Mary's Lodge to south west altered and restored c1840 for The Yorkshire Philosophical Society for occupation by their Museum Keeper, John Phillips. Carriage gates, gate piers and railings c1840. MATERIALS: abbey buildings of magnesian limestone; octagonal stone stacks to St Mary's Lodge, roof of which is obscured by added plain parapet with sloped coping. Gates and railings of cast-iron, gate piers of ashlar. EXTERIOR: front to Marygate: 1-storey 1-bay gatehouse; to right, St Mary's Lodge is 2 storeyed with basement, 2 bays wide; to left, 1-storey ruins of north-east lodge. Gatehouse has semicircular arch of 3 chamfered orders on responds with moulded impost: inner face of arch of 2 similar orders. Imposts extend to form moulded string across gatehouse side walls behind. Side walls arcaded symmetrically in 3 bays of paired blind round arches on paired shafts with moulded capitals and bases, rising from wallbenches. On both sides, arcades incorporate blocked doorways: springers and vaulting shafts for 3 transverse vaults survive. North-east lodge: on moulded

and chamfered plinth: double chamfered arched doorway with 2-centred head and hoodmould has vertically panelled door. St Mary's Lodge: moulded and chamfered plinth: bays separated by narrow 3-stage buttresses with moulded offsets and gablets. Entrance through doorway with glazed and panelled door inserted in gatehouse arcade. Windows, one or two to each bay, generally mulioned and of paired cinquefoiled lights in square-headed splayed openings of differing sizes. On Museum Gardens front 3 round-headed slits light staircase. Moulded string extends around 3 outer sides of building. INTERIOR: of north-east lodge: staircase in thickness of wall is tunnel-vaulted; lit by chamfered opening with round head. Interior of St Mary's Lodge: short flight of steps inside door has bulbous balusters. Tunnel vaulted staircase rises to first floor within wall thickness. Other fittings of 1840 include several fireplaces and coffered ceilings with bosses to ground floor rooms. SUBSIDIARY FEATURES: gate piers approximately 1.5 metres high; square on plan with chamfered bar-stopped angles, moulded bases and cornices, and truncated pyramidal caps. Railings raised on low chamfered wall, stepped down in places. Railings and gate bars have barbed finials and top rail of pierced quatrefoils: gates strengthened with crossed curved braces. Scheduled Ancient Monument. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 16-17; Murray H, Riddick S & Green R: York through the Eyes of the Artist: York City Art Gallery: 1990-: 58,59).

Legacy System number: 464219

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 16-17

Murray, H, Riddick, S, Green, R, York Through the Eyes of the Artist, (1990), 58, 59

Church Of St Olave

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257387

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 59864 52186

Details

Parish church. Late C15 on C13 foundations; early C18 arcades, south wall and partial reconstruction of north wall. Chancel 1889, enlarged 1908; vestry 1898, converted to South Chapel 1908; organ chamber 1907, new vestry 1908. Late C19 and early C20 work by G Fowler Jones of York and JF Doyle of Liverpool. MATERIALS: magnesian limestone ashlar with tiled and lead roofs. PLAN: aisled nave of 6 unequal bays; 2-bay chancel with organ chamber and vestry to north, chapel to south; west tower and second vestry to north west. EXTERIOR: buttressed east end has window of 5 cinquefoiled lights and panel traceried head in 2-centred arch of voussoirs. Vestry and chapel east ends are gabled: vestry has window of 3 trefoiled lights in 2-centred head; chapel 3-light window with panel traceried 4-centred head. North side: chancel obscured behind vestry and organ chamber. Vestry has pointed panelled door and two trefoil headed windows with square leaded lights: organ chamber two trefoiled windows with 4-centred heads. Nave on moulded plinth,

divided by 2-stage buttresses. Arched north doorway is of 3 continuously moulded orders and has C18 panelled door with original furniture. Above is a reset C15 vaulted niche with crocketed pinnacles containing a standing sculpted figure, presumably St Olave. Windows are of 3 lights with panel tracery in hollow-chamfered 3- or 4-centred openings and coved hoodmoulds: two easternmost are re-used. Westernmost window is square-headed, of 2 trefoiled lights. Embattled parapet with gargoyles and crocketed pinnacles. South side: chancel has three windows with traceried 2-centred heads. 1-storey chapel in front has doorway with shaped head and two windows of 2 trefoiled lights with panel tracery in 2-centred heads. Nave divided by 3-stage buttresses: earlier footings visible beneath chamfered plinth. C18 south door is panelled, with 2-centred head and original furniture including knocker, in double chamfered arched opening. Three windows are of 3 lights with panel traceried 3-centred heads, one has 3 cinquefoiled lights in 4-centred head, all hollow-chamfered. Westernmost window is of 2 cinquefoiled lights in splayed surround. Chancel has moulded eaves string beneath embattled parapet with crocketed pinnacles: nave and chapel have plain parapets. On south side gargoyle waterspout discharges into rainwater head dated 1908. West end: 4-stage tower incorporates 2-storey arch of former Chapel of St Mary at the Gate at the base. Weathered buttress and staircase project into angle with south aisle. West window is of 3 cinquefoiled lights with blind panel tracery in the 2-centred head: small rectangular light in splayed opening above. Belfry has 4-centred louvred openings with hoodmoulds to each face. Weathered belfry string; moulded string beneath plain parapet with crocketed pinnacles and corner gargoyles. INTERIOR: chancel arcades of three 2-centred arches on quatrefoil shafts with moulded bases and capitals; continuous chamfered hoodmould on angel corbels. 2-centred chancel arch springs from carved corbels. South chapel

arch is 4 centred, double chamfered. Nave arcades of 2-centred double-chamfered arches carried on octagonal and cylindrical piers and responds with moulded capitals and bases. Tall narrow 2-centred tower arch, of 3 chamfered orders to east, 2 to the west, springing from moulded imposts in splayed jambs. In north wall of tower, tall round arch in deeply splayed opening leads to vestry; in south wall is tall pointed recess. South of tower arch is quoined and chamfered doorway to tower stair. North door screened by glazed and panelled partition with arcaded lights: reset stoup within semicircular opening to south. FITTINGS: include traceried reredos and altarpiece with crocketed ogee arches, pinnacles, angels with musical instruments and carving of the Agnus Dei in high relief flanked by kneeling angels. Octagonal font on stem with moulded foot and C20 tiered cover. In north aisle, early C19 benefaction board, segment-arched, clustered side shafts, 1766-1871; in south aisle, C18 board in moulded surround with arched head, 1607-1740. East end of north aisle, carved stone cartouche with painted shield of Arms of Henry, Prince of Wales, d.1612. Over South Chapel arch, C15 low relief carving of the Crucifixion: over south door, C18 marble Madonna and Child. MONUMENTS: include wall monument to George Hutchinson, d.1775, white urn on black marble tablet; wall tablet by the Fishers, to Alatheia Jordan, her husband and daughter, c1778, white urn on grey marble; shaped wall panel with incised memorial to Michael Loftus, d.1762, "servant" of the Duke of Ormond; finely carved cartouche in surround of cherubs and flowers to William Thornton and son, Robert, c1724. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 25-29).

Legacy System number: 463963

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 25-29

Ettys tomb approximately 25 metres south east of St Olave's Church

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II

List Entry Number: 1257350

Date first listed: 24th June 1983

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59887 52156

Details

Chest tomb. William Etty, died 1849. Ashlar and red brick. Rectangular chest on moulded base with moulded cornice and shaped top. Recessed sides are flanked by trefoil headed ogee-arched panels. Plaque on south-east side reads: "WILLIAM ETTY ROYAL ACADEMICIAN BORN 10 MARCH 1787 DIED 13 NOVEMBER 1849". Plaque on north west side reads: "William Etty Royal Academician who in his brilliant works has left an enduring monument of his exalted genius; earnestly aiming to attain that lofty position on which his highly gifted talents have placed him he throughout life exhibited unabating perseverance in his profession. To promote its advancement in his beloved country he watched the progress of those engaged in its study with the most disinterested kindness. To his elevated and highly poetical mind were united a cheerfulness and sweetness of disposition with great simplicity

and urbanity of manners. He was richly endeared to all who knew him. His piety was unaffected, his faith in Christ sincere and his devotion to God exemplary. He was born at York, March 10, 1787 and died in his native city Nov. 13, 1849. "Why seek ye the living among the dead" Luke xxiv;v".

Legacy System number: 463969

Legacy System: LBS

Number 29 and walls attached to south west

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II*

List Entry Number: 1257374

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

National Grid Reference: SE 59875 52218

Details

House, now offices; incorporating part of precinct wall of St Mary's Abbey, Museum Gardens (qv). Abbey remains early C14; house late C18. MATERIALS: terrace wall of magnesian limestone ashlar; house of buff-brown brick in Flemish bond, rear of orange-brown brick in random bond with ground floor of ashlar: timber doorcase and eaves cornice: slate roof with moulded stone kneelers and brick stacks. EXTERIOR: 3-storey 3-bay front. 6-panel door and radial glazed fanlight in doorcase of sunk-panel pilasters with fluted impost band and dentilled open pediment supported on attenuated grooved consoles: tympanum enriched with composition garlands and ribbons. Windows are 16-pane sashes except for two 12-pane

sashes on ground floor, all with painted stone sills and 1-course segmental brick arches. Ground floor windows retain sunk-panel shutters. On both upper floors right end window is blocked. Moulded modillioned eaves cornice. Garden front to right: 2 storeys and attic; 1 gabled bay with shallow 2-storey canted bay window. On ground floor, glazed and panelled door beneath 6-pane overlight opens to terrace garden; flanking windows are tall 8-pane sashes. First floor window is tripartite with 12-pane centre sash. Attic has a lunette window with casement. Terrace garden wall has high chamfered plinth beneath 4 blocked vertical slits. Right return has shoulder-headed doorway and 2-light window with cinquefoiled heads, both blocked. Much weathered octagonal bowl font used as flower container in blocked doorway. INTERIOR: cellar: stone fireplace with chamfered segmental arch and moulded mantelshelf. Ground floor: stone-flagged floor entrance hall; close string staircase with turned balusters and ramped-up handrail. Right room has cupboard formed from blocked passage and shoulder-headed doorway to former Almonry: fireplace has voluted jambs and moulded dentilled shelf. First floor. Left room has plain fireplace with moulded dentilled cornice shelf and round-headed grate. Right room has fireplace with panelled pilaster jambs enclosing drops, palmette capitals, frieze enriched with garlands and urns; panelled window recess. Both rooms have moulded plaster cornices. Second floor. Left room has plain fireplace with moulded shelf and hob grate with figures in the cheekpieces. Right room has moulded plaster cornice; plain fireplace with paterae and moulded and dentilled cornice shelf. Attic: top flight of staircase has quatrefoil balusters: door of raised and fielded panelling on H-L hinges at the head. SUBSIDIARY FEATURES: wall approximately 3.5 metres high 20 metres long attached to western corner, returning to south-east for approximately 2.5 metres enclosing raised terrace garden: probably part of the Almonry of St

Mary's Abbey. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 167; An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 84).

Legacy System number: 463950

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 167

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 84

St Marys Abbey remains precinct walls St Marys Tower

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257131

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59983 52340

Details

Includes: St Mary's Tower MARYGATE. Defensive wall approximately 150 metres long from Queen Margaret's Arch and Postern Tower to St Mary's Tower, including 2 intermediate towers; defensive wall approximately 400 metres long from St Mary's Tower to the Water Tower on Marygate Landing, and 3 intermediate towers. Walls

1266, raised, crenellated and extended 1318; St Mary's Tower and Water Tower 1324, St Mary's Tower repaired 1644 following Civil War damage; Queen Margaret's Arch and Postern Tower 1497, Postern Tower raised and altered in C17. Pedestrian arches beside Queen Margaret's Arch and the Water Tower inserted c1836. MATERIALS: walls and towers of magnesian limestone except Postern Tower which is red brick faced with ashlar; Postern and St Mary's Towers have tiled roofs, respectively hipped and conical. EXTERIOR: walls with crenellations vary from approximately 2 to 5 metres in height and have irregularly spaced dwarf buttresses with offsets and steeply sloped copings. Some merlons are pierced with cruciform arrow slits; others retain grooves to house wooden shutters protecting embrasures, three of which are fitted with replicas. Queen Margaret's Arch: stub wall attached to Postern Tower contains segmental arch, chamfered and with defaced coved hoodmould on outer side; inner side rebated for gates and flanked by buttresses with offsets. Bronze plaque of 1899 incorrectly records date of arch as 1503. Inserted arch adjacent has shouldered head.

Postern Tower (sometimes known as Bootham Tower): 2 storeys and attic, on moulded plinth. Vertical panelled door in 4-centred arch in moulded surround with flat hoodmould and sunk spandrels: similar doorway to left side now blocked by 2-light window. Upper floor windows are inserted in splayed openings except for single segment-headed light in moulded surround over door. In right side, C19 ground floor window is of 3 diamond latticed lights with board shutters on ornate C-hinges. INTERIOR: brick newel staircase in thickness of wall. Openings have 4-centred arches of chamfered brick. St Mary's Tower: 2 stages, an irregular circle on plan, originally with chamfered plinth. Doorway to Bootham has board door in moulded surround with restored 4-centred arch with keyblock. To right is 2-light window with

trefoiled heads in chamfered square-headed surround. Upper stage has three re-used 2-light windows with ovolo-moulded mullions and transoms and moulded sills, and one cruciform arrow slit with oillets. Inner side has wide chamfered doorway with 2-centred head and C20 board door. Two upper stage doorways led to wallwalk on each side, both in chamfered surrounds, one with corbelled head, one with flat lintel. Water Tower (sometimes known as Marygate Landing Tower): originally 2 stages, now sunk in sloping ground to wallwalk level. Exterior is circular on plan, interior hexagonal, with single opening to each inner face: chamfered doorway to wallwalk has shouldered head, four cruciform slits have oillets to the arms, one vertical slit at wallhead has chamfered opening. INTERIOR: openings are splayed and have shouldered lintels. Adjacent pedestrian gateway is 4-centred double chamfered arch. Scheduled Ancient Monument. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: The Defences: HMSO: 1972-: 160-173; An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 14-22). Listing NGR: SE5998352340

Legacy System number: 464214

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York II Defences, (1972), 160-173

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 14-22

Wall approximately 5 metres north east of the Kings Manor

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257859

Date first listed: 24th June 1983

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 60064 52195

Details

Fragment of wall approximately 20 metres long from the precinct walls of St Mary's Abbey, Museum Gardens (qv). c1266. Magnesian limestone with sloped coping of stone flags. Approximately 2.3 metres high with remains of three buttresses with offsets on outer side towards car park to No.9 St Leonard's Place (qv). (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 22).

Legacy System number: 463371

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 22

St Marys Abbey remains Church

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257128

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59936 52174

Details

Formerly known as: Remains of St Mary's Abbey MUSE-UM GARDENS. Abbey church, now ruined. 1089, 1270-94. Magnesian limestone incorporating some re-used Roman gritstone. PLAN: 8-bay nave, 3-bay transepts, 9-bay east arm, all aisled: central tower originally. EXTERIOR: east arm: base courses of buttressed east end and north wall exposed. Transepts: to north transept, base courses of east wall and fragment of north wall and buttress exposed. To south transept, base courses of east wall and buttresses survive; lower courses of west wall visible including buttress with moulded bases of triple attached angle shafts. South-west buttress now contained in basement of the Tempest Anderson Hall (qv). Nave: north side on bold plinth, articulated by 2-stage buttresses. Bay towards western end contains moulded doorway with 2-centred arch springing from piers of alternately attached and detached shafts with decayed capitals, beneath hoodmould on stops: on each side are narrow pointed blind arches. Windows similarly arcaded with alternately 2- or 3-light arched windows, originally with traceried heads, flanked by recessed pointed blind arches. Arcade carried on detached shafts, mostly missing, with stiff-leaf capitals, largely decayed,

the outer sides dying into flanking walls: window mullions originally multi-shaft piers with moulded capitals, now decaying. Sillstring below windows. On south side, lower courses of 5 bays and fragments of buttresses with splayed angles and triple engaged shafts are visible. West front: on moulded plinth, buttressed and arcaded in three tiers of trefoiled blind arches springing from tripled shafts with moulded or foliate capitals under crocketed gables. North side of west door arch survives, of 5 orders, one attached, four detached, enriched with vine trail mouldings. Decayed north jamb only of the west window survives. Remains of 3-light west window to north aisle had moulded arch on jambs of engaged shafts and with moulded soffit. INTERIOR: east end: plan of church of 1089 set out in stonework on the ground. North aisle bays articulated by lowest courses of triple engaged shafts rising from wall bench. East respond of north arcade has five filleted or keeled shafts. On south side lower courses of four arcade piers of octofoil plan with filleted and keeled shafts reconstructed. Crossing: north-west pier asymmetrical on plan intact to springing height, with multiple filleted and keeled shafts, moulded bases and stiff-leaf capitals. Remaining three piers rebuilt to height of 5 courses. North transept: lower courses and vestiges of wallbenches of two north bays of west wall survive: both bays arcaded in two pointed arches with hoodmoulds, each over twin subsidiary arches springing from shafts, now missing, with moulded capitals and with moulded uncupped roundel in the spandrel. Third bay has 2-centred arch of 3 moulded orders to nave north aisle. Above, one bay of triforium survives, with 2-centred arch of 2 orders over blind arcade of 4 trefoiled lights and quatrefoil tracery. South jamb of middle bay window has 3 engaged shafts with decaying moulded capitals and bases. Nave arcades: of north arcade, nothing survives: of south arcade, base courses of one octofoil pier with one trefoiled shaft towards south aisle. West responds

are multiple shafted, keeled and filleted, and with triple roll-moulded bases and foliate capitals. North aisle wall is articulated by full-height triple engaged shafts with moulded bases and foliate capitals. Each bay arcaded as for north transept, with tripled arches rather than two: north doorway blocked with railings, incorporated in arcading, has stilted segmental rere-arch beneath hoodmould to inner face. In westernmost bay is plain blocked doorway to vice. In upper stage, external window detailing repeated on inside. South aisle wall survives only in base courses of 3 bays, fragments of wallbench, flight of door steps and base of one triple shafted pier. West end: west doorway flanked by 2-arched arcades as in north transept and by single trefoiled arches as on exterior of west end. Scheduled Ancient Monument. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975:- 8-12).

Legacy System number: 464211

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 8-12

Yorkshire Museum, Tempest Anderson Hall and St Marys Abbey remains

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: I

List Entry Number: 1257100

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59965 52135

Details

Museum and Lecture Hall, incorporating St Mary's Abbey remains in basement. Abbey remains comprise vestiges of late C12 Chapter House vestibule screen and vaulting shafts 1298-1307, late C13 slype, early C14 parlour and late C14 Warming House. Museum built 1827-29, lecture hall dated 1912, both with later alterations. Museum by William Wilkins, lecture hall by E Ridsdale Tate, both for the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. MATERIALS: museum of ashlar, Tempest Anderson Hall of shuttered concrete; museum roof of slate, shallow pitched, partly glazed, with stone stacks. EXTERIOR: museum: 1-storey 9-bay front on low plinth with pedimented tetrastyle portico of fluted Greek Doric columns on stepped podium. Central double doors of 6 sunk panels in moulded surround with cornice hood on scroll brackets. Windows flanking doors are narrow 8-pane sashes, elsewhere 12-pane sashes over moulded sill band, all in architraves with cornice hoods. Boldly projecting cornice across full width of front and portico beneath parapet masking roof. Plaque within portico records that "The Yorkshire Philosophical Society transferred the Yorkshire Museum and Gardens to the Citizens of York on Jan. 2nd 1961." Tempest Anderson

Hall: entrance front of 2 storeys 7 bays with basement to 2 left end bays with 1-storey 1-bay projecting porch on high plinth towards right end. Front and right return articulated in giant order Doric pilasters and antae carrying full entablature and parapet. Porch similarly articulated with heavy moulded cornice to flat roof. Steps up to porch lead to panelled double doors beneath flat canopy on scroll brackets in left return: front has small-pane window in eared architrave with moulded sill flanked by pilasters. Irregular fenestration reflects variable floor levels. One basement window altered to square bay with plate glazing, remainder are of 2 mullioned small-pane lights with metal glazing bars. Upper windows are generally 1-pane fixed lights, some with transoms, in moulded architraves with moulded sills over sunk-panel aprons. At right end of cornice, integral rainwater goods have hopper initialled TA, dated 1912. INTERIOR: of Museum. Basement galleries contain a reconstruction of the Chapter House vestibule of St Mary's Abbey incorporating remains of the original. Triple arched entrance screen had piers carved with chevron and stiff-leaf mouldings and detached shafts with waterhold bases and spurs: vaulting piers have alternately filleted and keeled shafts and roll-moulded bases. Base courses of the slype incorporate a wallbench and remains of 4 buttresses with attached shafts with moulded bases and capitals; base courses of north wall of parlour incorporates bases of vaulting shafts. In a separate room, the hearth, one moulded jamb and a carved corbel head to the lintel of the Warming House fireplace survive. On ground and first floors, altered interior retains 4-bay central area colonnaded in giant order Composite columns and responds supporting ceiling coffered with beams enriched with guilloche and egg-and-dart mouldings: ceiling panels behind colonnades contain moulded rosettes. Staircase to first floor has open string, stick balusters, serpentine handrail and turned newels on shaped curtail steps. Tem-

ple Anderson Hall was first listed 24/06/83. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 12-13; 44-45; Murray H, Riddick S & Green R: York through the Eyes of the Artist: York City Art Gallery: 1990-: 68).

Legacy System number: 464225

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 12-13

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 44-45

Murray, H, Riddick, S, Green, R, York Through the Eyes of the Artist, (1990), 68

Observatory

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II

List Entry Number: 1257124

Date first listed: 2nd November 1972

National Grid Reference: SE 59935 52066

Details

Observatory. 1832-33, restored 1981. Telescope designed and built by Thomas Cooke of York, rotating conical roof designed by John Smeaton, for the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. Magnesian limestone ashlar with

lead roof. PLAN: octagonal on shallow plinth. EXTERIOR: basement and 2 storeys, lower storey with moulded cornice, upper storey set back. Door is of 4 flush panels. Each alternate face on ground floor has 12-pane sash window with slender glazing bars. Upper storey has 2-light casement windows. Openings are chamfered. INTERIOR: not inspected. HISTORICAL NOTE: the observatory was built following the inaugural meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science in 1831, restored and refitted in 1981 to mark the Association's 150th anniversary. For many years, the telescope it housed was the largest refracting telescope in the world. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York: RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 45).

Legacy System number: 464207

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 45

St Marys Abbey remains Hospitium and Watergate

Heritage Category: Listed Building

Grade: II*

List Entry Number: 1257129

Date first listed: 14th June 1954

Date of most recent amendment: 14th March 1997

National Grid Reference: SE 59846 52065

Details

Possible Abbey guesthouse and watergate attached to north-east corner; now part of The Yorkshire Museum (qv). Lower storey of house C14, upper storey C15, partly reconstructed and heavily restored 1930-31: gateway c1500. MATERIALS: lower storey of hospitium of magnesian limestone ashlar on chamfered plinth; upper storey timber-framed with rendered infilling; plain tile roof. Gateway of re-used magnesian limestone, inner face of upper storey of orange wall-tiles: unroofed. 6-bay hall and aisled undercroft. EXTERIOR: Hospitium: 2-storey 6-bay front, with exposed timber-frame to hall. Undercroft has rebuilt double chamfered doorway with plank double doors on iron strap hinges in 2-centred moulded arch. Windows to left are single slits in chamfered openings, to right of 2 lights in double chamfered openings. Access to hall by reconstructed external staircase to 2-centred timber doorway with double doors on C-hinges. Windows are of 4 lights. River front: repeats main front without doors. To left return, undercroft has three slit lights, hall 3-light window flanked by 1-light windows: to right return, three 2-light windows to undercroft, to hall 2-light outer windows, 5-light centre window. All multi-light windows to undercroft have chamfered stone mullions: to hall, timber mullions. Watergate: incorporated in wall approximately 8 metres long, between 6.5 and 7.5 metres high on chamfered plinth, stepped up at left end. Cart arch is 2 centred, of 2 moulded and chamfered orders beneath coved hoodmould: smaller foot-gate to left is similar: both are rebated on inner side. Further left is decayed square-headed window opening. On first floor two square-headed windows of 2 trefoiled lights, one now fragmentary. INTERIOR: of Hospitium: two colonnades of octagonal columns with moulded bases and capitals support hall floor. Scheduled Ancient Monument. (An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in the City of York:

RCHME: Outside the City Walls East of the Ouse: HMSO London: 1975-: 13-14).

Legacy System number: 464212

Legacy System: LBS

Sources

Books and journals

An Inventory of the City of York IV East, (1975), 13-14

Appendix II: Museum Gardens Listing Description

Museum Gardens, York

Heritage Category: Park and Garden

Grade: II

List Entry Number: 1000117

Date first listed: 10th May 1984

National Grid Reference: SE 59917 52086

Details

Gardens laid out by Sir John Murray Naesmyth for the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in 1844 as private pleasure grounds for Society members which were designed to provide a setting for the Yorkshire Museum and the ancient monuments in its vicinity and to incorporate botanical gardens.

Historic Development

The Museum Gardens lie immediately west and south-west of the south-west tip of the late C2 Roman legionary fortress of Eboracum and incorporate the western angle tower, called the Multangular Tower, of the Roman fortress wall. The site is within the precinct of St Mary's Abbey, founded when Benedictine monks were granted the church of St Olave in 1086. A new abbey was built on land adjacent to the church in the years which followed. The Abbey was dissolved in 1539 but substantial remains survived. In 1827 the Yorkshire Philosophical Society acquired part of the Abbey site and other land amounting to 1.2ha from Lord Grantham (who leased it from the Crown) as part of the site for their new museum. One of the conditions of sale was that scientific gardens should be established. In the years which followed more land was bought as part of a policy of acquiring and protecting antiquities. The grounds were levelled and planted with a

hardy herbaceous perennial collection during the 1820s to 1840s. In order to bring a unified approach to the haphazard layout Sir John Murray Naesmyth (1803-76) of Dawyck, Peeblesshire, was asked to draw up a scheme for the gardens in 1844. His brief asked him to 'surmount the peculiar difficulties presented by the site so as to produce the most pleasing effects by the harmony or contrast of its varied architectural features ... to open out the interesting views of more distant objects, while excluding as much as possible of such as are unsightly or incongruous' (quoted in Goodchild 1996, 11). His design therefore provided private pleasure grounds for members of the Society which formed an appropriate setting for the Museum and the various ancient monuments, and incorporated a botanical garden.

The executed scheme is shown on a plan by Durrant dated 1847 (reproduced in Goodchild 1996). The Gardens were exclusively for the use of members of the Society and were only opened to the public on occasional days. In 1961 the Society gave the Museum and gardens in trust to the citizens of York. The gardens are owned and managed by the Yorkshire Museum and Gardens Trust which has trustees drawn from the City of York Council and the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. The grounds are open to the public (1999).

Description

LOCATION, AREA, BOUNDARIES, LANDFORM, SETTING
The Museum Gardens lie on the north bank of the River Ouse in York, c 300m south-west of York Minster in an urban area. The c 3.74ha site is on land which slopes down south-westwards to the banks of the river. Museum Street forms the eastern boundary, along which there is a stretch of city wall (medieval, listed grade I) and on the south side a cast-iron fence (1844, listed grade II) divides the Gardens from a walkway called the Esplanade along-

side the River Ouse. An area in the south-west corner of the Gardens, formerly the site of a swimming pool, is not included in the registered area. On the west side of the site the boundary is formed by the crenellated wall of the Abbey precinct (C13, C14, listed grade I), the Gatehall (C12, listed grade I) with its entrance arch, and St Mary's Lodge (C14, listed grade I), which are ranged along the western edge of the site on Marygate. St Olave's church (listed grade I) and churchyard are not included in the registered area.

ENTRANCES AND APPROACHES The principal entrance is from Museum Street where there are gates and a lodge (listed grade II) attached to the medieval city wall. The lodge was built in 1874-5 to designs by Fowler Jones on land acquired in 1845. It is in use as offices for the Yorkshire Philosophical Society (1999). This entrance replaced a Greek Revival-style lodge which lay c 30m north-west of the present building, and was demolished in 1849. The land acquired in 1845 included a vaulted tunnel (C13, listed grade I) leading to St Leonard's Hospital. An entrance on the west side of the site from Marygate is formed by the Gatehall which is the remains of the main gate to the Abbey precinct, and is linked to an Abbey guesthouse called St Mary's Lodge. This part of the site was acquired by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in 1850. Other entrances to the site include gates from the riverside walk and a narrow alley called Manor Lane on the north-east side of the site with a gated entrance beside Manor Cottage (listed grade II), which was built as a curator's house in 1844.

PRINCIPAL BUILDING The Yorkshire Museum (listed grade I) lies on the north side of the site. It was designed in 1827 by William Wilkins in Greek Revival style and has a pedimented portico on the south elevation. The base-ment of the building incorporates the ruinous remains of

St Mary's Abbey dating from the C12, C13 and C14. The Tempest Anderson Hall, designed by E R Tate, was added to the west side of the Museum in 1912. The building remains in use as a museum (1999).

GARDENS AND PLEASURE GROUNDS A forecourt, supported by a stone retaining wall with parapets, fronts the Museum and there are views to the south and south-west over the Gardens and to the river, with views of a building called the Hospitium (listed grade I) between clumps of trees and shrubs. The arcaded remains of the nave of the former St Mary's Abbey (listed grade I) can be seen to the west. On the west side of the forecourt steps lead down to a circuit path which runs alongside the Abbey ruins. This joins with a path from the west entrance at a point where there are rock gardens of 1981, c 70m south-west of the Museum, and continues, with the route lined with fragments of medieval masonry, south to the Hospitium c 120m south-west of the Museum. This structure probably dates from the C14 and C15, and was probably an Abbey guesthouse. The building was restored between 1838 and 1848 and a new roof added in the 1930s.

A bank along the south side of the site was created as a late C20 flood defence, and a serpentine path runs through a shrubbery between the bank and fenced site boundary. The OS map published in 1852 shows a band of planting along the boundary which had gaps in it giving views of the river from the Gardens and allowing glimpses of the grounds from the Esplanade. These views have largely been lost. The bank runs over an area immediately south of the Hospitium which was the site of the Order Beds, a botanic garden with a geometrical layout shown in Durrant's plan of 1847 which was grassed over in the mid C20.

The area immediately north of the swimming pool site in the south-west corner of the Gardens (outside the

registered area) has lawns studded with mature trees. The 1847 plan shows that this was an enclosed garden belonging to St Mary's Lodge which was absorbed into the site in the 1880s.

The main circuit path leads eastwards from the Hospitium and joins a route called Old Cross Path which runs across lawns from the junction of the circuit path and a route from the west entrance. The circuit path then curves north-eastwards up the slope to join with the path from the main entrance, which runs north-west to the Museum forecourt, completing the circuit. This route is substantially as shown on the 1847 plan, though some realignment had taken place on the east side of the site by 1852 (OS), possibly in response to the acquisition of additional land near the main entrance. The walk was carefully designed to offer changing views of the grounds, buildings and antiquities.

In the south-east corner of the site, in an area screened by a band of trees and shrubs, there is a lawn and a series of stone terraces, c 100m south-east of the Museum, which was the site of a glasshouse shown on the 1847 plan and demolished in the mid C20. Another glasshouse to the south is shown on the 1892 OS map; this was demolished in the 1960s. Immediately to the south and east there is a C20 toilet block in an area shown on the 1847 plan as planting beds associated with the glasshouse. A maintenance yard, which includes a tunnel running beneath the city wall, lies in the extreme south-east corner of the site in an area shown in use for this purpose on the 1847 plan.

A path laid out in 1981 branches south-west from the main approach to the Museum and leads past the Observatory (Thomas Cooke 1832-3, listed grade II), which lies c 60m south of the Museum within a clump of shrubs close to the centre of the site. The path continues west-

wards and joins with the Old Cross Path. The Observatory is an octagonal, single-storey building with a rotating conical roof designed by John Smeaton. It was built following the inaugural meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science and at that time it contained the largest refracting telescope in the world. The building was restored in 1981.

The centre of the site has sloping lawns planted with specimen trees and clumps of shrubs and trees. The planting around the Observatory and a clump to the east of the Hospitium are in the positions of clumps shown on the 1847 plan. The planting of the central lawn serves to control views of the various buildings and ruins as the paths around the grounds are followed, though the maturity of some of the trees and areas of new planting have obscured some of the vistas.

The north-west corner of the site is dominated by the ruins of the north transept and choir of the church of St Mary's Abbey. A bank between the Abbey ruins and a bowling green, shown on the 1909 OS map, supplies a vantage point for viewing the remains and it may have been formed from spoil from excavations undertaken by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in the early C20.

On the east side of the Museum there is a lawn divided by the path from Manor Walk which is overlooked by the Multangular Tower (Roman with medieval upper levels, listed grade I) c 30m to the south-east. The city wall (medieval, listed grade I) attached to the north side has an opening in it leading to the lawns south of York's Central Library. The east side of the Multangular Tower is attached to a stretch of Roman wall which runs south-east along the top of a bank towards Museum Street.

Legacy System number: 1012

Legacy System: Parks and Gardens

References

C Wilson and J Burton, St Mary's Abbey, York (1988) S Fraser, Museums with Historic Gardens in Local Authority Ownership, (unpub MA dissertation, IOAAS, York 1992) N Pevsner and D Neave, The Buildings of England: Yorkshire, York and the East Riding (1995), pp 117-119 P Goodchild, Heritage Report (Museum Gardens, (HLF Urban Parks Programme 1996)

Maps [reproduced in Goodchild 1996] W Durrant, Plan of the Property of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, 1847

OS 25" to 1 mile: 1st edition surveyed 1889, published 1892 2nd edition published 1909 OS 5' to 1 mile: 1st edition surveyed 1851, published 1852

Additional information supplied by City of York Council and the Yorkshire Philosophical Society.

Description written: December 1998 Amended: December 1999 Register Inspector: CEH Edited: April 2000

Appendix III: Generic Scheduled Monument Consent Application (2007)

CITY OF YORK COUNCIL YORK CITY WALLS AND ST MARY'S ABBEY WALL GENERIC SMC APPLICATION FOR MINOR WORKS

DESCRIPTION OF WORK

This application relates to minor works on the City Walls and Abbey Walls which fall below the size and scope of work undertaken on restoration projects for which individual SMC applications are made.

The pages which follow this description set out the specifications for materials and workmanship which are to be applied to work on these ancient monuments. Apart from the main bodies of the City and Abbey Walls themselves, the specification standards will apply also to contingent features (such as retaining walls at the foot of embankments) which form (or which are deemed in discussion between the City of York Council and English Heritage to form) part of the scheduled monument.

It is proposed that when the City Council wishes to undertake a minor repair, English Heritage will be notified of the intentions and (if required) discussions arranged to examine the proposals in detail. The City Council will also, where it is appropriate, prepare a statement concerning the archaeological implications; if a watching brief is deemed to be necessary, it will be included.

The guiding principle under which repairs will be carried is to return the feature to the state which existed before deterioration took place, re-using original materials as far as is possible. As this generic application is intended

to cover a range of work which cannot be specified in detail in advance (although the general categories are listed below), no attempt is made at descriptive detail. In general, where dismantling of any feature takes place, it will be undertaken with care and with the position of individual elements (such as masonry blocks) recorded, to ensure that faithful reconstruction follows. If any replacement materials are required (due to the inability to salvage a sufficient quantity), they will be of the best match possible.

Both prior to the commencement of any work, and on completion, a photographic record will be made.

Should any cases arise where a modification to the form of the existing feature is considered necessary, the merits of so doing will be agreed with English Heritage. Such a case may occur, for example, where it can be seen that a retaining wall is failing because it is of inadequate strength. Whatever solution is chosen, the principle of retaining authentic appearance and quality will prevail.

It is envisaged that this application will apply to the following categories or types of work:

- taking up and relaying local areas of paving flags where potential trips or water ponding exist.
- repair of worn steps which are a public hazard.
- repair of gates, locks and windows which have been damaged, and repainting.
- repair and painting of damaged fences and barriers.
- removal of sapling self-seeded trees and weeds.
- repair of local areas of masonry which have become loose.
- replacement of cracked or otherwise potentially hazardous edge copings

to the public walkway.

- taking down and reconstructing short lengths of retaining or boundary walls, generally at the foot of embankments.
- repair of copings (many of which have split longitudinally) on boundary walls.
- removal of graffiti.
- the provision of additional lighting.
- any other minor types of work which City of York Council and English Heritage jointly agree to fall within the scope of this application.

The following pages set out the specification clauses previously referred to.

Appendix III: Specification for Works Conducted under Generic SMC (2007)

SPECIFICATION

Contents

	Page no
1	General Items and Preliminaries
2	Materials
3	Masonry Work
4	Metalwork and Wood
5	Walkways
6	Ties and Anchors
7	Call-out Service
Annex 1	Typical Restoration Works Scheduled Monument Consent
Annex 2	Annex 2: Generic Management Agreement Scheduled Monument Consent

Note

Where Manufacturers' or Suppliers' names are stated or particular references to brand names are given the words "or approved equal" shall be deemed to be written immediately following such names. In this context, the word "approved" means previously approved in writing by the Engineer.

SPECIFICATION GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES

1.1 Status of the Walls

- 1.1.1 The City Walls have the status of Ancient Monument. All works carried out are subject to Scheduled Monument Consent (SMC) granted by the Secretary of State for Culture, Media and Sport which discharges its duties through English Heritage.
- 1.1.2 For Restoration Works the Council obtains a Scheduled Monument Consent specific to the proposed works. An example is attached as ANNEX 1
- 1.1.3 For Maintenance Works the Council has a generic Management Agreement with English Heritage for routine work which is attached as ANNEX 2
- 1.1.4 Conditions to SMCs are binding on the Council and the Contractor.
- 1.1.5 In summary the requirements for working on the Walls are as follows:
- (i) An appointed Archaeological Field Officer is to be present during all excavation work, and 7 days notice is to be given in writing of the intention to commence excavation, renewed as the case may be in the event of the work not being continuous.
 - (ii) At any time during the Contractor's excavation work the Archaeological Field Officer may determine that the material being excavated is archaeologically sensitive and order that the Contractor ceases work. Upon receipt of such an instruction to cease work, which will be deemed to have been issued by the Engineer and which will be confirmed in writing by the Engineer if so required, the Contractor will comply immediately. The Contractor will thereafter allow the Archaeologist access and facilities to continue the excavation and related recording procedures.
 - (iii) The Contractor is to provide such assistance as is requested by the Archaeologist from time to time and for which he will receive payment. The presence of the Archaeologist's personnel will not relieve him of his responsibilities under the Contract.
- 1.1.6 Any antiquities, valuables, objects or remains of archaeological interest other than articles declared by Coroners Inquest to be Treasure Trove discovered in, on or under the site during the works, shall be deemed to be the property of the Employer.
- 1.1.7 In the event of any graves or human remains being discovered, the Contractor shall suspend his operations in that area and advise the Engineer who will contact the Home Office

1.2 Nomenclature and Definitions

In this specification, the following terms are used:

**SPECIFICATION
GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES**

Rear Wall: the elevation facing the City.

Front Wall: the elevation facing away from the City.

1.3 The Site and Limitations of Use

- 1.3.1 The location of work required will be as defined in each particular order.
- 1.3.2 No materials, plant or labour may interfere with the safe and free access of members of the public walking along the City Walls when they are open. The walkway may only be closed in cases of emergency or for reasons of safety, and with the prior approval in writing of the Engineer.
- 1.3.3 During the execution of the work the Contractor will at all times be fully responsible for satisfying himself as to the position and nature of any Public Utilities in the area of his operations. Power and water supplies are not readily available to the City Walls; the Contractor must, at his own cost, make his own arrangements for the supply of these facilities.
- 1.3.4 Except for maintenance call-outs, working will generally only be permitted between the hours of 0800 and 1800 Monday to Friday and 0800 and 1300 on Saturdays, and at no time on Sundays and Bank holidays.

1.4 Noise

- 1.4.1 The proximity of residential properties makes it necessary for noise emission to be controlled and kept to a minimum. The Contractor will, therefore, be expected to take all reasonable steps to comply with this requirement. Radios etc shall not be played on the site.

1.5 Drug Litter

- 1.5.1 The Contractor must ensure that all personnel are aware that drug litter, particularly needles, is regularly found in areas around the City Walls, and of measures to be taken should needlestick injury occur.
- 1.5.2 Before any works commences on site the Contractor must arrange for a thorough search and clearance of the whole site area. Any drug litter found on site must be disposed of in an approved manner. Any discovery of drug litter must be reported to the Engineer to enable monitoring by the Council's Environmental Health Department.

1.6 Site Compounds

- 1.6.1 The whole of the grassed areas adjacent to the City Walls is part of the Ancient Monument and the Contractor must conduct his operations recognising the constraints laid upon him by the Ancient Monument and Archaeological Areas Act 1979. Access onto grassed areas by vehicles shall be permitted only with the Engineer's approval, and shall be kept to a minimum. Protection to grassed areas shall be provided by means of substantial plywood sheets or other approved means

**SPECIFICATION
GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES**

wide enough to accommodate wheel tracks, all laid prior to the passage of any vehicle.

- 1.6.2 For all works, the use of compounds must be restricted to the handling, preparation and storage of materials and tools. No materials storage areas, cabins or stationary plant shall be located under tree canopies. Only vehicles actively engaged in the work will be allowed on the site. The Contractor shall make his own arrangements for any other vehicles.

- 1.6.3 The compound areas and the areas of his operation are to be restored to at least the condition existing prior to his occupation and completed within seven days of his leaving site.

1.6.4 Site Compounds for Restoration Projects

The site compounds for restoration projects will generally be located within the grassed areas adjacent to the Walls, as indicated on the specific project drawings. A maximum permitted area will be specified depending on the scale of the works and available space. The Tenderer's attention is drawn to the limitations imposed by the proximity of the public highway. Delivery of plant, materials and site cabins via the inner ring road will not be permitted during peak hours, 0800 to 0915 and 1600 to 1800. Details of the access to each site and proposed arrangement of the site compounds are to be agreed with the Engineer at the commencement of each project. The site shall be safeguarded against unauthorised entry by secure and substantial fences (along those lengths where access could otherwise be gained) not less than 2.4 metres high.

1.6.5 Site Compounds for Maintenance Work

For maintenance work it will be Contractor's responsibility to make his own arrangements for working areas and disposal facilities. Where areas owned by the City Council are involved, these arrangements must be made through the Assistant Director (Development and Transport). Approval will not generally be given for the use of the moats for these purposes.

1.7 Storage of Materials

- 1.7.1 Materials whether for re-use or disposal are to be kept in a safe and secure manner such that they are accessible only to authorised personnel.

1.8 Reinstatement of the Ramparts

- 1.8.1 The restoration of the surface of the rampart and moat area where directed by the Engineer is to be carried out by approved horticultural personnel. The Contractor is to allow in his rates for forking over and reurfing. At the conclusion of the contract areas of rampart coextensive with the works are to be left tidy and free from loose materials. The work of reinstatement shall be completed within seven days of his leaving the site.

**SPECIFICATION
GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES**

1.9 Precautions to be taken to Protect Trees

- 1.9.1 The Contractor, his agents, employees and subcontractors shall take all appropriate measures to avoid damage to trees and undertake work in accordance with BS5837:2005 Trees in Relation to Construction and BS3998:1989 Treework.
- 1.9.2 No tree roots greater than 25mm in diameter shall be cut without the prior written approval of the Engineer.
- 1.9.3 Excavation under the tree canopy must be undertaken by hand and no mechanical plant including excavators, breakers etc. will be permitted. All roots exposed during excavation shall not be covered up until inspected by the Engineer or a representative of the City Council's Leisure Services Department.
- 1.9.4 Tree roots exposed during excavation shall be surrounded in sharp sand to BS EN 12620:2002 Grade 0/4 Concrete Sand CP or MP Table D1.

1.10 Weeding

- 1.10.1 The Contractor will be required to weed the full length of the City Wall walkway (3.4km approx) twice each year, once in late Spring and once in late Autumn.
- 1.10.2 The Contractor will be required to weed the areas shown on Drawing no. ***** twice each year, once in late Spring and once in late Autumn.
- 1.10.3 Weeding shall consist of the removal of all annual and perennial weeds and saplings which are growing within the masonry, except for small creeping perennials such as toadflax. For saplings and tap-rooted weeds, such as dandelion and dock, as much of the whole plant shall be removed as is possible without damage to the masonry. The preferred method of weeding is by use of weedkiller as this causes least disturbance to the pointing.
- 1.10.4 Weedkiller shall be glyphosphate contact type and used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. The use of weedkiller shall be carried out during dry, wind free conditions, with care being taken not to allow weedkiller to affect non treated areas.

1.11 Signs

- 1.11.1 For restoration projects and maintenance work other than call-outs, the Engineer will provide the Contractor with appropriate information signs which the Contractor is required to display for the duration of the works in progress. The signs will be located at each end of any closed section of the City Wall and/or in a prominent position adjacent to the works, as specified by the Engineer.

1.12 Scaffolding

- 1.12.1 All scaffolding is to comply with BS EN 12811-1:2003

**SPECIFICATION
GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES**

- 1.12.2 The feet of scaffold stanchions shall sit horizontally on their ground support; on sloping ground stepped shallow excavations shall be made to permit horizontal seating. Such excavations shall be agreed with the Engineer.
- 1.12.3 In general, scaffold must not be in direct contact with the City Wall, but shall be satisfactorily braced to avoid movement relative to the wall. Any isolated contact points with the Wall shall be protected by plastic end caps or rubbing strips.
- 1.12.4 Details of the Contractor's proposals regarding delivery and collection of materials and scaffolding layout are to be submitted to the Engineer for approval in advance of the work commencing.
- 1.12.5 Before leaving the site unattended the Contractor is to remove all ladders and means of access. He shall take all reasonable steps to deny access to all except authorised persons.
- 1.12.6 The tendered rates for scaffolding shall include for erecting, maintaining and dismantling and for all intermediate modifications to scaffolding which are necessary to enable all areas of masonry to be worked on, and for all contingent works which are needed for the safe execution of the contract. The cost of hoists shall also be included.

1.13 Scaffold Walkway for Public Use

- 1.13.1 Where shown on the restoration project drawings, the Contractor is to provide a scaffold walkway for the public use. This is to be erected adjacent to the internal face of the Wall, enabling the public to use the Wall for the duration of the works.
- 1.13.2 The walkway is to be level with the existing footway and have even close boarding fixed on to the top of the timber battens without trip points or hazardous irregularities. At stepped sections of the existing footway, scaffold steps shall be erected, with non-slip surfaces and appropriate hand-rails.
- 1.13.3 The public are to be directed to these walkways by means of pedestrian signing, which must be in position prior to public use.
- 1.13.4 The walkway shall be bounded by a substantial solid plywood lined parapet 1.5 metres high fixed to the scaffolding, including a handrail on both sides.
- 1.13.5 The scaffolding shall be firmly fixed relative to the wall so that no movement occurs. It shall not have any objects protruding into the walkway area which might cause the public to endanger themselves or their clothing.

1.14 Excavation General

- 1.14.1 Prior to taking down, cutting out, renewing or rebuilding work commencing within an affected area, individual elements are to be comprehensively and systematically marked by the Contractor in a durable but not permanent manner. He will make a true and clear record of the marks before any work is disturbed. The Engineer is to be provided with a copy of such record, which shall be generally be made on a copy of the photogrammetrical drawing supplied to the Contractor by the Engineer.

**SPECIFICATION
GENERAL ITEMS AND PRELIMINARIES**

1.14.2 Materials for re-use are to be taken down, cut out, handled and stored so as to avoid distress and then kept secure pending re-use.

1.14.3 The Contractor's rate is to be inclusive of the cost of compliance with all the foregoing.

1.15 Lifting of Masonry

1.15.1 The Contractor shall provide such plant and equipment as is necessary to ensure that proper means are used to protect the health and safety of operatives engaged in lifting and moving heavy items of masonry.

1.15.2 In exceptional cases, where items of masonry prove too heavy to be lifted safely by the Contractor's normal methods, the Engineer may give approval for the stone to be cut. The method and position of any cuts must be approved in advance by the Engineer.

1.16 Qualifications of Stonemasons

1.16.1 Acceptable qualifications for persons carrying out work to masonry and joints in stone and brickwork shall be one or more of the following, together with the Construction Skills Certification Scheme Card.

City and Guilds Craft Certificate in Stonemasonry

NVQ Level 2 in Stonemasonry

NVQ Level 3 in Conservation and Restoration of Stonemasonry

1.16.2 The contractor will be required to submit documentation to confirm the qualifications of relevant personnel before work commences. Persons not holding acceptable qualifications will not be permitted to carry out any work whatsoever to masonry, including the cutting out of joints.

1.17 Communication

1.17.1 The Contractor shall make available:

- (i) a mobile phone in the possession of the most senior member of the Contractor's staff who is continuously on site which must be operative at all times site work is in progress.
- (ii) a mobile phone in the possession of the site manager, which must be operative during all working hours.
- (iii) one or more phone contact numbers at which a senior member of the contractor's staff can reliably be contacted out-of-hours.
- (iv) an e-mail address, which is open during all working hours. Communication by e-mail shall be of equal status to other established means of

**SPECIFICATION
2.0: MATERIALS**

2.1 Cement

2.1.1 Ordinary Portland cement to BS EN 197-4:2004 shall be used in concrete. Portland cement will not be used in mortars and grout, except for the pointing of paving flags, with 1 part of cement to 3 parts of sand.

2.2 Hydraulic Lime

2.2.1 Natural Hydraulic Lime to BS EN 459-1:2001 will be used for mortars and grout on this contract.

2.3 Lime Mortar

2.3.1 Lime mortars conforming with the following specifications will be used unless the Engineer directs otherwise:

For packing and pointing masonry joints and general mortar work:

1 part NHL 3.5 to 3 parts of sand.

For pointing the joints of brickwork and for bedding of copings and steps:

1 part NHL 5 to 2.5 parts of sand.

For bedding paving flags:

1 part NHL 5 to 8 parts of sand.

2.3.2 The use of additives will not be permitted.

2.4 Sand

2.3.1 (i) For Pointing, Tamping and Walling of Masonry

Sand is to be natural pit sand to BS EN 12620:2002, Annex B medium grade MP, as supplied by Messrs. Tilcon Quarries Limited from Farnham Quarry, Knaresborough or as specifically varied in writing by the Engineer.

2.4.2 (ii) For Rendering

Sand is to comply with BS EN 13139:2002, Table A1.

2.5 Water

2.5.1 Water shall be clean from a mains supply and complying with BS EN 1008:2002.

2.6 Stone

2.6.1 Replacement stone is to match the existing in every respect. Generally it will be Magnesian Limestone. Blocks of stone are to be selected for colour, cut to shape

**SPECIFICATION
2.0: MATERIALS**

and size, dressed and artificially weathered as necessary, to match the predominating surface texture of the area of affected masonry. Any sawn faces and edges are to be rubbed down to take away sharp arrises and saw marks.

- 2.6.2 All stone is to be laid on its natural or quarry bed and pointed to match existing as described. The repaired stonework is to show joints in the same position as existing unless specifically approved otherwise.
- 2.6.3 Prior to commencement of the contract, the source of supply and a representative sample are to be submitted to the Engineer for his approval.

1.2 Concrete

- 2.7.1 Concrete shall be Grade C30/37 to BS EN 206-1:2000 to the following parameters placed and compacted to BS 8110.

Minimum cement content 250 kg/m³.

Maximum G.G.B.F.S. or P.F.A. content 100 kg/m³.

Maximum free water/cement ratio 0.45.

2.8 Steel

- 2.8.1 All ties and clamps shall be Grade 304 (18/8) stainless steel. The Contractor shall submit certificates of compliance to the Engineer before any steel is incorporated into the works.

2.9 Waterproof Membrane

- 2.9.1 Depending on the detailed design one of three methods of waterproofing may be used

- (i) 1200 gauge polythene sheet of approved manufacture.
- (ii) PmB Bridge Deck Sprayed waterproofing system. See Clause 6.10.
- (iii) Mastic Asphalt complying with BS 6925.

2.10 Grout

- 2.10.1 Grout shall comprise NHL 5 with one percent of Casein with just sufficient water added to produce the flow characteristics required for the particular circumstances in question. Where it is appropriate, the Engineer may direct that a proportion of sand is added.
- 2.10.2 The grout is to be prepared by using an approved mechanical device : hand mixing will not be permitted.

**SPECIFICATION
3.0 : MASONRY WORK**

3.1 Rake or Cut Out Joints

- 3.1.1 Joints in masonry shall be categorised as follows:

Normal thickness – joint wider than 3mm.

Fine joints – joint width 3mm or less.

- 3.1.1 The removal of joint material, decayed or otherwise, shall be by the use of hand tools, subject to the provision of the following paragraph. The tool selected shall be such as effectively to remove the joint material without causing damage to the stone blocks forming the joint. Joint material shall be removed to a minimum depth of 50mm, except in areas where the Engineer specifically agrees with the Contractor that the joint depth shall be varied due to the presence of soft or hard material. The rear face of cut-out joints shall be vertical and without concave dishing.
- 3.1.2 Where the Engineer agrees that the method is appropriate, the Contractor may use a small diameter (<150mm) thin cutting wheel to make an initial incision into jointing material. All necessary precautions shall be taken, including the provision of a continuous water spray at the point of cutting to avoid causing air-borne dry dust. The use of a cutting wheel shall be discontinued immediately if any cutting or nicking of masonry results, and this method shall never be used unless the width of joint is such that the grinding wheel can run freely without contact with the stone. An initial trial area of approximately 1m² shall be demonstrated by the Contractor to enable the Engineer to decide on the suitability of the method and masons' skill, and the method shall in any event be subject to the Engineer's continuing approval during the progress of the job. Only masons whose skill has been approved may carry out this method of working.
- 3.1.3 Joints shall be thoroughly brushed out to remove all dust. The rate shall include for cleaning down and disposal of arisings.
- 3.1.4 The cutting out of joints shall be undertaken in a manner which avoids destabilising stone blocks, and when necessary wedges and packs shall be used to secure masonry. The Contractor's rate for cutting out joints shall include for the wedging of masonry blocks or any other measures necessary to maintain the stability of masonry.
- 3.1.5 No more than one day's work for two men cutting out joints shall be left open at any time. The Engineer's approval must be obtained before filling of cut and cleaned joints proceeds. All joints must then be filled to tamp stage before further cutting commences.
- 3.1.6 Cut-out joints may only be filled following the approval of the Engineer. A system of progressive approval must be agreed with the Engineer in order that a clear systematic coverage of masonry is achieved and accurately recorded. No departure from the agreed progressive method shall be made without the approval of the Engineer. In order to achieve this, and to facilitate recording, the Contractor shall provide the Engineer with elevational drawings marked-up (in advance of site work)

**SPECIFICATION
3.0 : MASONRY WORK**

to indicate the proposed sequential order of working. Marking-up will be kept up-to-date on a day-by-day basis by a named member of the Contractor's staff.

3.2 Filling and Pointing of Limestone Masonry Joints

- 3.2.1 When required to do so the Contractor is to produce a sample panel of pointing to the Engineer's satisfaction in order to establish a standard area for subsequent comparison purposes. In the event of the panel failing to receive the approval of the Engineer, subsequent areas are to be produced until the Engineer's approval is forthcoming. Rejected panels are to be cut out as for "rake or cut out joints", but at the Contractor's own expense.
- 3.2.2 All joints shall be pre-wet with clean water prior to the application of mortar. In joints of normal thickness the specified mortar (with a minimum water content compatible with working) is to be compacted into the joint in two 25mm layers, the second being applied not less than two days after the first. The surface of the first layer is to be left irregular and without concave dishing in order to provide a good key for the second.
- 3.2.3 The second layer of pointing is to be bagged off, and left until the initial set has occurred. A fine water spray is to be used following the initial set, sufficient only to expose the aggregate in the mortar and arrises of the stone blocks on the masonry surface.
- 3.2.4 In fine joints which have been cut out to a depth of 30mm, pointing will be carried out in one layer, and similarly finished off to produce the same exposed-aggregate finish.
- 3.2.5 Following the completion of pointing and its acceptance by the Engineer, the whole face of the masonry is to be cleaned and washed down using a bristle brush and water or by the use of a power washer approved by the Engineer. The use of wire brushes is not permitted. A system of progressive approval is to be agreed with the Engineer.
- 3.2.6 Where the cutting-out of joints has been carried out to a depth of greater than 50mm, the Engineer may direct that joint-filling is carried out in a manner different from that for standard joints.
- 3.2.7 Filling and pointing is to be completed before grouting operations commence. Holes will be left to facilitate the application of the grout as identified.

3.3 Crack Repair

- 3.3.1 Where directed the line of a crack is to be prepared for repair by the removal of the existing joint material in accordance with section 3.1.
- 3.3.2 Dependent upon the cause of cracking, the Engineer may direct that particular cracks are filled with an approved matching polysulphide filler in order to maintain a degree of flexibility.

**SPECIFICATION
3.0 : MASONRY WORK**

- 3.3.3 Masonry is to be reinforced by the installation of 6mm diameter, Grade 304 helical, stainless steel reinforcing 'Brutt Bar' by Target Fixings Limited, Holpur House, 5 Albert Road, Crowthorne, Berks. RG45 7LT. Any overlaps shall be 600mm in length. They shall be set in a 25mm thick bed of 'Brutt Bond XL' cementitious grout in a joint in the masonry cut out 50mm deep. The grouted joint will then be pointed over 25mm depth. The location of all reinforcing bars are to be recorded on the photogrammetric drawings of the tower.

3.5 Repointing Brickwork

- 3.5.1 When required to do so the Contractor is to produce a sample panel of pointing as for masonry pointing.
- 3.5.2 Joint material shall be removed to a minimum depth of 30mm using hand tools, unless the Engineer specifically agrees that in certain areas this should be altered. The rear face of cut-out joints shall be vertical and without concave dishing.
- 3.5.3 All joints shall be thoroughly brushed out to remove all dust. No more than one day's work for two masons cutting out joints shall be left open at any time. The Engineer's approval must be obtained before repointing of cleaned joints proceeds. Joints shall be pre-wet with clean water prior to the application of mortar.
- 3.5.4 Joints are to be flush-filled with freshly mixed, compacted mortar (as specified for pointing) with a minimum water content.
- 3.5.5 Following the completion of pointing and its acceptance by the Engineer, the whole face of the brickwork is to be cleaned and washed down using a bristle brush and water. The use of wire brushes is not permitted.

3.6 Cut Out Stone including Removal of Parapet Copings

- 3.6.1 The removal of stone shall be by means as described for cut and rake out joints but to a depth necessary to release the block in question. Before the removal of a sound stone the face is to be marked in a non-permanent manner approved by the Engineer before being released. A record of the position and mark shall be provided to the Engineer. Tools selected for use shall be such as to effectively release the block without causing damage to either the block or the surrounding masonry.
- 3.6.2 Where work includes the temporary removal of parapet coping stones, particular care shall be taken to ensure that movement of these heavy items of masonry is carried out safely and without damage to the stones.

3.7 Re-fixing Stone

- 3.7.1 Re-fixing stone includes for the taking of stone previously set aside from store, cleaning and fixing back in its original position. Where groups of four or more blocks are involved, strict observance and compliance with the record drawing will be necessary.

**SPECIFICATION
3.0 : MASONRY WORK**

3.7.2 Re-fixing of copings shall be undertaken such that the stones sit on a 15mm continuous bed of mortar as specified for bedding, to within 25mm from the outside face, with edge joints left open and clean for subsequent pointing

3.8 Renew Stone

3.8.1 Where so instructed by the Engineer the Contractor is to renew stone with second-hand blocks in accordance with Clause 2.6.

3.8.2 Where weathered or damaged moulded blocks are required, the replacement stone shall be worked to match in with adjoining masonry in profile and quality

3.9 Grouting

3.9.1 Grouting is the application of the grout slurry to fill voids within the wall by one of the following methods:

- (a) applied clay cups or nests and hand pouring
- (b) static head reservoir tank and hose fitted with control valve and nozzle or
- (c) pumping

The choice of and the manner of execution is to be approved by the Engineer.

3.9.2 The Contractor is to keep comprehensive records at the time of grouting based on the column heads set out below and the location of grout application points shall be marked up on photogrammetrical drawings.

HOLE POSITION	GROUT MIX AND PRESSURE	GROUT TAKE	GROUT FLOW SEQUENCE	TIME START/FINISH
---------------	------------------------	------------	---------------------	-------------------

3.9.3 Grouting will only be carried out with the prior knowledge and agreement of the Engineer. Where necessary joints will be sealed using non-staining clay or tow stopping. Loose blocks are to be supported temporarily with oak wedges.

3.9.4 Not more than 50 litres of grout will be inserted continuously at any one time at a particular location. When this limit is reached, an interval of three days shall elapse before grout-pouring is resumed.

3.10 Cold and Inclement Weather Working

3.10.1 No work involving the mixing, laying or use of mortar, grout or concrete shall be done when the temperature in the shade is below 2°C, or likely to fall below 2°C within 48 hours of placing. All materials when used shall be free from snow, ice and frost.

3.10.2 The Contractor shall provide canopies, covers, sheeting or other necessary measures to allow the correct execution of the work and protection of materials at all times. Excavations are to be kept dry.

3.10.3 Immediately after undertaking work with cementitious and lime materials and for 3 days thereafter all stone work, brickwork paving and jointing shall on all occasions

**SPECIFICATION
3.0 : MASONRY WORK**

be covered with damp hessian or other approved insulating sheet which will be in touching contact with the surface. The dampness of covering materials shall be maintained by periodic spraying with water (including weekends), the frequency of spraying being suited to maintain continuous dampness.

3.11 Cleaning and Washing and Brushing Down

3.11.1 When specified or where directed by the Engineer the face of the stonework is to be cleaned by the hand application of a bristle brush and water or by the use of a power washer approved by the Engineer. The use of a wire brush is not permitted. Black deposits are to be removed from the surface by prolonged application of water and use of bristle brush only.

3.11.2 On completion of restoration works the affected areas are to be left free from splashes, stains and marks associated directly or indirectly with the Contractor's occupation of the site.

SPECIFICATION
4.0 : METALWORK AND WOOD

4.1 Removal of Railings or Guard Rails

- 4.1.1 Railings or guard rails shall be removed from their fixings into masonry by a method to be approved in advance by the Engineer, and which does not cause damage to masonry. Fixing bolts which do not easily detach with hand-spanners shall be carefully cut or ground off. The cutting of existing fence uprights will not be permitted as a means of detaching guardrails from masonry.
- 4.1.2 Heavy hammering or forcing of elements will not be carried out, and any parts which cannot be taken apart by means of manually-applied force shall be dismantled with carefully-applied hydraulic equipment.
- 4.1.3 The Contractor's proposal for any cutting of the railings prior to removal from site will be subject to advance approval via the Engineer, and the cost of re-forming full-strength connections shall be included in the Contractor's rates. All reformed joints in horizontal members must have internal stainless steel spigots fitted to the Engineer's approval. The number of cuts shall be kept to a minimum commensurate with safe handling.
- 4.1.4 Support stays which are fixed into the inner masonry face shall not be detached from the masonry except in exceptional circumstances, and with the Engineer's approval.

4.2 Repairs to Railings or Guard Rails

- 4.2.1 Where, repairs are identified as being necessary to railings, details shall be agreed with the Engineer in advance.

4.3 Re-erection of Railings or Guard Rails

- 4.3.1 Railings shall be re-erected to match their layout prior to dismantling, with bolted connections renewed with stainless steel bolts and nuts. Uprights shall be firmly fixed into masonry with lead, run into thoroughly cleaned out and dried sockets. The length of fence upright in contact with lead shall be cleaned of primer and any other paint coats down to bright metal. All re-formed joints in horizontal members must be constructed as Clause 4.1.3.

4.4 Welding of Railings or Guard Rails

- 4.4.1 The manner and type of welding shall be approved by the Engineer in advance. No welding shall be undertaken without the Engineer's knowledge and approval, and test welding shall be undertaken on samples of metal where directed.

4.5 Preparation of Metal Surfaces to Receive Paint

- 4.5.1 Existing paint (possibly containing lead residue), rust, scale and other deposits are to be removed by appropriate methods down to bare clean metal.

SPECIFICATION
4.0 : METALWORK AND WOOD

- 4.5.2 Where railings are removed during restoration works they are to be shop blast cleaned to a minimum standard of SA 2.5 to ISO 8501-1, followed by acid-dipping and galvanising to ISO Standard 1461:1999.

4.6 Painting of Metalwork

- 4.6.1 Any areas of surface holes/defects shall be filled with a suitable approved filler such as Sikadur 31 epoxy adhesive as a surface pore filler and smoothed by abrading before painting. Areas cleaned to bare metal shall be primed to overlap onto adjacent sound paint.
- 4.6.2 Following galvanising, surfaces shall be prepared by removing any raised points by filing or light sanding. The surface will then be washed down with a 5% ammonia solution, followed by rinsing with clean water. Any breaks or damage to the galvanising will be primed with a fast-drying single component zinc paint such as Friezinc EE or approved equivalent.

- 4.6.3 The whole surface will be painted with Sika Icosit 6630 or equivalent in two coats at no less than 75microns dry film thickness per coat. Two additional stripe coats will be added after the first main coat to all arrises, edges, bolts and protrusions.

- 4.6.4 Where the applied paint system is damaged due to erection procedures or by other means, the damaged surfacing shall be made good to the Engineer's satisfaction.

4.7 Treatment to the Surface of Wood

Surfaces are to be prepared by rubbing down and left free from dust, mould or loose material.

A mixture of boiled linseed oil and approved wood preserver is then to be applied in two coats followed by an approved stain applied in two coats.

**SPECIFICATION
5.0 : WALKWAYS**

5.1 Flagging, Coping and Steps

- 5.1.1 Where walkway flags are to be disturbed the operation will be done in such a manner as to ensure that there is no deterioration in condition either of the flag or to adjacent surfaces. Once lifted the flags are to be stacked in a safe and secure manner.
- 5.1.2 Where walkway surfaces are to be reinstated, flags from store will be laid to a 1 in 40 fall on a compacted sand bed. The thickness of the bed may vary due to differing flag thicknesses but will average approximately 75mm. Flags shall be laid to provide as smooth and trip-free a walking surface as possible commensurate with irregularities in the flags themselves. Joints between flags shall be not less than 6mm or more than 20mm wide, with no trips greater than 5mm. The bed shall comprise 1 part of NHL5 to 8 parts of sand. Copings shall be laid level, on a 15mm thick bed of 1 part NHL5 to 2.5 parts of sand.
- 5.1.3 Where directed flags are to be replaced with similar part worn flags from an approved source. They are to be free from other than minor surface imperfections, and equal in quality to the best flags on adjoining sections of Wall. Where new replacement copings are agreed with the Engineer to be required, they shall be obtained from an approved source and cut to match the shape of existing copings. Cutting marks shall be rubbed off with an abrasive.
- 5.1.4 The Contractor is to ensure that the moisture level in the mortar introduced into the joint between flags is maintained throughout the curing period, by pre-wetting of the flags edges and by covering flagging with damp hessian (which does not touch the mortar) for not less than three days.
- 5.1.5 The joint is to be fully filled and finished flush with the surface with mortar (comprising 1 part Portland cement to 4 parts of sand) and left with a trowel finish. The flag surface beyond the joint is to be free from mortar stains.
- 5.1.6 The relaid flags are to be selected for width with a mortar fillet between the flag edge and the masonry face of the parapet for spaces less than 60mm. Sawn square edge sections of York Stone Flag are to be used for spaces exceeding 60mm. Mortar shall be as specified for pointing flags, and similarly covered with damp hessian.

5.2 Excavation in the Walkway for Ties and subsequent Refilling of Corework

- 5.2.1 Following the lifting of and setting aside of the flags, copings and bedding material, the corework is to be excavated by hand, generally down to a level 150mm max. below the stone flags. Stone blocks found in loose corework are to be cleaned and set aside for re-use. At the location of ties excavation will be increased to 500mm max. depth below the upper surface of the flags x 600mm wide. The positioning of ties will be as indicated on the project drawings.
- 5.2.2 The wall core varies in texture and density but is likely to be any of the following either separately or in combination:
- (a) compacted but unbound material
 - (b) bound material
 - (c) dense homogeneous cement bound material.

**SPECIFICATION
5.0 : WALKWAYS**

5.2.3 The removal of the excavated material will be by hand tools alone. Power tools will not be permitted. The Engineer's decision as to the definition of the type of material will be final.

5.2.4 Corework shall be replaced as a mixture of suitable material selected from material previously excavated shall be hand-compacted in layers not exceeding 75mm in depth. Approved well-graded magnesian limestone fill will be imported to supplement re-used material as necessary. The Engineer may direct that a small proportion of NHL5 be added.

5.3 Mortar Screed and Water Proof Membrane

5.3.1 Graded sand shall be placed and hand-compacted in layers not exceeding 75mm in depth. The Engineer may direct that NHL5 be added and thoroughly mixed with an agreed amount of water to sand, to produce a weakly-bound fill. Trial mixes will be carried out as directed by the Engineer to select a mix proportion which produces the desired set strength. It should be assumed that a ratio of 1:8 NHL5:sand will be used.

5.3.2 Three methods of waterproofing the walkway have been used during the restoration programme and the method chosen for future works will depend on the detailing required at the specific locations. The methods are:

- (a) Visqueen High Performance DPM. Sheets should be overlapped by a least 150mm and bonded with Visqueen Double Sided Jointing Tape. This joint should be secured with Visqueen Girth Jointing Tape all in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Any tears or punctures in the membrane should be patched using a piece of the same material sized to overlap by at least 150mm beyond the extent of the puncture, the lap being sealed with the Visqueen Jointing Systems
- (b) Mastic Asphalt Waterproof Membrane. The mastic asphalt waterproof membrane shall be laid in accordance with BS8218 in two layers with sand grubbed surfaces. The initial layer shall be underlain with an approved impervious sheet to prevent vapour bubbles rising from the surface below. Mastic asphalt shall be 'Permaphalt Polymer Modified Roofing Asphalt' manufactured by Permanite Asphalt Products Division or an approved equivalent complying with BS6925. The membrane shall be lapped approximately 50mm up walls and 30mm into joints, and under steps, copings and adjoining flagged areas, to details to be agreed with the Engineer, in order to form a watertight walkway. It shall be laid by an approved specialist sub-Contractor.
- (c) Spray Applied Waterproofing System. The Baytec Bridge Deck spray applied waterproofing system manufactured by Bayer plc. shall be applied by an approved installer to concrete slabs. It shall return 70mm up the vertical face of the masonry wall at the edges of the slab, to a masked edge. The concrete surface of the roof slab shall be prepared in accordance with the membrane manufacturers' recommendations to the satisfaction of the approved applicator. If grit blasting of the slab is necessary, this shall be

**SPECIFICATION
5.0 : WALKWAYS**

undertaken using methods which minimise the production of dust such as a vacu-blast units with integral dust collection. Waterproofing by this method shall only be undertaken when the ambient temperature is 4°C and rising, or above 4°C.

5.4 Cintec Anchors

5.4.1 Installation of Cintec anchors will be undertaken by an approved Cintec trained installer. Details of these can be obtained from Cintec International Limited, Cintec House, 11 Gold Tops, Newport, South Wales, NP20 4PH, Telephone: 01633 246614. Facsimile: 01633 246110 e-mail: hqcintec@cintec.com

5.4.2 40mm diameter holes are to be wet-drilled to a depth of 1m in the internal face and 0.7 m in the external face wall, at locations to be agreed individually in advance with the Engineer. Generally holes in the internal face will be drilled vertically and; holes in the external face will y be drilled on a small angle from the vertical to allow positioning of the drill at the base of the parapet. This drilling angle will vary from location to location, and shall be carefully set out to gain maximum anchorage in the wall.

5.4.3 Holes are to be thoroughly cleaned out immediately after drilling, and shall be maintained clean until the anchor is inserted.

5.4.4 Grade 316 (Class 460) stainless steel 16mm diameter deformed tie bars with Cintec anchors are to be inserted into the holes and inflated with Presstec grout by means of standard approved compression equipment. All grout mixing, handling and insertion shall be undertaken in accordance with Cintec specifications and recommendations.

Pairs of opposite anchors are to be connected by approved Grade 316 (Class 460) stainless steel u-clamps, and the whole assembly encased in concrete as shown on the drawings. The fitting of u-clamps shall be so carried out that Cintec anchors, and masonry blocks, are not strained.

5.6 Installation of Ties Type C

Ties Type C shall be identical in all respects to Ties Type B, except that Cintec anchors will not be used. The cleaned holes in the internal and external walls will be filled with Pozament 'St Paul's Mix' grout, and the tie bars inserted such that excess grout is seen to escape at the surface. Should difficulties be experienced in either retaining grout or inserting the bar, the water:solids ratio of the grout may be amended, subject to prior approval by the Engineer.

5.7 Insets to Steps

5.7.1 Where directed by the Engineer, 75mm thick insets are to be inserted to reform the profile of worn steps. The existing step is to be cut carefully to allow an accurate rectangular inset to be bonded in with approved cementitious mortar, forming a

**SPECIFICATION
5.0 : WALKWAYS**

smooth profile with the existing step. The Contractor's rate for insets shall include for cutting, disposal of arisings and pointing.

5.8 Chainage Pins

5.8.1 Brass marker pins are located in the flagged surface at 25m intervals. The accuracy of the pins is to be checked following the relaying of flags.

5.8.2 Where rectification is required existing pins shall be ground and drilled back to 10mm below the surface, the hole filled with mortar and new pins fitted within the walking surface in approved epoxy mortar. Appropriate pins will be supplied by the Engineer.

SPECIFICATION

7.0: CALL OUT SERVICE

6.1 All Year Round Stand-by

A responsible member of the Contractor's staff must be immediately available by telephone for 24 hours every day of the week. The name of that person, or rota of people, and method of contact shall be provided monthly in advance to the Engineer.

The Contractor shall provide communication equipment to enable his office to contact a mobile gang, tradesman or supervisor at all times.

All instructions will be given to the Contractor by the Council's Duty Officer who will inform the Contractor as to the nature of the problem and action required. On completion of the call-out the Contractor will inform the Duty Officer of the action taken.

The Contractor must have available at all times for use on call-outs sufficient signs, barriers and lamps to secure the equivalent of a 10m length of footway/carriageway affected by falling masonry, in compliance with Chapter 8 of the Traffic Signs Manual.

6.2 Standard Call-Outs

The Contractor shall provide a qualified person from any of the following trades to attend on site within 3 hours of the instruction being given:

Mason, Electrician, Locksmith, Blacksmith, Joiner

The person attending site will be expected to have basic tools and equipment appropriate to their trade sufficient to resolve a minor problem as described in the call-out instruction.

6.3 Emergency Call-Outs

The Contractor shall provide a 2 man gang on stand-by which can be called out for dealing with emergencies at any time. Attendance on site with all necessary plant, equipment, signs and materials shall be made within one hour of the instruction being given.

During the normal working day, the stand-by gang may be formed from labour working elsewhere under this contract, provided the Contractor continues to meet all other obligations under the Contract.

6.4 Drug Litter Call-Outs

Attendance on site by suitably trained personnel will be required as for standard or emergency call-out, to be specified at the time of issuing the order. The Contractor will be required to clear all drug-related waste from a specified location. An extra over item is provided to cover the cost of disposal of items collected.

SPECIFICATION

7.0: CALL OUT SERVICE

6.5 Public Safety

The Contractor shall act at all times to protect public safety. Where it is not possible to resolve a problem within one hour on site the Contractor shall inform the Duty Officer immediately, erect signs and barriers as appropriate and in accordance with Chapter 8 of the Traffic Signs Manual, and take all necessary steps to ensure safety before leaving site. The Duty Officer will issue instructions for any further work required.

6.6 Payment for Call-Out

The items for attending call-out shall include for attendance on site for up to 2 persons for up to one hour, and all transport and administration costs therewith. Where work extends beyond the hour it shall be paid for in accordance with the appropriate rates elsewhere in the schedule. Consumable materials will be paid for at invoice rates plus the additional percentage stated in the Schedule of Rates.

For emergency call-out purposes normal working hours are defined as 0800-1800 hours Monday to Friday, Bank Holidays excepted.

SPECIFICATION
6.0 : TIES AND ANCHORS

3.12 Angle Ties to Buttresses and Piers

Angle ties shall be of deformed grade 304 stainless steel bars, 8mm dia., 300mm in length cranked through 90° centrally. Ties shall be inserted into the joint to a depth of 40mm back from the masonry surface and set into an approved epoxy mortar surround. The joint shall be finished with normal pointing, as Clause 3.3, to be included in the rate for angle ties.

3.13 Underpinning of Buttresses and Piers

The buttress or pier shall be underpinned in two separate halves in a manner which maintains stability of the buttress as a whole. The Contractor's rate for this item shall include for any wedging, shoring, or other measures deemed appropriate to maintain stability of pier/buttress and surrounding wall at all times. Underpinning shall take the form of a concrete block, located below ground level, total plan area as shown on Drawing No. S/00R6225/5 and to a depth agreed with the Engineer on site, minimum 300mm. The interface between areas of concrete cast at different times shall be vertical and roughened to provide adequate bonding.

The rate shall include for excavation and disposal of arisings, and for a neat reforming of the area around the base of the buttress subsequent to the placing of the underpinning.

SPECIFICATION
7.0: CALL OUT SERVICE

Appendix IV: List of Consultees, 2004

List of People and Organisations Consulted Throughout the Study

Name	Organisation	Date Consulted
Rory McCarthy	City of York Council	19/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Terry Atkinson	City of York Council	19/03/2004, received copy of draft report
S Roskams	Dept. Of Archaeology, University of York	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Duncan Stirk	On Site Archaeology	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Eliza Gore	York Archaeological Trust	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Martin Bartlett	CYC Councillor, resident (Holgate Ward)	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Malcolm Hainsworth	Friends of Hob Moor	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Andrew Jones	Education Officer, York Archaeological Trust	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Christine Garrats	Poppleton Parish project	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Sue Wright	History Society (Upper Poppleton)	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
John Hampshire	York Archaeological Forum	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Monica Nelson	FOYAT (Friends of York Archaeological Trust)	30/03/2004, received copy of draft report
Hugo Laing	Scrutiny, City of York Council	30/03/2004
Chris Hogg	CYC Councillor	30/03/2004
John Oxley	Archaeologist, CYC	Throughout project
Dave Meigh	Head of Parks, CYC	30/03/2004, 14/4/2004, received copy of draft report
Francis Mee	Yorkshire Archaeological Trust	14/4/2004, received copy of draft report
John Erwin	Property Services, CYC	14/4/2004, received copy of draft report
Sophie Gibson	Research Team, CYC	19/4/2004
Simon Christian	English Nature	05/05/2004
Robbie Fisher	English Nature	11/05/2004
John Drewitt	North Yorkshire Bat Group	21/04/2004, 19/05/2004
Peter Little	CYC Engineer	26/04/2004, 27/04/2004, received copy of draft report
Martin Lowe	CYC Conservation Officer	26/04/2004, received copy of draft report
Steve Willowson	CYC Maintenance Team	26/04/2004
Michael Bennett	Monk Bar Museum	26/04/2004, received copy of draft report
David Mason	Micklegate Bar Museum	26/04/2004, 27/04/2004, received copy of draft report
Calvary Chapel York	Walmgate Bar	26/04/2004, Received copy of draft report

Keith Emerick	Inspector of Monuments, English Heritage	06/05/2004, received copy of draft report, 04/08/2004
Eric Branse-Instone	Designation Archaeologist, English Heritage	06/05/2004, received copy of draft report, 04/08/2004
Bob Hawkins	Single Designation Pilot project, English Heritage	06/05/2004, received copy of draft report
Jane Jackson	Inspector of Historic Buildings, English Heritage	Received copy of draft report
	Bristol City Council	24/05/2004
Mr D Heslop	Newcastle City Council	24/05/2004
Mr J Herridge	Lincoln City Council	24/05/2004
Mr B Durham	Oxford City Council	24/05/2004
Mr A Russel	Southampton City Council	24/05/2004
Mr M Morris	Chester City Council	24/05/2004
Mr D Kinkaid	Canterbury City Council	24/05/2004
Mr D Parry	Caernarvon Town Council	24/05/2004
Ms L Williams	Northumberland County Council	24/05/2004
Ms T Matthews	Winchester City Council	24/05/2004
Mr M Simmons	Tees Archaeology	24/05/2004
Ms F McDonald	Durham County Council	24/05/2004
Mr R Cullimore	Warwick City Council	02/06/04
Mr A Pye	Exeter City Council	16/07/04
Mike Tavener	City of York Council	Received copy of draft report
Tony Dennis	City of York Council	Received copy of draft report
Hilary Roome	City of York Council	Received copy of draft report
Bob Missin	City of York Council	Received copy of draft report
Ian Tempest	City of York Council	Received copy of draft report
Jane Jackson	English Heritage, Inspector of Historic Buildings	Received copy of draft report
David Fraser	English Heritage, Regional Director	Received copy of draft report
	Dean and Chapter, York Minster	Received copy of draft report
Dr Guy Woolley and branch members	Campaign to Protect Rural England (York and Selby District Branch)	Received copy of draft report
Dr Richard Hall	Yorkshire Archaeological Trust, Deputy Director	Received copy of draft report
David Brinklow	Yorkshire Architectural and York Archaeological Society, Chairman	Received copy of draft report
Elizabeth Smith	Friends of Hob Moor	Received copy of draft report
Gillian Cruddas	York Tourist Board	Received copy of draft report

	and Heritage Advisory Panel	report
	Ward Councillors	Received copy of draft report
	Micklegate and Guildhall Ward Committees	08/07/2004, received copy of draft report
	Tenants of Bars and Towers	Received copy of draft report
	York Museum Trust	Received copy of draft report
	The National Trust	Received copy of draft report
	Merchant Tailors Guild	Received copy of draft report
Pauline Buchanan	Bishophill Action Group	Received copy of draft report
<i>Conservation Area Advisory Panel:</i>		<i>All received copy of draft report</i>
Alison Sinclair	York Georgian Society	04/05/2004
Mr J Spriggs	Yorkshire Philosophical Society	04/05/2004
Mr D Buttery	York Civic Trust	04/05/2004
Mr E Howland	Royal Institute of Chartered Surveyors	04/05/2004
Mark Bramhall	Architect (CYC nominee)	04/05/2004
Mr P Powell	York branch of the Local Council's Association	04/05/2004
Dr W Fawcett	Yorkshire Architectural & York Archaeological Society	04/05/2004
Mr J Ives	Royal Institute of British Architects	04/05/2004

Appendix V: Bibliography

Published Sources

Brereton, C. *The Repair of Historic Buildings: Advice on Principles and Methods*, 1995

Earl, J. *Building Conservation Philosophy*, Routledge, 2003

B. Fawcett, *The North Eastern Railway's Two Palaces of Business*, Friends of the National Railway Museum, 2006

R. Hall, York, Batsford, 1996

Historic Towns Trust, *An Historical Map of York*, 2018

Jones, Siân and Leech, Steven. *Valuing the Historic Environment: a critical review of existing approaches to social value*, 2015 (Report for the AHRC Cultural Value Project).

P. Nuttgens, *The History of York: From Earliest Times to the Year 2000*. Blackthorn Press, 2001

Pevsner, N and Neave, D. *The Buildings of England. Yorkshire: York and the East Riding*, Yale University Press 2002.

D. Pywell, *City of York: Survey of City Walls*, 1991

RCHME, *An Inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: I. Eboracum, Roman York*, HMSO, 1962

RCHME, *An Inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: II. The Defences*, HMSO, 1972

RCHME, *An Inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: V. The Central Area*, HMSO, 1981

B. Wilson and F. Mee, *The City Walls and Castles of York*, York Archaeological Trust, 2005

B. Wilson, *Archaeological Evaluation at Tower 2, York City Walls*, 2019

C. Wilson and J. Burton, *St Mary's Abbey York*, The Yorkshire Museum, 1988

York Archaeological Trust, *2000 Years of York*, 1978

Unpublished Sources

Bertram Hyde Limited, Gifford & Donald Insall Associates, *St Mary's Abbey Precinct York: Conservation Management Plan*, 2005

Alan Baxter for City of York Council, *York Central Historic Core: Conservation Area Appraisal*, November 2011

City of York Council, *Development Control Local Plan*, April 2005

City of York Council, *City of York Historic Environment Characterisation Project*, 2014

City of York Council, *Local Plan - Publication Draft*, February 2018

City of York Council, *Local Biodiversity Action Plan 2017*

City of York Council, *City of York Pollinator Strategy 2020 – 2025*, 2020

City of York Council, *A Cultural Strategy for York 2019–2025*, February 2019

K. Foxton, *Within the Walls Project: Comparing Heritage Values as Action Within Council & Community Asset Transfer Practices*, York, UK 2014–2016. PhD thesis, University of York, 2018

PLB Consulting, *Conservation Plan for York City Walls and Access and Interpretation Plan*, 2004

Simpson & Brown Architects, Addyman Archaeology, *Mint Yard Conservation Management Plan*, 2012

Alan Baxter for York Minster, *York Minster Precinct Neighbourhood Plan: A Sustainable Future 2020–2035, Pre-Submission Draft*, January 2020

Department of Archaeology, University of York. *Yorkshire Archaeological Research Framework: research agenda*, May 2007

Appendix VI: Section 2 Plates

Image	Subject	Credit/ref
General chronology		
71-2AD	IX Legion tile	YMT
122	VI Legion banner	ancienncivilisations.com
197	Pictish Warrior	Public domain
208-13	Marble bust of Severus in the Capitoline Museum	Wikimedia
300	Multangular Tower	Historic England
306	Bust of Constantine	YMT YORYM_1998_23
867	Viking defences	Historic England
930	Tomb of Athelstan, Malmesbury Abbey	Wikimedia
1069	Timber Castle	Historic England
1154	William of York arrives in York - alabaster	YMT YORYM_2003_256
1190	Burning of York Castle	Historic England
1245-70	Cutaway of Clifford's Tower	Historic England
1266	Ruins of St Mary's Abbey, by Rooker	Yale Center for British Art
14th Century	Bootham Bar	YMT YORAG_2010_383_2
c. 1350	Monk Bar	YMT YORAG_R2256
1405	Arms of Thomas Mowbray	Wikimedia
1483-5	Richard III	Wikimedia
1487	Stall plate of Lord Scrope	Hope, <i>The Stall Plates of the Knights of the Order of the Garter</i> , 1901
1489	Fishergate Bar, blocked	YMT YORAG_R2249
1505	Fishergate Postern Tower	CYC 1003021
1581-6	Rear façade of Walmgate Bar, late 19th century	CYC 1000761
1616	Lendal Tower (c. 1865)	CYC 1003075
1644	Seige damage	YMT YORAG_R2617
1667-8	Grand Jury House	YMT
1701-5	Debtor's Prison	YMT YORAG_R1944-1
1719	Rear façade of Bootham Bar	YMT YORAG_R926
1753	Micklegate Bar by Moses Griffith, 1777	YMT YORAG_R373-1
1780	Female Prison	CYC 1002937
1793	John Browne	Lyn Hansch
1807-8	Skeldergate Postern Tower	YMT YORAG_1261-PCF
1825	Monk Bar after demolition of its barbican, by William Etty	YMT YORAG_64
1827	Rear façade of Micklegate Bar	CYC 1000924
1829	Layertorpe Postern, by Rooker	YMT YORAG_900
1835	Bootham Bar, 1870s	CYC 1002950
1839	1840s railway locomotive	Hamilton Ellis
1840	North Street Postern and Barker Tower, mid-19th century	CYC 1003468
1853	Foss Islands Road	CYC 1000237
1857	Red Tower, as restored	CYC 1002992
1874 and 1876	Southern road arch through walls	CYC 1000717
1886-9	Robin Hood Tower	Tim Green
1914	Monk Bar	CYC 1000977

1972	Livestock pens near Walmgate Bar	CYC 1002996
2.01	Conjectural Birds-eye view of Roman York	Historic England
2.02	York, AD400	after RCHME, 1972
2.03	York, AD 950	after RCHME, 1972
2.04	York, 1200	after RCHME, 1972
2.05	York, 1350	after RCHME, 1972
2.06	Horsely map	YMT YORAG_R1853
2.07	Cossins map, 1757	CYC 1007136
2.08	Whitlock birdseye	YMT YORAG_R1946
2.09	Civil Defence booklet frontcover map showing City Centre Air-Raid Shelters	YMT via Civic Trust
2.10	WW2 shelter facing motte at Baile Hill, 1968	Angela Wheatcroft via Civic Trust
2.11	Barker, 1718	YMT YORAG R-1803-1
2.12	Tower 1, as built	EY1003032
2.13	C19 view towards Tower 1	EY1003027
2.14	Lodge's Prospect of York	YORAG R-1988-1
2.15	Drawing of 2nd arch at Victoria Bar	Y/PP/6/1/3042
2.16	Victoria Bar, 1900	EY 1007580
2.17	Micklegate bar Moses Griffiths	YORAG R373-1
2.18	Micklegate bar interior Nattes	YORAG R-2931
2.19	Micklegate Bar photo	EY1003050
2.20	Towards Tofts Tower	EY1004865
2.21	Tower 17 towards tower 13 (tofts) Halfpenny	YORAG 2010-335-2
2.22	Detail from Whitlock	YORAG_R1946
2.23	Both railway arches from outside	EY 1000253
2.24	Southern road arch, original drawing, from inside	Y-PPT-6-2-182
2.25	Northern road arch	Y-PPT-6-2-185
2.26	Northern arch, raised	postcard
2.27	Wall to Lendal with railway, pre-Lendal bridge	EY1003299
2.28	North St Postern	EY1003082
2.29	Barker Tower from the north, in an etching by Henry Cave	YORAG R2301
2.30	Barker Tower from river, pre-bridge	EY1007473
2.31	Lendal Tower Henry Cave	YORAG 1255
2.32	Wall between Lendal Tower and Museum Lodge on Mint Yard plan	EY 1003220
2.33	Lendal Tower Photograph, mid-19th century	Y/PP/6/1/3058
2.34	Seige damage in the wall to the south-east of the Multangular Tower	YORAG R2617
2.35	Multangular Tower. Halfpenny	YORAG 2010-320
2.36	Mint Yard, 1831	Y/PP/6/1/172
2.37	Tower 21, Nicholson	YORAG_R2948
2.38	Bootham with C18 back	YORAG 2010_383_2
2.39	Bootham plus barbican	YORAG R926
2.40	Bootham Bar after removal of barbican, Mulholland	YORAG R214
2.41	Bootham Bar and end of Abbey Wall	EY1002944

2.42	LMW towards MB	EY1000771
2.43	Lord Mayors Walk	YORAG R20
2.44	The City Walls behind Gillygate, from Robin Hood's Tower, c. 1920	EY1000785
2.45	Monk Bar with barbican. Cave	YORAG R2256
2.46	Monk Bar - photograph, c.1880	EY1002984
2.47	The City Walls west of Monk Bar, by Samuel Prout	YORAG 2010 277
2.48	Plan of walls and restoration proposal, nr Monk Bar	Y/PPT/6/1/3505
2.49	In the Moat, Jewbury	YORAG R62
2.50	Restored walls Harlot Hill Tower to Layerthorpe	EY1002343
2.51	Rooker painting of Layerthorpe Poster Tower, c.1770	YMT
2.52	Layerthorpe Postern, George Nicholson	YORAG 1250
2.53	Photograph showing the restored walls from Peasholme Green	EY1002995
2.54	Plans for the reconstruction of the walls near LP	Y/PPT/6/1/4618
2.55	Detail from Richards map 1685	EY1000609
2.56	Foss Islands Road, 1870	EY1003279
2.57	Foss Islands Road, 1900	EY1000237
2.58	Red Tower early photo	EY 1003477
2.59	Red Tower before restoration from 1857 plan	Y/PPT/6/1/4611
2.60	Drawing of a section of the unrestored walls near the Red Tower	Y/PPT/6/1/2795
2.61	Interior of wall, crumbling, 1853	EY 1003478
2.62	City Walls from Walmgate to Red Tower (bar end, outside). Existing and proposed.	Y/PPT/6/1/3492
2.63	Walmgate interior - John Harper watercolour, 1840	YORAG R1643
2.64	Walmgate with houses against barb	YORAG 1256
2.65	Aerial of Walmgate and cattle market	EY1007256
2.66	Tower 37 and cattle pens.	EY1000768
2.67	Walmgate Ropework	EY1003542
2.68	Fishergate Bar from outside, Nicholson	YORAG R1398
2.69	Fishergate Bar from inside	EY1001487
2.70	Tower 39, Nicholson	YORAG 2010_344
2.71	Tower 39 photo c.1900	EY1002340
2.72	Fishergate Postern Tower from Walls	EY1003482
2.73	Fishergate Postern Gate	EY 1003025
2.74	Fishergate Postern Tower and Foss	YORAG R2892
2.75	Fishergate Postern Tower	EY1003022
2.75	Castle view and postern, early-19th century	YORAG 1259
2.77	Castlegate Postern, Henry Cave	YORAG R2317
2.78	Davy Tower and Skeldergate Postern, late-18th century painting	YORAG 1261
2.79	Detail from John Speed's Plan of York, 1619	YORAG XXXX
2.80	Water Tower, Francis Place c.1700	YORAG 1858
2.81	Water Tower photograph, mid-19th century	EY1003472
2.82	Nicholson sketch Abbey Lodge	YORAG R886
2.83	Marygate Abbey Gatehouse	EY1003499
2.84	Marygate wall from inside the Walls	EY1000908

2.85	St Mary's Tower	EY1002891
2.86	St Mary's Tower and Bootham shops, mid-19th century	EY1002327
2.87	Abbey Postern Tower, mid-19th century	EY1002898
2.88	Precinct Wall, during WWI	EY1000902

Appendix VII: List of Plans Consulted in 2020 at York Explore Library and Archive

Y/PPT/6/1/3081	Barker Tower to Tower 17, inner face. Plan showing intended repairs?	8898-8903	
Y/PPT/6/1/3080	Micklegate Bar to Tower 17, inner face. Ditto?	8904-8918	
Y/PPT/6/1/3082	Micklegate Bar to Tower 14, inner face. Ditto?	8919-8925	
Y/PPT/6/1/3079	Barker Tower to Tower 14, outer face. Ditto?	8926-8938	
Y/PPT/6/1/72	General plan of the Mint Yard, showing proposed St Leonards Place	8939-8942	1831
Y/PPT/6/2/12	Raising of Station Avenue arch to suit double-decker trams	8943	01/09/1909
Y/PPT/6/1/2010	Bootham Bar restoration	8944-8947	1889
Y/PPT/6/1/2013	Bootham Bar - proposed steps	8948	1888
Y/PPT/6/3/1156	Detailed plan relating to Mint Yard area? 'Original line of St Leonards'	8949-8952	1834
Y/PPT/6/1/1958	Proposed restoration of walls near Layerthorpe Bridge	8953-8954	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/4633	Restoration from Bootham Bar to Tower 27	8955-8965	1880
Y/PPT/6/1/4671	Restoration - towers 27 and 28, Lord Mayor's Walk	8966-8976	1880
Y/PPT/6/1/4611	Walmgate Bar to Red Tower, as existing	8977-8980	1857
Y/PPT/6/1/2795	Walmgate Bar to Red Tower, as existing. Outer face.	8983-8990	1857
Y/PPT/6/1/4612	Proposed restoration of walls near Walmgate Bar	8991-8994	1863
Y/PPT/6/1/4619	Proposed new arch at Victoria Bar	8995-8997	1865
Y/PPT/6/1/4620	Proposed restoration of walls from Monk Bar to NW end of Lord Mayors Walk	8998-9001	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/4618	Proposed restoration of walls near Layerthorpe Bridge - outer face	9002-9004	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/4617	Proposed restoration near Walmgate Bar (3) inner face	9005-9008	1864
Y/PPT/6/1/3494	New arch at Victoria Bar	9010-9012	1862
Y/PPT/6/1/3495	Proposed steps at Monk Bar	9013-9014	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/3496	Proposed archway at Monk Bar	9015-9018	1861
Y/PPT/6/1/3497	Proposed archway at Monk Bar - inside	9019	1861
Y/PPT/6/1/3498	Proposed restoration of part of walls between Monk Bar and Layerthorpe Postern	9020	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/3501	Proposed restoration between Bootham Bar and Lord Mayor's Walk	9021	1886
Y/PPT/6/1/3502	Alterations to Bootham Bar	9022	1889
Y/PPT/6/1/3503	Proposed steps at Bootham Bar	9023-9024	1888
Y/PPT/6/1/3504	Bootham Bar restoration	9025-9027	1889
Y/PPT/6/1/3505	Proposed restoration of bar walls - existing and proposed NEAR MONK BAR	9028-9029	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/3506	Proposed restoration of length of walls between Monk Bar and Layerthorpe Postern	9030-9031	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/3509	Walls and railings on and around Station Avenue	9032-9034	1879
Y/PPT/6/1/3488	Plan of Walmgate(?) Bar	9035-9037	?
Y/PPT/6/1/3492	City Walls from Walmgate to Red Tower (bar end, outside). Existing and proposed.	9038-9039	?
Y/PPT/6/1/3493	Proposed restoration near Layerthorpe Bridge (inside and plans)	9040-9046	1870
Y/PPT/6/1/2987	Micklegate bar - chamber in NW wall	9048-9049	?
Y/PPT/6/1/3436	Proposed houses on Lord Mayor's Walk	9051-9053	1850
Y/PPT/6/1/3042	Proposed new arch at Victoria Bar - outside	9054-9056	1865
Y/PPT/6/1/5184	Suggested laying out of rampart at Jewbury	9057	1903
Y/PPT/6/1/5183	Suggested laying out of rampart at Nunnery Lane	9058	1903
Y/PPT/6/1/5182	Suggested laying out of rampart at Baile Hill	9059	1903
Y/PPT/6/1/3058	Plan of Mint Yard, with proposed St Leonards Place	9060-9065	1831
Uncatalogued	Part of Abbey wall at Marygate, as existing, 1952	9068	
Uncatalogued	Design No. 2 for proposed new archway at Micklegate Bar.	9069	1862
Uncatalogued	Micklegate Bar: sketch of chamber in north wall of main traffic arch	9070	1952

Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Site plan	9071	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Plan 2 X section A-A	9072	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Plan 5 X section	9073	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Plan 4 x-section B-B and C-C	9074	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Plan 3	9075	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Plan 4 x-section B-B and C-C	9076	
Uncatalogued	City wall excavation (Anglian Tower etc) July 1970. Site plan	9077-9071	
Uncatalogued	Proposed archway at Walmgate Bar - plan	9079-9082	1861
Uncatalogued	Plan to photo survey of Abbey walls	9083	1952
Uncatalogued	1 Outside	9084	
Uncatalogued	General view outside	9085	
Uncatalogued	2 outside	9086	
Uncatalogued	3 outside	9087	
Uncatalogued	5 outside	9088	
Uncatalogued	1 inside	9089	
Uncatalogued	3 inside	9090	
Uncatalogued	General view inside	9091	
Uncatalogued	4 inside	9092	
Uncatalogued	5 inside	9093	
Y/PPT/6/2/182	North Eastern Railway arch (southern road arch)	Y-PPT-6-2-182	1876/7
Y/PPT/6/2/185	North Eastern Railway arch for Rougier Street (northern road arch)	Y-PPT-6-2-185	1876/7
Y/PPT/6/3/192	Proposed new streets, Baile Hill	Y-PPT-6-3-192	

Appendix VIII: Research Agenda: Initial Research Questions

International context

- Early modern conservation.
- Specific historical issues of international significance to which the study of walls can contribute include:

- Architectural expression;
- Expression of civic identity;
- Ceremonial activities;
- Leisure activities.

National context

Within Britain, how does York's defences compare to those of other walled towns and cities.

Research issues include:

- Chronologies of construction, extension and adaptation – single period/phase or multi-period/ phase construction;
- How defence, civic identity, trade and population control are expressed and how the relationships between these roles are mediated and expressed; and
- The survival and re-use of earlier elements in later phases of defences.

Site-Specific Context

City Walls - Scheduled Monuments 1017777 and 1004910

Roman

- Chronologies of construction, extension and adaptation including any defence which surrounded the civilian settlement?;

- Outside of the fortress gateways where/how did other Roman roads pass through the Roman defences?;
- What evidence survives of the Porta Decumana and Porta Principalis Dextra?

Early Medieval

- Survival and re-use of earlier elements in later phases of defences - to what extent were the Roman defences maintained during the Anglian and later periods and when were some elements deconstructed e.g. Porta Decumana?;
- What state of repair/how complete were the defences in by the time of the Viking raids?;

Can any further dating /evidence of amendments to defences during the Anglo-Scandinavian period be obtained?

Medieval

- Chronologies of construction, extension and adaptation including any further dating evidence as to when the city walls were extended in the Jewbury area (10th-11th century)?;
- Chronologies of construction, extension and adaptation in the Baile Hill area. How were the defences altered or demolished to make way for motte and bailey castle? How/when were the walls we see in this area today constructed?

Post-medieval

Chronologies of adaptation addressing questions such as:

- When the Barbicans deconstructed/destroyed? How were the walls adapted to artillery from the 14th century onwards?;
- Can further evidence be obtained of use and how the defences were during and after the Civil War?

Early Modern

- Dating and construction evidence for the construction of the early 19th century wall walk;
- When/why was the switch made from seeing the walls as a problem to viewing them as an asset?

St. Mary's Abbey - Scheduled Monument 1004919

- Can any evidence for 10th -11th century Earlsborough be obtained? Why wasn't this included within the defensive circuit?;
- Can further dating/construction evidence be obtained for St Abbeyes Wall?;
- Former Roman fortress defences (no longer visible above ground);

- What evidence survives of the Porta Praetoria and Porta Principalis Sinistra?;
- When were the Roman defences in the Kings Square area dismantled? How were they strengthened and used in the early medieval period?

Other Academic Contexts

Other academic contexts in which the Walls may be employed as a resource include:

- History (including social, economic, urban but also more specific such as history of construction technology, history of leisure and tourism);
- Heritage management/conservation (including the history of);
- Art and Architectural History (including town planning, defensive architecture).

Appendix VIII: Research Agenda: Initial Research Questions Continued

Ultimately, these contexts overlap with the archaeological research agenda, but it is still useful to identify them as having potential for exploration. Whilst the archaeological research has been the predominant focus, given York's considerable archaeological importance, the forthcoming research framework should extend to encompass the aforementioned contexts – to enable us to understand more about the City Walls, from a broader perspective.

Appendix IX: Recent Planning History for the Walls

Section 4

Micklegate Bar
04/04063/FUL

Decision Issued: 14 January 2005

Approved

Installation of lighting units to Micklegate Bar, 2-6 Blossom Street, 5-9 Blossom Street, 129 Micklegate and 150 Micklegate to illuminate Micklegate Bar.

Section 6

Barker Tower/Postern Tower (Perky Peacock)
03/03709/FUL

Decision issued: 20 October 2004

Approved

Change of use from art gallery to ticket sales and booking office and the sale of ice cream

09/01365/FUL

Decision issued: 21 September 2009

Approved

Variation of condition 3 of permission 03/03709/FUL for change of use to sale of ice-cream to allow extension of opening hours from 09:00 to 19:00 to 07:00 to 19:00 on any day

Section 7

Lendal Tower
04/03923/LBC

Decision issued: 29 June 2005

Approved

Conversion to single dwelling

(No documents)

05/01659/LBC

Decision issued: 25 September 2009

Approved

Alterations to form flood defences

No docs

07/00306/LBC & 07/00307/FUL

Decision issued: 20 August 2007

Approved

Conversion of Lendal Hill House and Whistler House to form three apartments including alterations to Lendal Tower to form 1 no. dwelling, internal and external alterations

(External alterations to the tower were limited to a replacement flagpole on the roof, a new guardrail and an access turret clad in copper).

The Lodge, Museum St

04/03939/FUL

Decision issued: 17 December 2004

Approved

Alterations to exterior lighting

(No documents)

Section 9

Bootham Bar

04/04106/FUL

Decision issued: 17 January 2005

Approved

Installation of lighting units on Bootham Bar, De Grey Rooms St Leonards Place, 1 and 4 High Petergate, 1 and 1A Bootham

Section 12

York City Walls, Jewbury

05/01178/GRG3

Permitted Development

Erection of a section of railing along the City Wall walkway

(No longer available to view - application number appears to be from 2005)

Section 14

Red Tower

16/02248/LBC & 16/02247/FUL

Decision issued: 14 December 2016

Approved

Change of use of storage building to meeting/community space with refreshment facility, and associated internal and external alterations. Creation of a new opening in the low boundary wall to west of Red Tower. (Internal and external alterations to facilitate change of use of storage building to a meeting/community space with refreshment facility

(The external alterations included the removal of some brickwork in the south-east corner to fit services and waste pipes. The window openings were fitted with double-glazed units in timber frames. These were set back from the external face of the wall and offered up from the inside. Some openings were fitted with metal grilles from WC and kitchen extracts. A small and unobtrusive peaked roof vent was fitted to the roof of the east elevation).

Section 20

14/02246/FUL

Decision issued: 2 January 2015

Approved

Formation of new gardens, including access gateways into Museum Gardens, replacement gates to Marygate entrance, boundary fence with King's Manor and timber bin

store.

(New gates to Marygate of timber in steel frame).

Marygate Tower

10/00030/LBC & 10/00029/ADV

Decision issued: 31 MArch 2010

Approved

Display of 1 No. advertisement board

(Planned to the left of door fronting Bootham - does not appear to have been implemented).

Abbey Walls to Rear of 2-6 Bootham

04/03930/FUL

Decision issued: 17 December 2004

Approved

Installation of lighting units on the Art Gallery and 5 Bootham to illuminate the Abbey Walls

(No documents)

Appendix X: Recent Planning History for Development within the Setting of the Walls

Section 1

The Bonding Warehouse – walkway and railings associated with residential development

13/00930/LBC – Approved 11th July 2013

Internal and external alterations in connection with proposed use as restaurant and/or offices with apartments in upper floors including new mansard roof to southern building, erection of stair and lift access tower in courtyard and bridge link to Skeldergate

A small 'circulation core' was added in brick and glass, providing the access point at first floor level from the new bridge.

Section 3/4

New roof garden development in the setting near Mickelgate Bar

18/02057/FUL – Refused 12th February 2019

Two storey and single storey extensions with roof terrace garden following the demolition of existing single storey rear extensions and fire escape (resubmission)

Section 5

York Central, inc. Station Front

Outline planning application (18/01884/OUTM) was approved 25th March 2019.

Current reserved matters application in progress (20/00710/REMM).

Large brownfield site to the west of the station, comprising National Railway Museum, housing, businesses and large areas of unused railway. Proposals will include 2,500

homes and up to 112,000m² office, leisure and retail space.

York Station Front

19/00535/FULM) in progress

Proposals aim to demolish Queen Street Bridge and create new highway to simplify the space around the station entrance. Key aims are to segregate pedestrians and vehicles, ease transitions between modes of transport, create new public spaces and improve the setting of the City Walls and other heritage assets.

Hudson Quarter - Large dev next to Stephenson House

17/00576/FULM – Approved 23rd August 2017

Erection of 4 no. buildings comprising 127 no. flats (C3), office (B1) use and office or restaurant (B1 or A3) uses following the demolition of existing office building

Northern House, Rougier Street

19/02672/FULM Awaiting Decision

Demolition of 1 - 9 Rougier Street and erection of 11 storey building, with roof terrace, consisting of mixed use development including no. 250 apartments (Use Class C3), offices (Use Class B1), visitor attraction (Use Class D1), retail (Use Class A1) /or restaurant (Use Class A3) and/or bar (Use Class A4) and/or music venue (Use Class D2) with associated landscaping and public realm improvements | Northern House Rougier Street York

Section 7 Conversion of Waterworks Buildings and Lendal Tower

07/00306/LBC & 07/00307/FUL – Approved 20 August 2007

Conversion of Lendal Hill House and Whistler House to

form three apartments including alterations to Lendal Tower to form 1 no. dwelling, internal and external alterations

External alterations to the tower were limited to a replacement flagpole on the roof, a new guardrail and an access turret clad in copper.

09/01089/FUL – approved 23rd July 2009

Change of use and extension of Engine House to form restaurant (Class A3 use) (Amendment of permission granted under 08/00115/FUL to delete residential and leisure suite uses)

Single storey extension to the north east to provide restaurant space and creation of brick terrace to the south.

Section 10/11

Residential development near Monk Bar/Lord Mayor's Walk

13/03338/FUL – Approved 7th March 2014

Erection of 2 no. dwellings and garage block with 1 no. residential flat following demolition of existing buildings - Monk Bar Garage Lord Mayors Walk

Section 12/13

Fossbank Carpark etc.

06/01083/FUL – Approved 3rd July 2006

Variation of condition 1 of planning permission 00/00873/FUL dated 18th July 2001 (for erection of foodstore, 2 no. dwellings and 12 no. flats) to extend the time limit for the commencement of development by three years – J Sainsbury plc.

Former Carpetright Layerthorpe – recent consent for hotel

20/00940/FULM – in progress

Erection of hotel with bar/restaurant, relocation of access and associated landscaping and car park following demolition of existing building

Section 13

Hungate

The Hungate Development site is 4.1 hectares set aside for high-quality office, retail and residential units. The first phase (168 apartments) was completed in 2009 and the second phase of 195 apartments is now completed. Construction of the other blocks is in progress and when finished, the site will provide 1000 homes, community centre, multi-storey car park and high quality public space.

Section 15/16

McQuade's Court Housing

03/00376/FUL – Approved 9th September 2004

INL Club Speculation Street - Erection of 28 flats with associated access, car and cycle parking and reinstatement of embankment to City Walls following demolition of former working men's club premises

Section 17

Hotel adjacent to Barbican

11/02658/FULM – approved 2nd February 2012

Proposed Hotel At York Barbican Site, Paragon Street - Erection of 165 bedroom hotel with public space, landscaping and access

Section 19

Castle Gateway

The Castle Gateway project aims to create an improved public space connecting Clifford's Tower, the Eye of York and Tower Gardens and reveal the layers of history on the site. Consultations also revealed that use of the rivers Foss and Ouse as important assets.

Castle Mills Car Park

Part of Castle-Piccadilly area of Castle Gateway

19/02415/FULM – in progress

Erection of 106 apartments including 36no. 1-bed, no. 68 2-bed and 2no. studios, flexible commercial floorspace (A1-A3 and B1 1458sqm gross), provision of new pedestrian and cycle bridge across the River Foss and creation of new public realm and pedestrian and cycle route at riverside north

St Georges Field Car Park

(Part of the development of the Castle-Piccadilly area of the Castle Gateway project).

19/02063/FULM – in progress

Erection of 5 level multi-storey car park with canopy to roof to provide 372 no. car parking spaces, demolition of public toilet, revised highway access and associated landscaping works

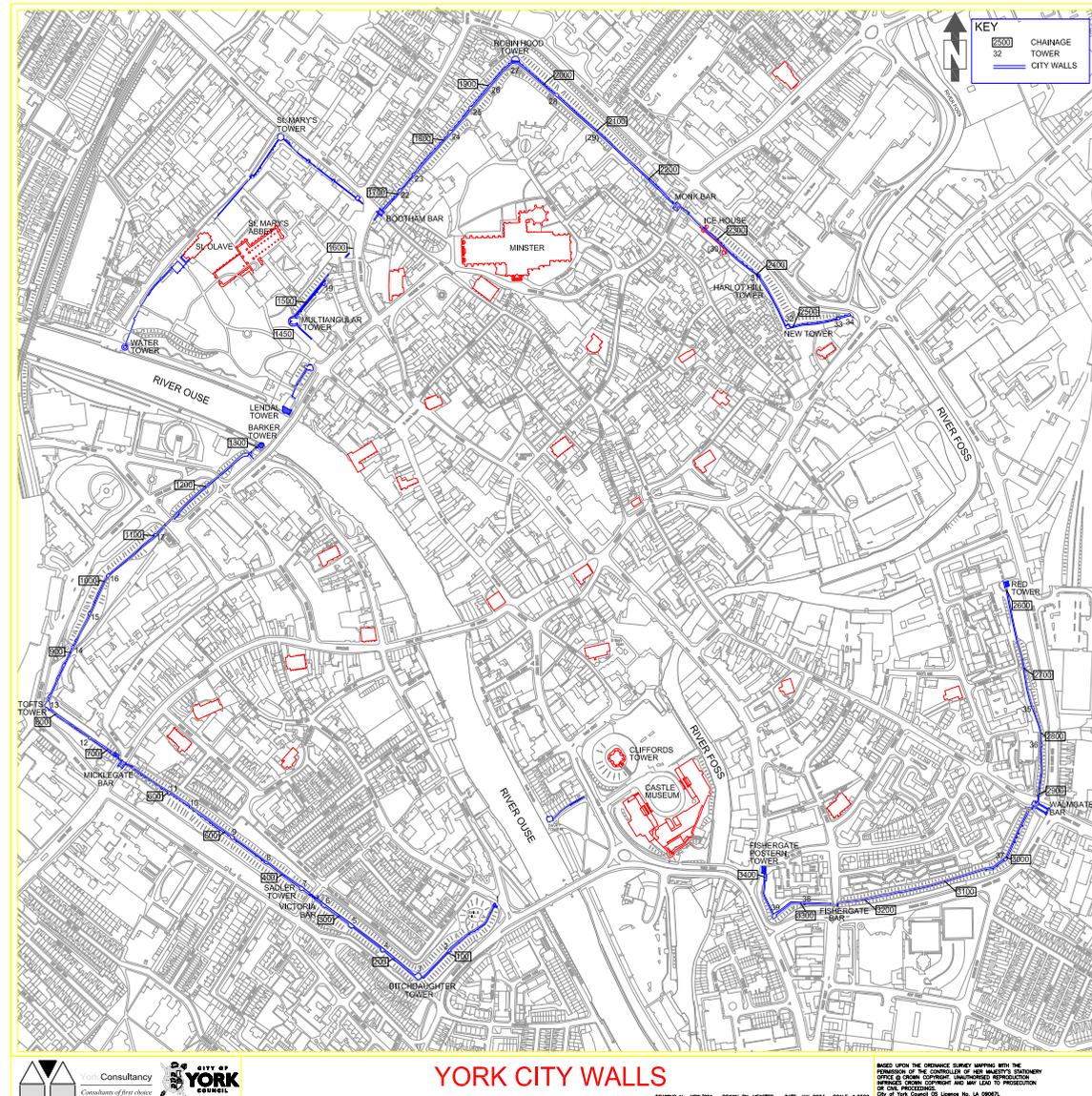
Section 20

York Flood Alleviation Scheme – flood embankment in Museum Gardens

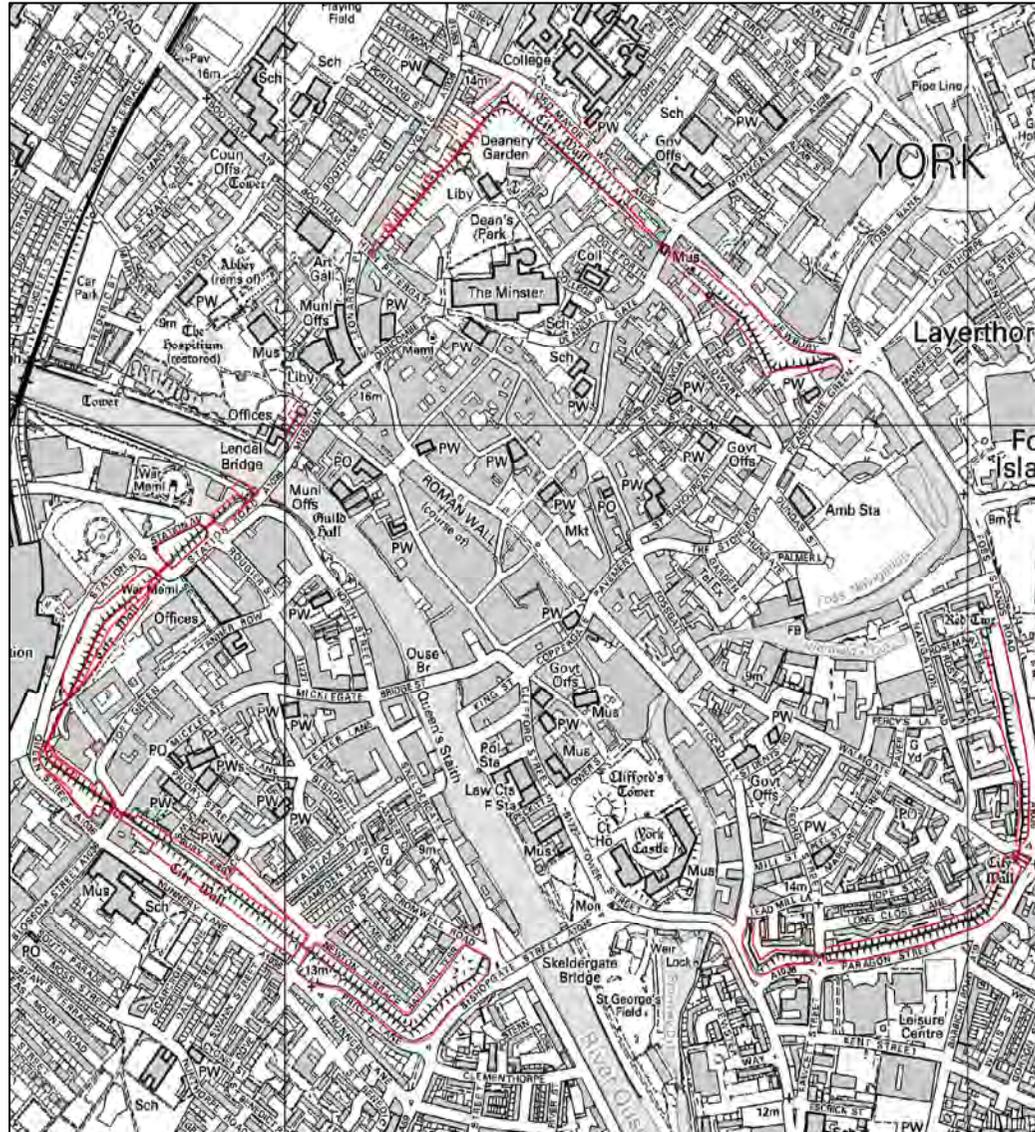
20/01874/FUL – in progress

Raise and extend existing flood embankment within Museum Gardens; installation of storage container at southern end of Marygate for demountable flood defences; temporary construction compound in Marygate car park during the construction works period as part of the York Flood Alleviation Scheme

Appendix XI: CYC Chainage Map



Appendix XII: CYC Ownership Map



Appendix XIII: CYC Historic Environment Record Asset List with Monument Numbers - TBC

Sections

Grandparent record	
MYO3631	City Walls
Parent records	
MYO1715	Baile Hill to Barker Tower
MYO3491	St Leonard's Hospital Precinct
MYO1080	St Mary's Abbey Precinct Wall
MYO1733	Bootham Bar to Monk Bar
MYO2008	Monk Bar to Layerthorpe
MYO1734	Red Tower to Fishergate Postern

City Walls

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4629	Wall between towers 1 and 2	0 - 100
MYO4230	Tower 2	100
MYO4630	Wall between towers 2 and 3	100 - 150
MYO4231	Bitchdaughter Tower	150
MYO4631	Wall between towers 3 and 4	150 - 225
MYO4632	Tower 4	225
MYO4634	Wall between towers 4 and 5	225 - 275
MYO4633	Tower 5	275
MYO4635	Wall between towers 5 and 6	275 - 325
MYO4636	Tower 6	325
MYO4637	Victoria Bar	350
MYO4638	Wall between towers 6 and 7	325 - 375
MYO4239	Tower 7/Sadler Tower	375

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4639	Wall between towers 7 and 8	375 - 425
MYO4640	Tower 8	425
MYO4642	Wall between towers 8 and 9	425 - 500
MYO4232	Tower 9	500
MYO4643	Wall between towers 9 and 11	500 - 600
MYO4641	Tower 10	550
MYO4644	Tower 11	600
MYO4645	Wall between Tower 11 and Micklegate Bar	600 - 675
MYO2196	Micklegate Bar	675
MYO4646	Wall between Micklegate Bar and Tower 12	675 - 725
MYO4647	Tower 12	725
MYO4648	Wall between towers 12 and 13	725 - 800
MYO4233	Tower 13/Toft's Tower	800

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO3827	Railway arch (built 1845)	825 - 875
MYO3827	Railway arch (built 1839)	875 - 900
MYO4649	Wall between towers 13 and 14	800 - 900
MYO4650	Tower 14	900
MYO4653	Wall between towers 14 and 16	900 - 1000
MYO4651	Tower 15	950
MYO4652	Tower 16	1000
MYO4654	Wall between towers 16 and 17	1000 - 1100
MYO4655	Tower 17	1100
MYO4768	Tower 18 (site of)	
MYO4656	Wall between tower 17 and Barker Tower	1100 - 1300
	Railway arch (built 1874)	1120 - 1150
	Railway arch (built 1876)	1200 - 1250
MYO4234	Barker Tower/North Street Postern	1300

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4767	North St Postern	1300
MYO1062	Lendal Tower	1300
MYO1731	Wall between Lendal Hill House and The Lodge St Leonards	1300 - 1400
MYO1075	Multangular Tower and wall attached to south east	1450
MYO4663	Wall between Multangular Tower and Anglian Tower	1450 - 1600
MYO1090	Anglian Tower	1550
MYO1732	Wall between Anglian Tower and rear of 8 St Leonard's Place Roman remains St Leonards	1600
MYO4226	Bootham Bar	1600
MYO4665	Wall between Bootham Bar and Tower 22	1600 - 1700
MYO4667	Tower 22	1700

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4666	Wall between towers 22 and 24	1700 - 1800
MYO4668	Tower 23	1750
MYO4669	Tower 24	1825
MYO4672	Wall between towers 24 and 26	1825 - 1900
MYO4763	Tower 25	1850
MYO4671	Tower 26	1900
MYO4673	Wall between towers 26 and 28	1900 - 2000
MYO4235	Tower 27/Robin Hood's Tower	1950
MYO4674	Tower 28	2000
MYO4676	Wall between towers 28 and 29	2000 - 2100
MYO4675	Tower 29	2100
MYO4677	Wall between Tower 29 and Monk Bar	2250
MYO4227	Monk Bar	2250
MYO1141	Ice House approx 25m to rear of Bay Horse PH	

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4680	Wall between Monk Bar and Tower 30	2250 - 2300
MYO4679	Tower 30	2300
MYO4681	Wall between towers 30 and 31	2300 - 2400
MYO4682	Tower 31/Harlot Hill	2400
MYO4683	Wall between towers 31 and 32	2400 - 2500
MYO4684	Wall between towers 32 and 34	2500 - 2600
MYO4236	Tower 32/New Tower	2500
MYO4685	Tower 33	2575
MYO4686	Tower 34	2600
MYO4237	Red Tower	2600
MYO4690	Wall between Red Tower and Walmgate Bar	2600 - 2900
MYO4688	Tower 35	2750
MYO4689	Tower 36	2800

HER id	Title	Approx chainage
MYO4628	Tower 1 (Baile Hill)	0
MYO4228	Walmgate Bar	2900
MYO4694	Wall between Walmgate Bar and Fishergate Bar	2900 - 3250
MYO4693	Tower 37	3000
MYO4229	Fishergate Bar	3250
MYO4695	Wall between Fishergate Bar and Fishergate Postern Tower	3250 - 3400
MYO4696	Tower 38	3300
MYO4697	Tower 39	3325
MYO4766	Fishergate Postern	3400
MYO4238	Fishergate Postern Tower	3400
MYO1714	Wall between Tower Place and Davy Tower	
MYO717	Davy Tower	

Ramparts

HER id	Title
MYO4657	Tower 1 to Victoria Bar
MYO4658	Victoria Bar to Micklegate Bar
MYO4659	Micklegate Bar to Toft's Tower
MYO4660	Towers 14 - 17
MYO4661	Tower 17 - Barker Tower
MYO4662	Lendal Tower to The Lodge
MYO4664	Multangular Tower to Anglian Tower
MYO4678	Bootham Bar to Monk Bar
MYO4687	Monk Bar to Tower 34
MYO4691	Red Tower to Walmgate Bar
MYO4692	Walmgate Bar to Fishergate Bar
MYO4698	Fishergate Bar to Fishergate Postern Tower

St Mary's Abbey Precinct Walls

HER id	Title
MYO4699	The Water Tower
MYO1080	Wall between the Water Tower and Tower A
MYO1080	Tower A
MYO1080	Wall between towers A and B
MYO1080	Tower B
MYO1080	Wall between towers B and C
MYO1080	Tower C
MYO1080	Wall between Tower C and St Mary's Tower
MYO4703	St Mary's Tower
MYO1080	Wall between St Mary's Tower and Tower D
MYO1080	Tower D (also known as the Fire Damaged Tower)
MYO1080	Wall between towers D and E
MYO1080	Tower E
MYO1080	Wall between Tower E and Postern Tower
MYO1080	Postern/Bootham Tower

